

THE

OLDEN POETS



**C**HAUCER  
VOL. II



ZJT (Cancer) (2)



22101598357

C. J. Vahlm  
1892









THE ALDINE EDITION  
OF THE BRITISH  
POETS



THE POEMS OF GEOFFREY CHAUCER

IN SIX VOLUMES

VOL. II



59950

THE POETICAL WORKS OF  
GEOFFREY CHAUCER



EDITED BY RICHARD MORRIS

*Editor of "Specimens of Early English," Hampole's "Pricke of  
Conscience," "Old English Homilies," etc., Member of  
the Council of the Philological Society.*

WITH MEMOIR BY SIR HARRIS NICOLAS

NEW AND REVISED EDITION



VOL II

LONDON  
BELL AND DALDY YORK STREET  
COVENT GARDEN

[1865]

ZJT (chance) (2)



## CONTENTS.

### VOL. II.

#### THE CANTERBURY TALES.

	Page
<b>T</b> HE Prologue . . . . .	1
The Knightes Tale . . . . .	27
The Prologe of the Myller . . . . .	96
The Milleres Tale . . . . .	98
The Prologe of the Reeve . . . . .	120
The Reeves Tale . . . . .	122
The Cokes Prologe . . . . .	135
The Cokes Tale . . . . .	136
The Man of Lawes Prologe . . . . .	170
The Man of Lawes Tale . . . . .	173
The Prologe of the Wyf of Bathe . . . . .	206
The Wyf of Bathes Tale . . . . .	232
The Prologe of the Frere . . . . .	245
The Freres Tale . . . . .	246
The Sompnoures Prologe . . . . .	258
The Sompnoures Tale . . . . .	259
The Clerk of Oxenfordes Prologe . . . . .	278
The Clerkes Tale . . . . .	280
Prologe of the Marchaundes Tale . . . . .	317
The Marchaundes Tale . . . . .	318
The Squyeres Prologe . . . . .	354
The Squyeres Tale . . . . .	355







THE  
POEMS OF GEOFFREY CHAUCER.

THE CANTERBURY TALES.

THE PROLOGUE.



HAN that Aprille with his schowres  
swoote

The drought of Marche hath perced  
to the roote,

And bathud every veyne in swich  
licour,

Of which vertue engendred is the flour ;  
Whan Zephirus eek with his swete breeth  
Enspirud hath in every holte and heeth  
The tendre croppes, and the yonge sonne  
Hath in the Ram his halfe cours i-ronne,  
And smale fowles maken melodie,  
That slepen al the night with open yhe, 10  
So priket hem nature in here corages :—  
Thanne longen folk to gon on pilgrimages,  
And palmers for to seeken straunge strondes,  
To ferne halwes, kouthe in sondry londes ;

And specially, from every schires ende  
Of Engelond, to Canturbury they wende,  
The holy blisful martir for to seeke,  
That hem hath holpen whan that they were seeke.

Byfel that, in that sesoun on a day,  
In Southwerk at the Tabbard as I lay, 20  
Redy to wenden on my pilgrimage  
To Canturbury with ful devout corage,  
At night was come into that hostelrie  
Wel nyne and twenty in a companye,  
Of sondry folk, by aventure i-falle  
In felawschipe, and pilgryms were thei alle,  
That toward Canturbury wolden ryde.  
The chambres and the stables weren wyde,  
And wel we weren esud atte beste.  
And schortly, whan the sonne was to reste, 30  
So hadde I spoken with hem everychon,  
That I was of here felawschipe anon,  
And made forward erly to aryse,  
To take oure weye ther as I yow devyse.  
But natheles, whiles I have tyme and space,  
Or that I ferthere in this tale pace,  
Me thinketh it acordant to resoun,  
To telle yow allo the condicioun  
Of ech of hem, so as it semede me,  
And which they weren, and of what degre; 40  
And eek in what array that they were inne:  
And at a knight than wol I first bygynne.

A KNIGHT ther was, and that a worthy man,  
That from the tyme that ho first bigan  
To ryden out, he lovede chyvalryo,  
Trouthe and honour, fredom and curtesie.  
Ful worthi was ho in his lordes werre,

And thereto hadde he riden, noman ferre,  
As wel in Cristendom as *in* hethenesse,  
And evere honoured for his worthinesse. 50  
At Alisandre he was whan it was wonne,  
Ful ofte tyme he hadde the bord bygonne  
Aboven alle naciouns in Pruce.  
In Lettowe hadde reycecd and in Ruce  
No cristen man so ofte of his degré.  
In Gernade atte siege hadde he be  
Of Algesir, and riden in Belmarie.  
At Lieys was he, and at Satalie,  
Whan they were wonne; and in the Greete see  
At many a noble arive hadde he be. 60  
At mortal batailles hadde he ben fiftene,  
And foughten for oure feith at Tramassene  
In lystes thries, and ay slayn his foo.  
This ilke worthi knight hadde ben also  
Somtyme with the lord of Palatye,  
Ayeyn another hethene in Turkye:  
And everemore he hadde a sovereyn prys.  
And though that he was worthy he was wys,  
And of his port as meke as *is* a mayde.  
He never yit no vilonye ne sayde 70  
In al his lyf, unto no maner wight.  
He was a verray perfight gentil knight.  
But for to telle you of his array,  
His hors was good, but he ne was nought gay.  
Of fustyan he wered a gepoun  
Al bysmoterud with his haburgeoun.  
For he was late comen from his viage,  
And wente for to doon his pilgrimage.  
With him ther was his sone, a yong SQUYER,  
A lovyer, and a lusty bacheler, 80

With lokkes crulle as they were layde in presse.  
 Of twenty yeer he was of age I gesse.  
 Of his stature he was of evenc lengthe,  
 And wondurly delyver, and gret of strengthe.  
 And he hadde ben somtyme in chivachie,  
 In Flaundres, in Artoys, and in Picardie,  
 And born him wel, as in so litel space,  
 In hope to stonden in his lady grace.  
 Embrowdid was he, as it were a mede  
 Al ful of fresshe floures, white and reede. 90  
 Syngynge he was, or flowtynge, al the day;  
 He was as fressh as is the moneth of May.  
 Schort was his goune, with sleeves long and wyde.  
 Wel cowde he sitte on hors, and *faire* ryde.  
 He cowde songes wel make and endite,  
 Justne and cek daunce, and wel purtray and write.  
 So hote ho lovede, that by nightertale  
 He sleep nomore than doth a nightyngale.  
 Curteys he was, lowly, and servysable,  
 And earf byforn his fadur at the table. 100

A YEMAN had he, and servantes nomoo  
 At that tyme, for him luste ryde soo;  
 And he was clad in coote and hood of grene.  
 A shef of pocok arwes bright and kene  
 Under his belto ho bar ful thriftily.  
 Wel cowde ho dresse his takel yomanly;  
 His arwes drowpud nought with fetheres lowe.  
 And in his hond he bar a mighty bowe.  
 A not-heed hadde he with a broun visage.  
 Of woode-craft cowdo he wel al the usage. 110  
 Upon his armo ho bar a gay braceer,  
 And by his side a swerd and a bokeler,  
 And on that other side a gay daggere,

Harneysed wel, and scharp at poynt of spere ;  
A Cristofre on his brest of silver schene.  
An horn he bar, the bawdrik was of grene ;  
A forster was he sothely, as I gesse.

Ther was also a Nonne, a PRIORESSE,  
That of hire smylyng was ful symple and coy ;  
Hire grettest ooth nas but by seynt Loy ; 120  
And sche was clept madame Englentyne.  
Ful wel sche sang the servise devyne,  
Entuned in hire nose ful semyly ;  
And Frensch sche spak ful faire and fetysly,  
Aftur the scole of Stratford attē Bowe,  
For Frensch of Parys was to hire unknowe.  
At mete wel i-taught was sche withalle ;  
Sche leet no morsel from hire lippes falle,  
Ne wette hire fyngres in hire sauce deepe.  
Wel cowde sche carie a morsel, and wel keepe, 130  
That no drope *ne* fil uppon hire breste.  
In curtesie was sett al hire leste.  
Hire overlippe wypude sche so elene,  
That in hire cuppe *ther* was no ferthing sene  
Of grees, whan sche dronken hadde hire draught.  
Ful semely aftur hire mete sche raught.  
And sikurly scho was of gret disport,  
And ful plesant, and amyable of port,  
And peyned hire to counterfete cheere  
Of court, and ben estatlich of manere, 140  
And to ben holden digne of reverence.  
But for to spoken of hire conscience,  
Sche was so charitable and so pitous,  
Sche wolde weepe if that sche sawe a mous  
Caught in a trappe, if it were deed or bledde.  
Of smale houndes hadde sche, that sche fedde

With rostud fleissh, and mylk, and wastel breed.  
 But sore wepte sche if oon of hem were deed,  
 Or if men smot it with a yerde smorte :  
 And al was eonseience and tendre herte. 150  
 Ful semely hire wymple i-pynehed was ;  
 Hire nose streight ; hire eyen grey as glas ;  
 Hire mouth ful smal, and therto softe and reed ;  
 But sikurly sche hadde a fair forheed.  
 It was almost a spanne brood, I trowe :  
 For hardily sche was not undurgrowe.  
 Ful fetys was hire eloke, as I was waar.  
 Of smal coral aboute hire arme sche baar  
 A peire of bedes gaudid al with grene ;  
 And theron heng a broch of gold ful schene, 160  
 On which was first i-writen a crowned A,  
 And after that, *Amor vincit omnia*.  
 Anothur NONNE also with hire hadde sche,  
 That was hire ehapelleyn, and PRESTES thre.  
 A MONK ther was, a fair for the maistric,  
 An out-rydere, that lovede venerye ;  
 A manly man, to ben an abbot able.  
 Ful many a deynté hors hadde he in stable :  
 And whan he rood, men might his bridel heere  
 Gyngle in a whistlyng wynd so elcere, 170  
 And eek as lowde as doth the chapel belle.  
 Ther as the lord was keper of the selle,  
 The reule of seynt Maure or of scint Beneyt,  
 Bycause that it was old and somdel streyt,  
 This ilke monk leet forby hem pace,  
 And helde aftur the newe world the space.  
 He yaf nat of that text a pulled hen,  
 That seith, that hunters been noon holy men ;  
 Ne that a monk, whan he is cloysterles,

Is likned to a fissehe that is watirles ; 180  
This is to seyn, a monk out of his cloystre.  
But thilke text hild he not worth an oystre.  
And I seide his opinioun was *right* good.  
What! schulde he studie, and make himselven wood,  
Uppon a book in cloystre alway to powre,  
Or swynke with his handes, and laboure,  
As Austyn byt? How schal the world be served?  
Lat Austyn have his swynk to him reserved.  
Therefore he was a pricour aright ;  
Greyhoundes he hadde as swifte as fowel in flight ;  
Of prikyng and of huntyng for the hare 191  
Was al his lust, for no eost wolde he spare.  
I saugh his sleves purfild atte hond  
With grys, and that the fynest of a lond.  
And for to festne his hood undur his chyn  
He hadde of gold y-wrought a curious pyn :  
A love-knotte in the gretter ende ther was.  
His heed was ballid, and schon as eny glas,  
And eek his faee as he hadde be anynt.  
He was a lord ful fat and in good poynt ; 200  
His eyen steep, and rollyng in his heed,  
That stemed as a forneys of a leed ;  
His bootes souple, his hors in gret estat.  
Now certainly he was a fair prelat ;  
He was not pale as a for-pyned goost.  
A fat swan loved he best of eny roost.  
His palfray was as broun as eny berye.  
A FREERE ther was, a wantoun and a merye,  
A lymytour, a ful solempne man.  
In alle the ordres foure is noon that can 210  
So moeche of daliaunee and fair langage.  
He hadde i-made many a fair mariage



Of yonge wymmen, at his owne cost.  
Unto his ordre he was a noble post.  
Ful wel biloved and famulier was he  
With frankeleyns overal in his cuntre,  
And eek with worthi wommen of the toun :  
For he hadde power of confessioun,  
As seyde himself, moro than a curat,  
For of his ordre he was licenciati. 220  
Ful sweetly herde he confessioun,  
And plesaunt was his absolucioun ;  
He was an esy man to yeve penance  
Ther as he wiste to han a good pitance ;  
For unto a povre ordre for to geve  
Is signe that a man is wel i-schreve.  
For if he yaf, he dorste make avaunt,  
He wiste that a man was repentaunt.  
For many a man so hard is of his herte,  
He may not wepe though him sore smerte. 230  
Therefore in-stede of wepyng and prayeres,  
Men mooten yiven silver to the pore freres.  
His typet was ay farsud ful of knyfes  
And pynnes, for to yive faire wyfes.  
And certaynli he hadde a mery noote.  
Wel couthe he synge and pleye on a rote.  
Of yeddynges he bar utturly the prys.  
His nekke whit was as the flour-de-lys.  
Therto he strong was as a champion.  
He knew wel the tavernes in every toun, 240  
And every ostiller or gay tapstere,  
Better than a lazer, or a beggere,  
For unto such a worthi man as he  
Acorded not, as by his faculté,  
To have with *suche* sike lazars aqueyntaunce.



It is not honest, it may not avaunee,  
 For to delen with such poraile,  
 But al with riche and sellers of vitaille.  
 And overal, ther eny profyt sehulde arise,  
 Curteys he was, and lowe of servyse. 250  
 Ther was no man nowher so vertuous.  
 He was the beste begger in al his hous,  
 For though a widewe hadde but oo schoo,  
 So plesaunt was his *In principio*,  
 Yet wolde he have a ferthing or he wente.  
 His purchaee was bettur than his rente.  
 And rage he couthe and pleye *right* as a whelpe,  
 In love-dayes ther couthe he moechil helpe.  
 For ther was he not like a cloysterer,  
 With a thredbare cope as a pore seoler, 260  
 But he was like a maister or a pope.  
 Of double worstede was his semy-cope,  
 That rounded was as a belle out of presse.  
 Somwhat he lippede, for wantounesse,  
 To make his Englissh swete upon his tunge;  
 And in his harpyng, whan that he hadde sunge,  
 His eyghen twynkeled in his heed aright,  
 As don the sterres in the frosty night.  
 This worthi lymytour was called Huberd.

A MAREHAUNT was ther with a forked berd, 270  
 In motteleye, *and* high on horse he sat,  
 Uppon his heed a Flaundrish bever hat;  
 His botus elapsud faire and fetously.  
 His resons he spak ful solempnely,  
*Sownynge* alway the eneres of his wynnyng.  
 He wolde the see were kepud for eny thing  
 Betwixe Middulburgh and Orewelle.  
 Wel couthe he in eschange scheeldes selle.

This worthi man ful wel his witte bisette;  
Ther wiste no man that he was in dette, 280  
So estately was he of governaunce,  
With his bargayns, and with his chevysaunce.  
For sothe he was a worthi man withalle,  
But soth to say, I not what men him calle.

A CLERK ther was of Oxenford also,  
That unto logik hadde longe *tyme* i-go.  
Al-so lene was his hors as is a rake,  
And he was not right fat, I undertake;  
But lokede holwe, and therto soburly.  
Ful thredbare was his overest courtepy, 290  
For he hadde nought geten him yit a benefice,  
Ne was not worthy to haven an office.  
For him was lever have at his beddes heed  
Twenty bookes, clothed in blak and reed,  
Of Aristotil, and of his philosophie,  
Then robus riche, or fithul, or sawtric.  
But although he were a philosophre,  
Yet hadde he but litul gold in cofre;  
But al that he mighte gete, and his frendes sente,  
On bookes and his lernyng he it spente, 300  
And busily gan for the soules pray  
Of hem that yaf him wherwith to scolay.  
Of studie tooke he most cure and heede.  
Not oo word spak he more than was neede;  
Al that he spak it was of heye prudence,  
And schort, and quyk, and ful of gret sentence.  
Sownynge in moral manere was his speche,  
And gladly wolde he lerne, and gladly teche.

A SERGEANT OF LAWE, war and wys,  
That often hadde ben atte parvys, 310  
Ther was also, ful riche of excellence.

Diseret he was, and of gret reverence  
 He semede such, his wordes were so wise,  
 Justiee he was ful often in assise,  
 By patent, and by pleyn commissioun;  
 For his seience, and for his heih renoun,  
 Of fees and robes had he many oon.  
 So gret a purehasour was ther nowher noon.  
 Al was fee symple to him in effeete,  
 His purehasyng mighte nought ben suspecte. 320  
 Nowher so besy a man as he ther nas,  
 And yit he semede besier than he was.  
 In termes hadde *he* eaas and domes alle,  
 That fro the tyme that kyng [Will] were falle.  
 Thereto he eouthe endite, and make a thing,  
 Ther eouthe no man pynehe at his writyng.  
 And every statute eouthe he pleyn by roote.  
 He rood but hoomly in a medled coote,  
 Gird with a seynt of silk, with barres smale;  
 Of his array telle I no lenger tale. 330

A FRANKLEYN ther was in his companye;  
 Whit was his berde, as is the dayesye.  
 Of his complexioun he was sangwyn.  
 Wel loved he in the morn a sop of wyn.  
 To lyven in delite was al his wone,  
 For he was Epicurius owne sone,  
 That heeld opynyoun that pleyn delyt  
 Was verrailly felicité perfyte.  
 An househaldere, and that a gret, was he;  
 Seynt Julian he was in his countré. 340  
 His breed, his ale, was alway after oon;  
 A bettre envyned man was nowher noon.  
 Withoute bake mete was never his hous,  
 Of fleisseh and fisch, and that so plentyvous,

It snewed in his hous of mete and drynke,  
 Of alle deyntees that men eowde thynke.  
 Aftur the sondry sesouns of the yeer,  
 He chaunged hem at mete and at soper.  
 Ful many a fat partrieh had he in mewe,  
 And many a brem and many a luce in stewe. 350  
 Woo was his cook, but if his sauee were  
 Poynant and seharp, and redy al his gere.  
 His table dormant in his halle alway  
 Stood redy covered al the longe day.  
 At sessions ther was he lord and sire.  
 Ful ofte tyme he was knight of the sehire.  
 An anlas and a gipser al of silk  
 Heng at his gerdul, whit as morne mylk.  
 A schirreve hadde he ben, and a counter ;  
 Was nowher such a worthi vavaser. 360

An HABURDASSHER and a CARPENTER,  
 A WEBBE, a DEYER, and a TAPICER,  
 Weren with us eeke, clothed in oo lyveré,  
 Of a solempne and gret fraternité.  
 Ful freissh and newe *here* gere piked was ;  
 Here knyfes were i-chapud nat with bras,  
 But al with silver wrought ful elene and wel,  
 Here gurdles and here pouches every del.  
 Wel semed cehe of hem a fair burgeys,  
 To sitten in a yeldchalle on the deys. 370  
 Every man for the wisdom that he ean,  
 Was sehaply for to ben an aldurman.  
 For eatel hadde they inough and rente,  
 And eek here wyfes wolde it wel assente ;  
 And elles eerteyn haddo thei ben to blame.  
 It is right fair for to be elept *madame*,  
 And for to go to vigilies al byfore,

And han a mantel rially i-bore.

A COOK thei hadde with hem for the nones,  
To boyle ehiknes and the mary bones, 380  
And poudre marehaunt tart, and galyngale.  
Wel eowde he knowe a draught of Londone ale.  
He eowde roste, sethe, broille, and frie,  
Make mortreux, and wel bake a pye.  
But gret harm was it, as it semede me,  
That on his sehyne a mormal hadde he ;  
For blankmanger he made with the beste.

A SCHIPMAN was ther, wonyng fer by weste :  
For ought I woot, he was of Dertemouthe.  
He rood upon a rouny, as he eouthe, 390  
In a gowne of faldyng to the kne.  
A dagger hangyng on a laas hadde he  
Aboute his nekke under his arm adoun.  
The hoote somer hadde maad his hew al broun ;  
And eertainly he was a good felawe.  
Ful many a draught of wyn had he drawe  
From Burdeux-ward, whil that the chapman sleep.  
Of nyee eonseience took he no keep.  
If that he foughte, and hadde the heigher hand,  
By water he sente hem hoom to every land. 400  
But of his eraft to rikne wel the tydes,  
His stremes and his dangers him bisides,  
His herbergh and his mone, his lodemenage,  
Ther was non sueh from Hulle to Cartage.  
Hardy he was, and wys to undertake ;  
With many a tempest hath his berd ben sehake,  
He knew wel alle the havenes, as thei were,  
From Seotland to the cape of Fynestere,  
And every cryk in Bretayne and in Spayne ;  
His barge y-clepuð was the Magdelayne. 410

Ther was also a DOCTOUR OF PHISIK,  
In al this world ne was ther non him lyk  
To speke of phisik and of surgerye;  
For he was groundud in astronomye.  
He kepte his pacient wondurly wel  
In houres by his magik naturel.  
Wel eowde he fortune the ascendent  
Of his ymages for his pacient.  
He knew the cause of every maladye,  
Were it of cold, or hete, or moyst, or drye, 420  
And where thei engendrid, and of what humour;  
He was a verrey parfight practisour.  
The cause i-knowe, and of his harm the roote,  
Anon he yaf the syke man his boote.  
Ful redy hadde he his apotecaries,  
To sende him dragges, and his letuaries,  
For eche of hem made othur *for* to wynne;  
Here frendschipe was not newe to begynne.  
Wel knew he the olde Esculapius,  
And Deiscorides, and eeke Rufus; 430  
Old Ypocras, Haly, and Galien;  
Serapyon, Razis, and Avycen;  
Averrois, Damascen, and Constantyn;  
Bernard, and Gatisden, and Gilbertyn.  
Of his diete mesurable was he,  
For it was of no superfluité,  
But of gret norisching and digestible.  
His studie was but litel on the Bible.  
In sangwyn and in pers ho clad was al  
Lyned with taffata and with sendal. 440  
And yit he was but esy in disponce;  
He kepte that ho wan in pestilence.  
For gold in phisik is a cordial;

Therefore he lovede gold in special.

A good WIF was ther of byside BATHE,  
But sche was somdel deaf, and that was skathe.  
Of cloth-makyng she hadde such an haunt,  
Sche passed hem of Ypris and of Gaunt.  
In al the parisshe wyf ne was ther noon  
That to the offryng byforn hire schulde goon, 450  
And if ther dide, certeyn so wroth was sche,  
That sche was thanne out of alle charité.  
Hire keverchefs weren ful fyne of grounde ;  
I durste swere they weyghede ten pounce  
That on a Sonday were upon hire heed.  
Hir hosen were of fyn scarlett reed,  
Ful streyte y-teyed, and schoosful moyste and newo  
Bold was hir face, and fair, and reed of hewe.  
Sche was a worthy womman al hire lyfe,  
Housbondes atte chirche dore hadde sche fyfe, 460  
Withouten othur companye in youthe ;  
But thereof needeth nought to speke as nouthe.  
And thries hadde sche ben at Jerusalem ;  
Sche hadde passud many a straunge streem ;  
At Rome sche hadde ben, and at Boloyne,  
In Galice at seynt Jame, and at Coloyne.  
Sche cowde moche of wandryng by the weye.  
Gattothud was sche, sothly for to seye.  
Upon an amblere esely sche sat,  
Wymlid ful wel, and on hire heed an hat 470  
As brood as is a bocler or a targe ;  
A foot-mantel aboute hire hupes largo,  
And on hire feet a paire of spores scharpe.  
In felawschipe wel cowde *sche* lawghe and carpe.  
Of remedyes of love sche knew parchaunce,  
For of that art sche knew the olde daunce.



A good man was ther of religioun,  
And was a pore PERSON of a toun ;  
But riche he was of holy thought and werk.  
He was also a lorned man, a clerk 480  
That Cristes gospel gladly wolde preche ;  
His parischens devoutly wolde he teche.  
Benigne he was, and wondur diligent,  
And in adversite ful pacient ;  
And such he was i-proved ofte sithes.  
Ful loth were him to curse for his tythes,  
But rather wolde he yeven out of dowte,  
Unto his pore parisschens aboute,  
Of his offrynge, and eek of his substaunce.  
He cowde in litel thing han suffisance. 490  
Wyd was his parisch, and houses fer asondur,  
But he ne lafte not for reyne ne thondur,  
In siknesse ne in meschief to visite  
The ferrest in his parissche, moche and lite,  
Uppon his feet, and in his hond a staf.  
This noble ensample unto his sheep he yaf,  
That ferst he wroughte, and after that he taughte,  
Out of the gospel he tho wordes caughte,  
And this figure he addide yit therto,  
That if gold ruste, what schulde yren doo ? 500  
For if a prest bo foul, on whom we truste,  
No wondur is a lewid man to ruste ;  
And schamo it is, if that a prest take kope,  
A schiten schepperd and a clene schepe ;  
Wel oughte a prest ensample for to yive,  
By his clenness, how that his sheep schulde lyve.  
He sette not his benefico to huyre,  
And lefte his sheep encombred in tho myre,  
And ran to Londone, unto seynt Poules,  
To seeken him a chaunterie for soules, 510



Or with a brethurhede be withholde ;  
 But dwelte at hoom, and kepte wel his folde,  
 So that the wolf ne made it not myscarye.  
 He was a schepperde and no mercenarie ;  
 And though he holy were, and vertuous,  
 He was to senful man nought dispitous,  
 Ne of his speche daungerous ne digne,  
 But in his teching discret and benigne.  
 To drawe folk to heven by clennesse,  
 By good ensample, was his busynesse : 520  
 But it were eny persone obstinat,  
 What-so he were of high or lowe estat,  
 Him wolde he snybbe scharply for the nones.  
 A better preest I trowe ther nowher non is.  
 He waytud after no pompe ne reverence,  
 Ne maketh him a spiced conscience,  
 But Cristes lore, and his apostles twelve,  
 He taught, and ferst he folwed it himselve.

With *him* ther was a PLOUGHMAN, his brothur,  
 That hadde i-lad of dong ful many a fothur. 530  
 A trewe swynker and a good was hee,  
 Lyvyng in pees and perfight charitee.  
 God loved he best with al his trewe herte  
 At alle tymes, though him gamed or smerte,  
 And thanne his neighebour right as himselve.  
 He wolde threisshe, and therto dyke and delve,  
 For Cristes sake, with every pore wight,  
 Withouten huyre, if it laye in his might.  
 His tythes payede he ful faire and wel,  
 Bathe of his owne swynk and his catel. 540  
 In a tabbard *he* rood upon a mere.

Ther was also a reeve and a mellere,  
 A sompnour and a pardoner also,

A maunciple, and my-self, ther was no mo.

The MELLERE was a stout earl for the nones,  
 Ful big he was of braun, and eek of boones;  
 That prevede wel, for overal ther he cam,  
 At wrastlynge he wolde bere away the ram.  
 He was schort schuldred, broode, a thikke knarre,  
 There nas no dore that he nolde heve of harre, 550  
 Or breke it with a rennyng with his heed.  
 His berd as ony sowe or fox was reed,  
 And therto brood, as though it were a spade.  
 Upon the cop right of his nose he hade  
 A werte, and theron stood a tuft of heres,  
 Reede as the berstles of a souwes ceres.  
 His nose-thurles blake were and wyde.  
 A swerd and a boeler baar he by his side,  
 His mouth as wyde was as a gret forneys.  
 He was a jangler, and a golyardeys, 560  
 And that was most of synne and harlotries.  
 Wel cowde he stele corn, and tollen thries;  
 And yet he hadde a thombe of gold pardé.  
 A whight cote and blewe hood wered he.  
 A baggepipe cowde he blowe and sowne,  
 And therwithal he brought us out of towne.

A gentil MAUNCEIPLE was ther of a temple,  
 Of which achatours mighten take exemple  
 For to be wys in beyyng of vitaille.  
 For whethur that he payde, or took by taille, 570  
 Algate he waytede so in his acate,  
 That he was ay biforn and in good state.  
 Now is not that of God a ful fair grace,  
 That such a lewed mannes wit schal pace  
 The wisdom of an heep of lernede men?  
 Of maystres hadde *he* moo than thries ten,

That were of lawe expert and curious ;  
Of which ther were a doseyn in an hous,  
Worthi to be stiwardz of rente and lond  
Of any lord that is in Engelond, 580  
To make him lyve by his propre good,  
In honour detteles, but if he were wood,  
Or lyve as scarsly as he can desire ;  
And able for to helpen al a schire  
In any caas that mighte falle or happe ;  
And yit this maunciple sette here aller cappe.

The REEVE was a sklendre colerik man,  
His berd was schave as neigh as ever he can.  
His heer was by his eres *rounde* i-shorn.  
His top was doekud lyk a preest biforn. 590  
Ful longe wern his leggus, and ful lene,  
Al like a staff, ther was no calf y-sene.  
Wel cowde he kepe a gerner and a bynne ;  
Ther was non auditour cowde on him wynne.  
Wel wiste he by the drought, and by the reyn,  
The yeeldyng of his seed, and of his greyn.  
His lordes scheep, his nect, *and* his dayerie,  
His swyn, his hors, his stoor, and his pultrie,  
Was holly in this reeves governynge,  
And by his covenaut yaf the rekenynge, 600  
Syn that his lord was twenti yeer of age ;  
Ther couthe noman bringe him in arrerage.  
Ther nas baillif, ne herde, ne other hyne,  
That they ne knewe his sleight and his covyne ;  
They were adrad of him, as of the deth.  
His wonyng was ful fair upon an heth,  
With grene trees i-schadewed was his place.  
He cowde bettre than his lord purchace.  
Ful riche he was i-stored prively,

His lord wel couthe he plesse subtilly, 610  
To yeve and lene him of his owne good,  
And have a thank, a cote, and eek an hood.  
In youthe he lerned hadde a good mester ;  
He was a wel good wright, a carpenter.  
This reeve sat upon a wel good stot,  
That was a pomely gray, and highte Scot.  
A long surcote of blew uppon he hadde,  
And by his side he bar a rusty bladde.  
Of Northfolk was this reeve of which I telle,  
Byside a toun men callen Baldeswelle. 620  
Tukkud he was, as is a frere, aboute,  
And ever he rood the hynderest of the route.

A SOMPNOUR was ther with us in that place,  
That hadde a fyr-reed cherubyns face,  
For sawceflem he was, with cyghen narwe.  
As hoot he was, and leccherous, as a sparwe,  
With skalled browes blak, and piled berd ;  
Of his visage children weren sore aferd.  
Ther nas quyksilver, litarge, ne bremstone,  
Boras, ceruce, ne oille of tartre noon, 630  
Ne oynement that wolde clense and byte,  
That him might helpen of his whelkes white,  
Ne of the knobbes sitting on his checkes.  
Wel loved he garleek, oynouns, and ek leekes,  
And for to drinke strong wyn reed as blood.  
Thanne wolde he speke, and crye as he were wood.  
And whan that he wel drunken hadde the wyn,  
Than wolde he speke no word but Latyn.  
A fewe termes hadde he, tuo or thre,  
That he hadde lerned out of som decree ; 640  
No wondur is, he herde it al the day ;  
And eek ye knowe wel, how that a jay

Can elepe Watte, as wel as ean the pope.  
 But who-so wolde in othur thing him grope,  
 Thanne hadde he spent al his philosophic,  
 Ay, *Questio quid juris*, wolde he crye,  
 He was a gentil harlot and a kynde;  
 A bettre felaw schulde men nowher fynde.  
 He wolde suffre for a quart of wyn  
 A good felawe to han his eoneubyn 650  
 A twelve moneth, and excuse him atte fulle.  
 And pryvely a fynch cek cowde he pulle.  
 And if he fond owher a good felawe,  
 He wolde teehe him for to have non awe  
 In such a caas of the archedeknes curs,  
 But if a mannes soule were in his purs;  
 For in his purs he scholde punysshed be.  
 'Purs is the creedeknes helle,' quod he.  
 But wel I woot he lyeth right in dede;  
 Of eursyng oweth ceh gulty man to drede; 660  
 For curs wol slee right as assoillyng saveth;  
 And also ware him of a *significavit*.  
 In daunger he hadde at his owne assise  
 The yonge gurlles of the dioeise,  
 And knew here counseil, and was al here red  
 A garland had he set upon his heed,  
 As gret as it were for an ale-stake;  
 A bokeler had he maad him of a cake.

With him ther rood a gentil PARDONER  
 Of Rouncival, his frend and his comper, 670  
 That streyt was comen from the court of Rome.  
 Ful lowde he sang, Come hider, love, to me.  
 This sompnour bar to him a stif burdoun,  
 Was nevere trompe of half so gret a soun.  
 This pardonere hadde heer as yelwe as wex,

But smothe it heng, as doth a strike of flex ;  
By unces hynge his lokkes that he hadde,  
And therwith he his schuldres overspradde.  
Ful thinne it lay, by culpons on and oon,  
And hood, for jolitee, ne wered he noon, 680  
For it was trussud up in his walet.  
Him thought he rood al of the newe get,  
Dischevele, sauf his cappe, he rood al bare.  
Suche glaryng cyghen hadde he as an hare.  
A vernicle hadde he sowed on his cappe.  
His walet lay byforn him in his lappe,  
Bret-ful of pardoun come from Rome al hoot.  
A voys he hadde as smale as eny goot.  
No berd ne hadde he, ne never scholde have,  
As smothe it was as it ware late i-schave ; 690  
I trowe he were a geldyng or a mare.  
But of his craft, fro Berwyk unto Ware,  
Ne was ther such another pardoner.  
For in his male he hadde a pilwebeer,  
Which, that he saide, was oure lady veyl :  
He seide, he hadde a gobet of the seyl  
That seynt Petur hadde, whan *that* he wente  
Upon the see, til Jhesu Crist him hente.  
Ho hadde a cros of latoun ful of stones,  
And in a glas he hadde pigges bones. 700  
But with thise reliques, whanne that he fand  
A pore persoun dwellyng uppon land,  
Upon a day he gat him more moneye  
Than that the persoun gat in monthes tweye.  
And thus with feyned flaterie and japes,  
He made the persoun and the people his apes.  
But trewely to tellen atte laste,  
He was in church e a noble ecclesiaste.

Wel cowde he rede a lessoun or a storye,  
But altherbest he sang an offertorie ; 710  
For wel wyst he, whan that song was songe,  
He moste preehe, and wel affyle his tunge,  
To wyne silver, as he right wel cowde ;  
Therefore he sang ful meriely and lowde.  
Now have I told you sehortly in a clause  
Thestat, tharray, the nombre, and eek the cause  
Why that assembled was this eompanye  
In Southwerk at this gentil ostelrie,  
That highte the Tabbard, faste by the Belle.  
But now is tyme to yow for to telle 720  
How that we bare us in that ilke night,  
Whan we were in that ostelrie alight ;  
And aftur wol I telle of oure viage,  
And al the remenaunt of oure pilgrimage.  
But ferst I pray you of your eurtessie,  
That ye ne rette it nat my vilanye,  
Though that I speke al pleyn in this matere,  
To telle you here wordes and here checre ;  
Ne though I speke here wordes propurly.  
For this ye knowen al-so wel as I, 730  
Who-so schal telle a tale aftur a man,  
He moste reheree, as neigh as ever he can,  
Every word, if it be in his echarge,  
Al speke he never so rudely ne large ;  
Or elles he moot telle his tale untrewre,  
Or feyne thing, or fynde his wordes newe.  
He may not spare, though he were his brothur ;  
He moste as wel sey oo word as anothur.  
Crist spak himself ful broode in holy writ,  
And wel ye woot no vilanye is it. 740  
Eke Plato seith, who-so that can him rede,



The wordes mot be cosyn to the dede.  
Also I pray you to foryeve it me,  
Al have I folk nat set in here degre  
Here in this tale, as that thei schulde stonde ;  
My witt is thynne, ye may wel undurstonde.

Greet cheere made oure ost us everichon,  
And to the souper sette he us anon ;  
And served us with vitaille atte beste.  
Strong was the wyn, and wel to drynke us leste.  
A semely man oure ooste was withalle 751  
For to han been a marchal in an halle ;  
A large man was he with cyghen stepe,  
A fairere burgeys is ther noon in Chepe :  
Bold of his speche, and wys, and wel i-taught,  
And of manhede lakkede he right naught.  
Eke therto he was right a mery man,  
And after soper playen he bygan,  
And spak of myrthe among othur thinges,  
Whan that wo hadde maad our rekenynges ; 760  
And sayde thus : ‘ Lo, lordynges, trewely  
Ye ben to me right welcome hertily :  
For by my trouthe, if that I schal not lye,  
I ne saugh this yeer so mery a companye  
At oones in this herbergh as is now.  
Fayn wold I do yow merthe, wiste I how.  
And of a merthe I am right now bythought,  
To doon you eese, and it schal coste nought.  
Ye goon to Caunturbury ; God you speede,  
The blisful martir quyte you youre meede ! 770  
And wel I woot, as ye gon by the weye,  
Yo schapen yow to talken and to pleye ;  
For trewely comfort ne mertho is noon  
To rydo by the weye domb as a stoon ;



And therfore wol I make you disport,  
As I seyde erst, and do you som confort.  
And if yow liketh alle by oon assent  
Now for to standen at my juggement;  
And for to werken as I sehal you seye,  
To morwe, whan ye riden by the weye, 780  
Now by my fadres soule that is deed,  
But ye be merye, smyteth of myn heed.  
Hold up youre hond withoute more speche.'  
Ouro counseil was not longe for to seehe;  
Us thoughte it nas nat worth to make it wys,  
And graunted him withoute more avys,  
And bad him seie his verdite, as him leste.  
'Lordynges,' quoth he, 'now herkeneth for the  
beste;

But taketh not, I pray you, in disdayn;  
This is the poynt, to speken schort and playn, 790  
That ech of yow to schorte with youre weie,  
In this viage, sehal telle tales tweye,  
To Caunturburi-ward, I mene it so,  
And hom-ward he sehal tellen othur tuo,  
Of adventures that ther han bifalle.  
And which of yow that bereth him best of alle,  
That is to seye, that telleth in this caas  
Tales of best sentenee and of solas,  
Sehal han a soper at your alther cost  
Here in this place sittynge by this post, 800  
Whan that we eomen ageyn from Canturbury.  
And for to make you the more mery,  
I wol myselfen gladly with you ryde,  
Right at myn owen cost, and be youre gyde.  
And who-so wole my juggement withseie  
Sehal paye for al we spenden by the weye.

And if ye vouchesauf that it be so,  
Telle me anon, withouten wordes moo,  
And I wole erely schappe me therfore.’  
This thing was graunted, and oure othus swore 810  
With ful glad herte, and prayden him also  
That he would vouchesauf for to doon so,  
And that he wolde ben oure governour,  
And of our tales jugge and reportour,  
And sette a souper at a certeyn prys;  
And we wolde rewled be at his devys,  
In heygh and lowe; and thus by oon assent  
We been acorded to his juggement.  
And therupon the wyn was fet anon;  
We dronken, and to reste wente echoon, 820  
Withouten eny lengere taryinge.  
A morwe whan that the day bigan to sprynge,  
Up roos oure ost, and was oure althur eok,  
And gaderud us togider alle in a flok,  
And forth we riden a litel more than paas,  
Unto the waterynge of seint Thomas.  
And there oure ost bigan his hors areste,  
And seyde, ‘Lordus, herkeneth if yow leste.  
Ye woot youre forward, and I it you reeorde.  
If eve-song and morwe-song acorde, 830  
Let se now who schal telle ferst a tale.  
As evere I moote drinke wyn or ale,  
Who-so be rebel to my juggement  
Schal paye for al that by the weye is spent.  
Now draweth out, er that we forther twynne;  
Which that hath the sehortest schal bygynne.’  
‘Sire knight,’ quoth he, ‘maister and my lord,  
Now draweth out, for that is myn acord.  
Cometh ner,’ quoth he, ‘my lady prioress;

And ye, sir clerk, lat be your schamfastnesse, 840  
Ne studieth nat; ley hand to, every man.'

Anon to drawen every wight bigan,  
And schortly for to tellen as it was,  
Were it by aventure, or sort, or cas,  
The soth is this, the cut fil to the knight,  
Of which ful glad and blithe was every wight;  
And telle he moste his tale as was resoun,  
By forward and by composicioun,  
As ye han herd; what needeth wordes moo?  
And whan this goode man seigh that it was so, 850  
As he that wys was and obedient  
To kepe his forward by his fre assent,  
He seyde: 'Syn I sehal bygynne the game,  
What! welcome be thou cut, a Goddus name!  
Now lat us ryde, and herkneth what I seye.'

And with that word we riden forth oure weye;  
And he bigan with right a merie chere  
His tale, and seide right in this manere.

## THE KNIGHTES TALE.

**W**HILOM, as olde stories tellen us,  
Ther was a duk that highte Theseus;  
Of Athenes he was lord and governour,  
And in his tyme swieh a conquerour,  
That gretter was ther non under the sonne.  
Ful many a riche contré hadde he wonne;  
That with his wisdom and his chivalrie  
He conquered al the regne of Femynye,

That whilom was i-cleped Cithea ;  
And weddede the queen Ipolita, 10  
And brought hire hoom with him in his contré,  
With moche glorie and gret solempnité,  
And eek hire yonge suster Emelye.  
And thus with victorie and with melodye  
Lette I this noble duk to Athenes ryde,  
And al his ost, in armes him biside.  
And certes, if it nere to long to heere,  
I wolde han told yow fully the manere,  
How wonnen was the regne of Femenye  
By Theseus, and by his chivalrye ; 20  
And of the grete bataille for the nones  
Bytwix Athenes and the Amazones ;  
And how asegid was Ypolita,  
The faire hardy quyen of Cithea ;  
And of the feste that was at hire weddyng,  
And of the tempest at hire hoom comyng ;  
But al that thing I most as now forbere.  
I have, God wot, a large feeld to ere,  
And wayke ben the oxen in my plough,  
The remenaunt of the tale is long inough ; 30  
I wol not lette eek non of al this rowte.  
Lat every felawe telle his tale aboute,  
And lat see now who schal the soper wyne,  
And ther I lasse, I wolde agayn begynne.

This duk, of whom I make mencion,  
Whan he was comen almost unto the toun,  
In al his wele and in his moste pryde,  
He was war, as he cast his cyghe aside,  
Wher that ther kneled in the hye weye  
A companye of ladies, tweye and tweye, 40  
Ech after other, clad in clothes blake ;

But such a cry and such a woo they make,  
That in this world nys creature lyvyng,  
That herde such another weymentynge,  
And of that cry ne wolde they never stenten,  
Til they the reynes of his bridel henten.  
'What folk be ye that at myn hom comynge  
Pertourben so my feste with cryenge?'  
Quod Theseus, 'have ye so gret envye  
Of myn honour, that thus compleyne and erie? 59  
Or who hath yow misboden, or offendid?  
And telleth me if it may ben amendid;  
And why that ye ben clad thus al in blak?'

The oldest lady of hem alle spak,  
When sche hadde swowned with a dedly chere,  
That it was routhe for to seen or heere;  
And seyde: 'Lord, to whom Fortune hath yeven  
Victorie, and as a conquerour to lyven,  
Noughte greveth us youre glorie and honour;  
But we beseken mercy and socour. 60  
Have merey on oure woo and oure distresso.  
Som drope of pitce, thurgh youre gentilnesse,  
Uppon us wreechede wommen lat thou falle.  
For certus, lord, ther nys noon of us alle,  
That sche nath ben a duchesse or a queene;  
Now be we caytifs, as it is wel seene:  
Thanked be Fortune, and hire false wheel,  
That noon estat assureth to ben weel.  
And certus, lord, to abiden youre presence  
Here in the temple of the goddesse Clemence 70  
We han ben waytynge al this fourtenight;  
Now helpe us, lord, syn it is in thy might.  
I wreeche, which that wepe and waylle thus,  
Was whilom wyf to kyng Capaneus,

That starf at Thebes, cursed be that day!  
And alle we that ben in this array,  
And maken alle this lamentacioun!  
We leften alle oure housbondes at the toun,  
Whil that the sege ther aboute lay.  
And yet the olde Creon, welaway! 80  
That lord is now of Thebes the eitee,  
Fulfilde of ire and of iniquité,  
He for despyt, and for his tyrannye,  
To do the deede bodyes vilonye,  
Of alle oure lordes, which that ben i-slawe,  
Hath alle the bodies on an heep y-drawe,  
And wol not suffren hem by noon assent  
Nother to ben y-buried nor i-brent,  
But maketh houndes etc hem in despite.  
And with that word, withoute more respite, 90  
They fillen gruf, and eriden pitously,  
'Have on us wrecched wommen som mercy,  
And lat oure sorwe synken in thyn herte.'  
This gentil duke down from his courser sterte  
With herte pitous, whan he herde hem speke.  
Him thoughte that his herte wolde breke,  
Whan he seyh hem so pitous and so maat,  
That whilom weren of so gret estat.  
And in his armes he hem alle up hente,  
And hem conforteth in ful good entente; 100  
And swor his oth, as he was trewe knight,  
He wolde do so ferforthly his might  
Upon the tyraunt Creon hem to wreke,  
That al the people of Greec seholde speke  
How Creon was of Theseus y-served,  
As he that hath his deth right wel deserved.  
And right anoon, withoute eny abood

His baner he desplayeth, and forth rood  
To Thebes-ward, and al his oost bysyde ;  
No ner Athenes wolde he go ne ryde, 110  
Ne take his eese fully half a day,  
But onward on his way that nyght he lay ;  
And sente anon Ypolita the queene,  
And Emelye hir yonge suster schene,  
Unto the toun of Athenes to dwelle ;  
And forth he ryt ; ther is no more to telle.

The reede statue of Mars with spere and targe  
So schyneth in his white baner large,  
That alle the feeldes gliteren up and down ;  
And by his baner was born his pynoun 120  
Of gold ful riche, in which ther was i-bete  
The Minatour which that he slough in Crete.  
Thus ryt this duk, thus ryt this conquerour,  
And in his oost of chevalrie the flour,  
Til that he eam to Thebes, and alighte  
Fayre in a feeld wher as he thoughte to fighte.  
But schortly for to speken of this thing,  
With Creon, which that was of Thebes kyng,  
He faught, and slough him manly as a knight  
In pleyn bataille, and putte his folk to flight ; 130  
And by assaut he wan the cité aftur,  
And rente doun bothe wal, and sparre, and raftur ;  
And to the ladies he restored agayn  
The bones of here housbondes that were slayn,  
To do exequies, as was tho the gyse.  
But it were al to long for to devyse  
The grete clamour and the waymentynge  
Which that the ladies made at the brennynge  
Of the bodyes, and the grete honour  
That Theseus the noble conquerour 140



Doth to the ladyes, whan they from him wente.  
 But schortly for to telle is myn entente.  
 Whan that this worthy duk, this Theseus,  
 Hath Creon slayn, and Thebes wonne thus,  
 Stille in the feelde he took al night his reste,  
 And dide with al the contré as him leste.

To ransake in the cas of bodyes dede  
 Hem for to streepe of herneys and of wede,  
 The pilours diden businesse and cure,  
 After the bataile and discomfiture. 150  
 And so byfil, that in the cas thei founde,  
 Thurgh girt with many a grevous bloody wounde,  
 Two yonge knightes liggyng by and by,  
 Both in oon armes clad ful richely;  
 Of whiche two, Arcite hight that oon,  
 And that othur knight hight Palamon.  
 Nat fully quyk, ne fully deed they were,  
 But by here coote armure, and by here gere,  
 Heraudes knewe hem wel in special,  
 As they that weren of the blood real 160  
 Of Thebes, and of sistren tuo i-born.  
 Out of the chaas the pilours han hem torn,  
 And han hem caried softe unto the tente  
 Of Theseus, and ful sone he hem sente  
 Tathenes, for to dwellen in prisoun  
 Perpetuely, he wolde no raunceoun.  
 And this duk whan he hadde thus i-doon,  
 He took his host, and hom he ryt anoon  
 With laurer crowned as a conquerour;  
 And there he lyveth in joye and in honour 170  
 Terme of his lyf; what wolle ye wordes moo?  
 And in a tour, in angwische and in woo,  
 This Palamon, and his felawe Arcite,



For evermo, ther may no gold hem quyte.  
This passeth yeer by yeer, and day by day,  
Til it fel oones in a morwe of May  
That Emelie, that fairer was to seene  
Than is the lilie on hire stalkes grene.  
And fresscher than the May with floures newe—  
For with the rose colour strof hire hewe, 180  
I not which was the *fairer* of hem two—  
Er it was day, as sehe was wont to do,  
Sche was arisen, and al redy dight;  
For May wole have no sloggardye a nyght.  
The sesoun priketh every gentil herte,  
And maketh him out of his sleepe sterte,  
And seith, ‘Arys, and do thin observance.’  
This maked Emelye han remembrance  
To do honour to May, and for to ryse.  
I-clothed was sche fressh for to devyse. 190  
Hire yolwe heer was browdid in a tresse,  
Byhynde hire bak, a yerde long I gesse.  
And in the gardyn at the sonne upriste  
Sche walketh up and down wher as hire liste.  
Sche gadereth floures, party whyte and recde,  
To make a *sotil* gerland for hire heede,  
And as an aungel heavenly sche song.  
The grete tour, that was so thikke and strong,  
Which of the castel was the cheef dongeoun,  
(Ther as this knightes weren in prisoun, 200  
Of which I tolde yow, and telle schal)  
Was evene joynyng to the gardeyn wal,  
Ther as this Emely hadde hire pleyynge,  
Bright was the sonne, and cleer that morwenynge,  
And Palamon, this woful prisoner,  
As was his wone, by leve of his gayler

Was risen, and romed in a chambre on heigh,  
 In which he al the noble cité seigh,  
 And eek the gardeyn, ful of braunches grenc,  
 Ther as the fresshe Emelye the scheene 210  
 Was in hire walk, and romed up and doun.  
 This sorweful prisoner, this Palamon,  
 Gooth in the chambre romyng to and fro,  
 And to himself compleynyng of his woo;  
 That he was born, ful ofte he seyde, alas!  
 And so byfel, by aventure or cas,  
 That thurgh a wyndow thikke and many a barre  
 Of iren greet and squar as eny sparre,  
 He cast his eyen upon Emelya,  
 And therwithal he bleynte and cryed, a! 220  
 As that he stongen were unto the herte.  
 And with that crye Arcite anon up sterte,  
 And seyde, 'Cosyn myn, what eyleth the,  
 That art so pale and deedly for to sec?  
 Why crydestow? who hath the doon offence?  
 For Goddes love, tak al in pacience  
 Oure prisoun, for it may non othir be;  
 Fortune hath yeven us this adversité.  
 Som wikke aspect or disposicioun  
 Of Saturne, by sum constellacioun, 230  
 Hath yeven us this, although we hadde it sworn;  
 So stood the heven whan that we were born;  
 We moste endure it: this is the schort and pleyn.'  
 This Palamon answered, and seyde ageyn,  
 'Cosyn, for-sothe of this opynyoun  
 Thou hast a veyn ymaginacioun.  
 This prisoun causede me not for to crye.  
 But I was hurt right now thurgh myn yhe  
 Into myn herte, that wol my bane be.

The fairnesse of the lady that I see 210  
Yonde in the gardyn romynge to and fro,  
Is cause of *al* my crying and my wo.  
I not whethur sche be womman or goddesse ;  
But Venus is it, sothly as I gesse.'  
And therwithal on knees adoun he fil,  
And seyde : ' Venus, if it be youre wil  
Yow in this gardyn thus to transfigure,  
Biforn me sorwful wrecched creature,  
Out of this prisoun help that we may scape.  
And if so be oure destyné be schape, 250  
By eterne word to deyen in prisoun,  
Of oure lynage haveth sum compassioun,  
That is so lowe y-brought by tyrannye.'  
And with that word Arcite gan espye  
Wher as this lady romed to and fro.  
And with that sight hire beauté hurt him so,  
That if that Palamon was wounded sore,  
Arcite is hurt as moche as he, or more.  
And with a sigh he seyde pitously :  
' The freissche beauté sleeth me sodeynly 260  
Of hir that rometh yonder in the place ;  
And but I have hir mercy and hir grace  
That I may see hir atte leste weye,  
I nam but deed ; ther nys no more to seye.  
This Palamon, whan he tho wordes herde,  
Dispitously he loked, and answerde :  
' Whether seistow in earnest or in pley ?'  
' Nay,' quoth Arcite, ' in earnest in good fey.  
God helpe me so, me luste ful evele pleye.'  
This Palamon gan knytte his browes tweye : 270  
' Hit nere,' quod he, ' to the no gret honour,  
For to be fals, ne for to be traytour

To me, that am thy eosyn and thy brother  
I-swore ful deepe, and ech of us to other,  
That never for to deyen in the payne,  
Til that deeth departe schal us twayne,  
Neyther of us in *love* to hynder other,  
Ne in non other eas, my leeve brother ;  
But that thou schuldest trewly forther me  
In every eaas, and I schal forther the.

280

This was thyn othe, and myn eek eertayn ;  
I wot right wel, thou darst it nat withsayn.  
Thus art thou of my counseil out of doute.  
And now thou woldest falsly ben aboute  
To love my lady, whom I love and serve,  
And evere schal, unto myn herte sterve.  
Now certes, fals Arcite, thou schal not so.  
I loved hir first, and tolde the my woo  
As to my counseil, and to brother sworn  
To forther me, as I have told biforn.

290

For which thou art i-bounden as a knight  
To helpe me, if it lay in thi might,  
Or elles art thou fals, I dar wel sayn.  
This Arcite ful proudly spak agayn.

‘Thou schalt,’ quoth he, ‘be rather fals than I.  
But thou art fals, I telle the uttirly.

For *par amour* I loved hir first then thow.

What wolt thou sayn ? thou wost not yit now  
Whether sche be a womman or goddesse.

Thyn is affeceioun of holynesse,

300

And myn is love, as of a creature ;

For which I tolde the myn adventure

As to my eosyn, and my brother sworn.

I pose, that thou lovedest hire biforn :

Wost thou nat wel the olde clerkes sawe,

That who schal yeve a lover eny lawe,  
Love is a grettere lawe, by my pan,  
Then may be yeve to eny erthly man?  
Therefore posityf lawe, and such decreté,  
Is broke alway for love in ech degree. 310  
A man moot needes love maugre his heed.  
He may nought fle it, though he schulde be deed,  
Al be sche mayde, or bo sche widewe or wyf.  
And *eke* it is nat likly al thy lyf  
To stonden in hire grace, no more schal I;  
For wel thou wost thyselfen verrily,  
That thou and I been dampned to prisoun  
Perpetuelly, us gayneth no raunsoun.  
We stryve, as doth the houndes for the boon,  
They foughte al day, and yit here part was noon;  
Ther com a kyte, whil that they were wrothe, 321  
And bar away the boon bitwixe hem bothe.  
And therfore at the kynges court, my brother,  
Eche man for himself, ther is non other.  
Love if the liste; for I love and ay schal;  
And sothly, leeve brother, this is al.  
*Here* in this prisoun moote we endure,  
And every of us take his aventure.  
Gret was the stryf and long bytwixe hem tweye,  
If that I hadde leysir for to seye; 330  
But to the effect. It happed on a day,  
(To telle it yow as schortly as I may)  
A worthy duk that highte Perotheus,  
That felaw was to the duk Theseus  
Syn thilke day that they were children lyte,  
Was come to Athenes, his felawe to visite,  
And for to pley, as he was wont to do,  
For in this world he lovede noman so:

And he loved him as tendurly agayn.  
So wel they loved, as olde bookes sayn, 340  
That whan *that* oon was deed, sothly to telle,  
His felawe wente and sought him down in helle;  
But of that story lyste me nought to write.  
Duk Perotheus lovede wel Arcite,  
And hadde him knowe at Thebes yeer by yeer;  
And fynally at requeste and prayer  
Of Perotheus, withoute any raunsoun  
Duk Theseus him leet out of prisoun,  
Frely to go, wher him lust overal,  
In such a gyse, as I you telle schal. 350  
This was the forward, playnly to endite,  
Betwixe Theseus and him Arcite:  
That if so were, that Arcite were founde  
Evere in his lyf, by daye or night, or stound  
In eny contré of this Theseus,  
And he were caught, it was acorded thus,  
That with a sword he scholde lese his heed;  
Ther nas noon other remedy ne reed,  
But took his leeve, and homward he him spedde;  
Let him be war, his nekke lith to wedde. 360

How gret a sorwe suffreth now Arcite!  
The deeth he feleth thorough his herte smyte;  
He weepeth, weyleth, cryeth pitously;  
To slen himself he wayteth pryvyly.  
He seyde, 'Allas tho day that I was born!  
Now is my prisoun werse than was biforn;  
Now is me schape eternally to dwelle  
Nought in purgatorie, but in helle.  
Allas! that ever knewe I Perotheus!  
For elles had I dweld with Theseus 370  
I-fetered in his prisoun for evere moo.

Than had I ben in blis, and nat in woo.  
Oonly the sight of hir, whom that I serve,  
Though that I hir grace may nat deserve,  
Wold han sufficed right ynough for me.  
O dere cosyn Palamon,' quod he,  
'Thyn is the victoire of this aventure,  
Ful blisfully in prisoun to endure;  
In prisoun? nay, certes but in paradys!  
Wel hath fortune y-torned the *the* dys, 380  
That hath the sight of hir, and I the absence.  
For possible is, syn thou hast hir presence,  
And art a knight, a worthi and an able,  
That by som cas, syn fortune is chaungable,  
Thou maist to thy desir somtyme atteyne.  
But I that am exiled, and bareyne  
Of alle grace, and in so gret despeir,  
That ther nys water, erthe, fyr, ne eyr,  
Ne creature, that of hem maked is,  
That may me helpe ne comfort in this. 390  
Wel ought I sterve in wanhope and distresse;  
Farwel my lyf and al my jolynesse.  
Allas! why playnen folk so in comune  
Of purveance of God, or of fortune,  
That yeveth him ful ofte in many a gyse  
Wel better than thei can hemself devyse?  
Som man desireth for to have richesse,  
That cause is of his morthre or gret seeknesse.  
And som man wolde out of his prisoun fayn,  
That in his hous is of his mayné slayn. 400  
Infinite harmes ben in this mateere;  
We wote nevere what thing we prayen heere.  
We faren as he that dronke is as a mows.  
A dronke man wot wel he hath an hous,



But he not nat which the righte wey is thider,  
 And to a dronke man the wey is slider,  
 And certes in this world so faren we.

We seeken faste after felicite,

But we gon wrong ful ofte trewely.

Thus may we seyen alle, and namely I,

410

That wende have had a gret opinioun,

That yif I mighte skape fro prisoun,

Than had I be in joye and perfyte hele,

Ther now I am exiled fro my wele.

Syn that I may not se yow, Emelye,

I nam but deed; ther nys no remedye.'

Uppon that other syde Palomon,

Whan he wiste that Arcite was agoon,

Such sorwe maketh, that the grete tour

Resowneth of his yollyng and clamour.

420

The pure feteres of his schynes grete

Weren of his bitter salte teres wete.

'Allas!' quod he, 'Arcita, eosyn myn,

Of al oure strif, God woot, the fruyt is thin.

Thow walkest now in Thebes at thi large,

And of my woo thou yevest litel charge.

Thou maiste, *syn* thou hast wysdom and manhede,

Assemble al the folk of oure kynrede,

And make a werre so scharpe in this cité,

That by som aventure, or by som treté,

430

Thou mayst hire wyne to lady and to wyf,

For whom that I moste needes leese my lyf.

For as by woy of possibilité,

Syn thou art at thi large of prisoun free,

And art a lord, gret is thin advantage,

More than is myn, that sterve here in a kage.

For I moot weepe and weyle, whil *that* I lyve,



With al the woo that prisoun may me yyve,  
And eek with peyne that love me yeveth also,  
That doubleth al my *torment* and my wo.' 440  
Therwith the fuyr of jelousye upsterte  
Withinne his brest, and hent him by the herte  
So wodly, that lik was he to byholde  
The box-tree, or the assehen deed and colde.  
Tho seyde he; ' O goddes eruel, that governe  
This world with byndyng *of youre* word eterne,  
And writen in the table of athamaunte  
Your parlement and youre eterne graunte,  
What is mankynde more to yow holde  
Than is a scheep, that rouketh in the folde? 450  
For slayn is man right as another beste,  
And dwelleth eek in prisoun and arreste,  
And hath seknesse, and greet adversité,  
And ofte tymes gilteles, pardé.  
What governaunee is in youre prescience,  
That gilteles tormenteth innocence?  
And yet enereceth this al my penaunce,  
That man is bounden to his observaunce  
For Goddes sake to letten of his wille,  
Ther as a beste may al his lust fulfille. 460  
And whan a beste is deed, he ne hath no peyne;  
But man after his deth moot wepe and pleyne,  
Though in this world he have eare and woo:  
Withouten doute it may stonde so.  
The answer of this I lete to divinis,  
But wel I woot, that in this world gret pync is.  
Allas! I se a serpent or a theef,  
That many a trewe man hath doon mescheef,  
Gon at his large, and wher him luste may turne.  
But I moste be in prisoun thurgh Saturne, 470

And eek thorough Juno, jealous and eke wood,  
 That hath destroyed wel neyh al the blood  
 Of Thebes, with his waste walles wyde.  
 And Venus sleeth me on that other syde  
 For jelousye, and fere of him Arcyte.'

Now wol I stynte of Palamon a lite,  
 And lete him stille in his prisoun dwelle,  
 And of Arcita forth than wol I telle.  
 The somer passeth, and the nightes longe  
 Enerescen double wise the peynes stronge

480

Bothe of the lover and the prisoner.  
 I noot which hath the wofullere cheer.  
 For schortly for to sey, this Palomon  
 Perpetuelly is dampned in prisoun,  
 In cheynes and in feteres to be deed;  
 And Arcite is exiled upon his heed  
 For evere mo as out of that contré,  
 Ne nevere mo schal he his lady see.  
 Now loyveres axe I this question,  
 Who hath the worse, Arcite or Palomon?  
 That on may se his lady day by day,  
 But in prisoun he moot dwelle alway.  
 That other may wher him luste ryde or go,  
 But seen his lady schal he never mo.  
 Now deemeth as you luste, ye that can,  
 For I wol telle forth as I bigan.

490

Whan that Arcite to Thebes come was,  
 Ful ofte a day he swelde and seyde alas!  
 For seen his lady schal he never mo.  
 And schortly to concluden al his wo,  
 So moche sorwe hadde never creature,  
 That is or schal whil that the world wol dure.  
 His sleep, his meto, his drynk is him byraft,

500

That lene he wexe, and drye as eny schaft.  
His eyen holwe, grisly to biholde ;  
His hewe falwe, and pale as assehen colde,  
And solitary he was, and ever alone,  
And dwellyng al the night, making his moone.  
And if he herde song or instrument,  
Then wolde he wepe, he mighte nought be stent ;  
So feble were his spirites, and so lowe. 511  
And chaunged so, that no man couthe knowe  
His speche nother his vois, though men it herde.  
And in his gir, for al the world he ferde  
Nought oonly lyke the lovers maladye  
Of Hereos, but rather lik manye,  
Engendrud of humour malencolyk,  
Byforne in his selle fantasyk.  
And schortly turned was al up-so-doun  
Bothe abytt and eek disposicioun 520  
Of him, this woful love-re daunce Arcite.  
What schulde I alway of his wo endite ?  
Whan he endured hadde a yeer or tuo  
In this cruel torment, *and this* peyne and woo,  
At Thebes, in his eontré, as I seyde,  
Upon a night in sleep as he him leyde,  
Him thoughte that how the wenged god Mercurie  
Byfor him stood, and bad him to be murye.  
His slepy yerd in hond he bar upright ;  
An hat he wered upon his heres bright. 530  
Arrayed was this god (as he took keepe)  
As he was whan that Argous took his sleep ;  
And seyde *him thus*: 'To Athenes schalt thou wende ;  
Ther is the schapen of thy wo an ende.'  
And with that word Arcite wook and sterte.  
' Now trewely how sore that me smerte.'

Quod he, 'to Athenes right now wol I fare ;  
Ne for the drede of deth schal I not spare  
To see my lady, that I love and serve ;  
In hire presence I reeehe nat to sterve.' 540  
And with that word he caught a gret myrour,  
And saugh that chaunged was al his colour,  
And saugh his visage was in another kynde.  
And right anon it ran him into mynde.  
That seththen his face was so disfigured  
Of maladie the which he hath endured,  
He mighte wel, if that he bar him lowe,  
Lyve in Athenes evere more unknowe,  
And see his lady wel neih day by day.  
And right anon he chaunged his aray, 550  
And clothed him as a pore laborer.  
And al alone, save oonly a squyer,  
That knew his pryvyté and al his cas,  
Which was disgysed povrely as he was,  
To Athenes is he go the nexte way.  
And to the court he went upon a day,  
And at the gate he profred his servyse,  
To drugge and drawe, what-so men wolde devyse.  
And schortly on this matier for to seyn,  
He fel in office with a chambirleyn, 560  
The which that dwellyng was with Emelye.  
For he was wys, and couthe sone aspye  
Of every servaunt, which that served here.  
Wel couthe he hewe woode, and water bere,  
For he was yonge and mighty for the nones,  
And therto he was long and bygge of bones  
To doon that eny wight can him devyse.  
A yeer or two he was in this servise,  
Page of the chambrc of Emelye the brighte ;

And Philostrate he seide that he highte. 570  
But half so wel byloved a man as he  
Ne was ther never in court of his degree.  
He was so gentil of his condicioun,  
That thoruhout al the court was his renoun.  
They seyde that it were a charité  
That Theseus would enhaunsen his degree,  
And putten him in worschipful servyse,  
Ther as he might his vertu excercise.  
And thus withinne a while his name spronge  
Bothe of his dedes, and of goode tonge, 580  
That Theseus hath taken him so neer  
That of his chambre he made him squyer,  
And yaf him gold to mayntene his degree;  
And eek men brought him out of his countré  
Fro yeer to yer ful pryvyly his rente;  
But honestly and sleighly he it spente,  
That no man wondred how that he it hadde.  
And thre yeer in this wise his lyf he ladde,  
And bar him so in pees and eek in werre,  
Ther nas no man that Theseus hath so derre. 590  
And in this blisse lete I now Arcite,  
And speke I wole of Palomon a lyte.

In derknes and horrible and strong prisoun  
This seven yeer hath seten Palomon,  
Forpyned, what for woo and for destresse,  
Who feleth double sorwe and hevynesse  
But Palamon? that love destreyneth so,  
That wood out of his witt he goth for wo;  
And eek therto he is a prisoner  
Perpetuelly, nat oonly for a yeer. 600  
Who couthe ryme in Englissch propurly  
His martirdam? for-sothe it am nat I;

Therefore I passe as lightly as I may.  
It fel that in the seventhe yeer in May  
The thridde night, (as olde bookes seyn,  
That al this storie tellen more pley)n  
Were it by aventure or destené,  
(As, whan a thing is sehapen, it schal be,)  
That soone aftur the mydnyght, Palamoun  
By helpyng of a freend brak his prisoun, 610  
And fleeth the eite fast as he may goo,  
For he hade yive drinke his gayler soo  
Of a clarre, maad of *a* certeyn wyn,  
With nercotykes and opye of Thebes fyn,  
That al that night though that men wolde him sehake,  
The gayler sleep, he mighte nought awake.  
And thus he fleeth as fast as ever he may.  
The night was schort, and faste by the day,  
That needes eost he moste himselven hyde,  
And til a grove ther faste besyde. 620  
With dredful foot than stalketh Palomoun.  
For sehortly this was his opynyoun,  
That in that grove he wolde him hyde al day,  
And in the night then wolde he take his way  
To Thebes-ward, his frendes for to preye  
On Theseus to helpe him to werreye.  
And shortelieh, or he wolde lese his lyf,  
Or wynnen Emelye unto his wyf.  
This is theffect of his entente playn.  
Now wol I torne unto Arcite agayn, 630  
That litel wiste how nyh that was his eare,  
Til that fortune hath brought him in the snare.

The busy larke, messenger of *day*,  
Salueth in hiro song the morwe gray;  
And fyry Phebus ryseth up so bright,

That al the orient laughoth of the light,  
And with his stremes dryeth in the greves  
The silver dropes, hongyng on the leeves.  
And Arcite, that is in the court ryal  
With Theseus, his squyer principal, 640  
Is risen, and loketh on the mery day.  
And for to doon his observance to May,  
Remembryng of the poynt of his desire,  
He on his courser, stertyng as the fire,  
Is riden into feldeles him to pleye,  
Out of the court, were it a myle or tweyc.  
And to the grove, of which that I yow tolde,  
By aventure his wey he gan to holde,  
To make him a garland of the greves,  
Were it of woodewynde or hawthorn leves, 650  
And lowde he song ayens the sonne scheene :  
' May, with al thyn floures and thy greene,  
Welcome be thou, wel faire freissche May !  
I hope that I som grene gete may.'  
And fro his courser, with a lusty herte,  
Into the grove ful lustily he sterte,  
And in a pathe he romed up and down,  
Ther by aventure this Palamoun  
Was in a busche, that no man might him see.  
Ful sore afered of his deth was he, 660  
Nothing ne knew he that it was Arcite :  
God wot he wolde have trowed it ful lite.  
For soth is seyde, goon ful many yeres,  
That feld hath eyen, and the woode hath eeres.  
It is ful fair a man to bere him evene,  
For al day meteth men atte unset stevene.  
Ful litel woot Arcite of his felawe,  
That was so neih to herken of his sawe,



For in the busche he stynteth now ful stille.  
Whan that Arcite hadde romed al his fille, 670  
And songen al the roundel lustily,  
Into a studie he fel sodeynly,  
As doth thes lovers in here queynte geeres,  
Now in the croppe, now down in the breres,  
Now up, now down, as boket in a welle.  
Right as the Friday, sothly for to telle,  
Now it schyneth, now it reyneth faste,  
Right so gan gery Venus overcaste  
The hertes of hire folk, right as hir day  
Is *gerful*, right so chaungeth hire aray. 680  
Selde is the Fryday al the wyke i-like.  
Whan that Arcite hadde songe, he gan to sike,  
And sette him down withouten eny more :  
'Alas !' quod he, 'that day that I was bore !  
How longe Juno, thurgh thy cruelté  
Wiltow werreyen Thebes the citee ?  
Allas ! i-brought is to confusioun  
The blood royal of Cadme and Amphioun ;  
Of Cadynus, the which was the furst man  
That Thebes bulde, or first the toun bygan, 690  
And of that eité first was crowned kyng,  
Of his lynage am I, and his ofspring  
By verray lyne, and of his stok ryal :  
And now I am so caytyf and so thral,  
That he that is my mortal enemy,  
I serve him as his squyer povrely.  
And yet doth Juno me wel more schame,  
For I dar nought byknowo myn owne name,  
But ther as I was wont to hote Arcite,  
Now hote I Philostrate, nought worth a myte.  
Allas ! thou felle Mars, allas ! Juno, 701



Thus hath youre ire owre lynage fordo,  
Save oonly me, and wrecchid Palomon,  
That Theseus martyreth in prisoun.  
And over al this, to slee me utterly,  
Love hath his fyry dart so brennyngly  
I-stykid thorough my trewe careful herte,  
That schapen was my deth erst than my scherte.  
Ye slen me with youre eyhen, Emelye;  
Ye ben the cause wherfore that I dye. 710  
Of al the remenant of al myn other care  
Ne sette I nought the mountaunce of a tare,  
So that I couthe do ought to youre pleasaunce.  
And with that word he fel down in a traunce  
A longe tyme; and aftirward upsterte  
This Palamon, that thoughte thurgh his herte  
He felt a cold swerd sodeynliche glyde;  
For ire he quook, he nolde no lenger abyde.  
And whan that he hath herd Arcites tale,  
As he were wood, with face deed and pale, 720  
He sterte him up out of the bussches thikke,  
And seyde: 'Arcyte, false traitour wikke,  
Now art thou hent, that lovest my lady so,  
For whom that I have al this peyne and wo,  
And art my blood, and to my counseil sworn,  
As I ful ofte have told the heere byforn,  
And hast byjaped here the duke Theseus,  
And falsly chaunged hast thy name thus;  
I wol be deed, or elles thou schalt dye.  
Thou schalt not love my lady Emelye, 730  
But I wil love hire oonly and no mo;  
For I am Palomon thy mortal fo.  
And though that I no wepen have in this place,  
But out of prisoun am y-stert by grace,

I drode not that other thou schalt dye,  
Or thou ne schalt not love Emelye.  
Chese which thou wilt, for thou schalt not asterte.’  
This Arcite, with ful despitous herte,  
Whan he him knew, and had his tale herde,  
As fers as a lyoun pulleth out a swerde, 740  
And seide thus: ‘By God that sitteth above,  
Nere it that thou art sike and wood for love,  
And eek that thou no wepne hast in this place,  
*Thou scholdest never out of this grove pace,*  
That thou ne schuldest deyen of myn hond.  
For I defye the seurté and the bond  
Which that thou seyst I have maad to the.  
For, verray fool, thenk that love is fre;  
And I wol love hire mawgre al thy might.  
But, for thou art a gentil perfight knight, 750  
And wenest to dereyne hire by batayle,  
Have heere my trouthe, to morwe I nyl not fayle,  
Withouten wityng of eny other wight,  
That heer I wol be founden as a knight,  
And bryngen harneys right inough for the;  
And ches the best, and lef the worst for me.  
And mete and drynke this night wil I brynge  
Inough for the, and cloth for thy beddyng.  
And if so be that thou my lady wyne,  
And sle me in this wood that I am inne, 760  
Thou maist wel have thy lady as for me.’  
This Palomon answereth, ‘I graunt it the.’  
And thus they ben departed til a-morwe,  
Whan ech of hem hadde leyd his feith to borwe.

O Cupido, out of al charité!

O regne, that wolt no felaw have with the  
Ful soth is seyde, that love ne lordschipe

Wol not, his thonkes, have no felaschipe.  
Wel fynden that Areite and Palamoun.  
Areite is riden anon to the toun, 770  
And on the morwe, or it were day light,  
Ful prively two harneys hath he dight,  
Bothe sufficaunt and mete to darreyne  
The batayl in the feeld betwix hem tweyne.  
And on his hors, alone as he was born,  
He caryed al this harneys him byforn ;  
And in the grove, at tyme and plaece i-sette,  
This Arcite and this Palamon ben mette.  
Tho chaungen gan here colour in here face.  
Right as the *honter* in the regne of Traece 780  
That stondeth in the gappe with a spere,  
Whan honted is the lyoun or the bere,  
And hereth him comyng in the greves,  
And breketh bothe the bowes and the leves,  
And thenketh, ‘ Here cometh my mortel enemy,  
Withoute faile, he mot be deed or I ;  
For eyther I mot slen him at the gappe,  
Or he moot slee me, if it me myshappe :’  
So ferden they, in chaungyng of here hew,  
As fer as eyther of hem other knew. 790  
Ther nas no good day, ne no saluyng ;  
But streyt withouten wordes rehersyng,  
Every of hem helpeth to armen other,  
As frendly as he were his owen brother ;  
And thanne with here scharpe speres strongo  
They foyneden eeh at other wonder longe.  
Tho it semede that this Palomon  
In his fightyng were as a wood lyoun,  
And as a cruel tygre was Arcite :  
As wilde boores gonne they to smyte, 800

That frothen white as fome, *for ire* wood.  
 Up to the ancle they faught in here blood.  
 And in this wise I lete hem fightyng welle;  
 And forthere I wol of Theseus telle.

The destiné, mynistre general,  
 That *executeth* in the world overal  
 The purveans, that God hath seye byforn;  
 So strong it is, that they the world hadde sworn  
 The contrary of a thing by ye or nay,  
 Yet som tyme it schal falle upon a day 819  
 That falleth nought eft in a thousand yeere.  
 For certeynly oure appetites heere,  
 Be it of *werre*, or pees, other hate, or love,  
 Al is it reuled by the sight above.  
 This mene I now by mighty Theseus,  
 That for to honte is so desirous,  
 And namely the grete hert in May,  
 That in his bed ther daweth him no day,  
 That he nys elad, and redy for to ryde  
 With hont and horn, and houndes him byside. 820  
 For in his hontyng hath he such delyt,  
 That *it* is *al* his joye and appetyt  
 To been himself the grete hertes bane,  
 For after *Mars* he serveth now Dyane.

Cleer was the day, as I have told or this,  
 And Theseus, with alle joye and blys,  
 With his Ypolita, the fayre queene,  
 And Emelye, clothed al in greene,  
 On hontyng be thay riden ryally.  
 And to the grove, that stood ther faste by, 830  
 In which ther was an hert as men him tolde,  
 Duk Theseus the streyte wey hath holde.  
 And to the launde he rydeth him ful right,

There was the hert y-wont to have his flight,  
And over a brook, and so forth in his weye.  
This duk wol have of him a cours or tweye  
With houndes, which as him luste to comaunde.  
And whan this duk was come into the launde,  
Under the sonne he loketh, right anon  
He was war of Arcite and Palomon, 810  
That foughten breeme, as it were boores tuo;  
The brighte swerdes wente to and fro  
So hidously, that with the leste strook  
It seemeth as it wolde felle an ook;  
But what they were, nothing yit he woot.  
This duk with spores his courser he smoot,  
And at a stert he was betwixt hem tuoo,  
And pullid out a swerd and cride, ‘Hoo!  
Nomore, up peyne of leesyng of your heed.  
By mighty Mars, anon he schal be dedd, 850  
That smyteth eny strook, that I may seen!  
But telleth me what mestir men ye been,  
That ben so hardy for to fighten heere  
Withoute jugge or other officere,  
As it were in a lyste really?’  
This Palamon answerde hastily,  
And seyde: ‘Sire, what nedeth wordes mo?  
We han the deth deserved bothe tuo.  
Tuo woful wrecches been we, and kaytyves,  
That ben encombred of oure owne lyves; 860  
And as thou art a rightful lord and juge,  
Ne yeve us neyther mercy ne refuge.  
And sle me first, for seynte charité;  
But sle my felaw eek as wel as me.  
Or sle him first; for, though thou knowe him lyte,  
This is thy mortal fo, this is Arcite,

That fro thy lond is banyscht on his heed,  
For which he hath i-served to be deed.  
For this is he that come to thi gate  
And seyde, that he highte Philostrate. 870  
Thus hath he japed the many a yer,  
And thou hast maad of him thy cheef squyer.  
And this is he that loveth Emelye.  
For sith the day is come that I schal dye,  
I make pleyonly my confessioun,  
That I am the woful Palamoun,  
That hath thi prisoun broke wikkedly.  
I am thy mortal foo, and it am I  
That loveth so hoote Emely the bright,  
That I wol dye present in hire sight. 880  
Therefore I aske deeth and my juwyse ;  
But slee my felaw in the same wyse,  
For bothe we have served to be slayn.'

This worthy duk answerde anon agayn,  
And seide : ' This is a schort eonclusioun :  
Your owne mouth, by your owne confessioun,  
Hath dampned you bothe, and I wil it recorde.  
It needeth nought to pyne yow with the eorde.  
Ye schul be deed by mighty Mars the reede !'  
The queen anon for verray wommanhede 890  
Gan for to wepe, and so dede Emelye,  
And alle the ladies in *the* companye.  
Great pité was it, as it thought hem alle,  
That evere such a ehaunee schulde falle ;  
For gentil men thei were and of gret estate,  
And nothing but for love was this debate.  
And saw here bloody woundes wyde and sore ;  
And alle they cryde lesse and the more,  
' Have mercy, Lord, upon us wommen alle !'

And on here bare knees anon they falle, 900  
And wolde have kissed his bare feet right as he stood,  
Til atte laste aslaked was his mood ;  
For pite renneth sone in gentil herte.  
And though he *firste* for ire quok and sterte  
He hath it al considered in a clause,  
The trespass of hem bothe, and here cause :  
And although his ire here gylt accusede,  
Yet he, in his resoun, hem bothe excusede ;  
And thus he thoughte that every maner man  
Wol help himself in love if that he can, 910  
And eek dolyver himself out of prisoun.  
And eek in his hert hadde compassioun  
Of wommen, for they wepen ever in oon ;  
And in his gentil hert he thought anon,  
And sothly he to himself seyde : ‘ Fy  
Upon a lord that wol have no merey,  
But be a lyoun bothe in word *and* dede,  
To hem that ben in repentaunce and drede,  
As wel as to a proud dispitious man,  
That wol maynteyne that he first bigan. 920  
That lord hath litel of discrecioun,  
That in such caas can no divisioun ;  
But wayeth pride and humblenesse after oon,  
And schortly, whan his ire is over-gon,  
He gan to loke on hem with eyen light,  
And spak these same wordes al in hight.  
‘ The god of love, a ! *benedicite*,  
How mighty and how gret a lord is he !  
Agayns his might ther gayneth non obstaele,  
He may be eleped a god of his miracle ; 930  
For he can maken at his owen gyse  
Of every herte, as him luste devyse.



Lo her is Areite and Palomon,  
That quyately were out of my prisoun,  
And might have lyved in Thebes ryally,  
And witen I am here mortal enemy,  
And that here deth lith in my might also,  
And yet hath love, maugré here eyghen tuo,  
I-brought hem hider bothe for to dye.  
Now loketh, is nat that an heih folye? 940  
Who may *not* be a fole, if that he love?  
Byholde for Goddes *sake* that sitteth above,  
Se how they blede! be they nought wel arrayed!  
Thus hath here lord, the god of love, hem payed  
Here wages and here fees for here servise.  
And yet wenen they to ben *ful* wise,  
That serven love, for ought that may bifalle.  
But this is yette tho beste game of alle,  
That sche, for whom they have this jelousye,  
Can hem therfore as moche thank as *jolite*. 950  
Sehe woot no more of al this hoot fare,  
By God, than wot a cuckow or an hare.  
But al moot ben assayed hoot or colde;  
A man moot ben a fool other yong or olde;  
I woot it by myself ful yore agon:  
For in my tyme a servant was I on.  
And sythen that I knewe of loves peyne,  
And wot how sore it ean a man destreyne,  
As he that hath often ben eaught in his laee,  
I you foryevo holly this trespace, 960  
At the request of the queen that kneleth heere,  
And eek of Emely, my suster deere.  
And ye schullen bothe anon unto me swere,  
That never ye sehullen my eorowne dere,  
Ne make werro on me night ne day,



But be my freendes *in alle* that ye may.  
I you foryeve this trespas every dele.'  
And they him swore his axyng *faire and wele*,  
And him of lordschip and of mercy prayde,  
And he hem graunted mercy, and thus he sayde :  
' To speke of real lynage and riches 971  
Though that sche were a qucen or a prynees,  
Ilk of yow bothe is worthy doutes  
To wodde when tyme is, but natheles  
I speke as for my suster Emelye,  
For whom ye have this stryf and jelousye,  
Ye woot youreself sche may not wodde two  
At oones, though ye faughten ever mo :  
That oon of yow, or be him loth or leef,  
He may go pypen in an ivy leef; 980  
This is to say, sche may nought have bothe,  
Al be ye never so jelous, ne so lothe.  
For-thy I put you bothe in this degré,  
That ilk of you schal have his destyné,  
As him is schape, and herken in what wyse ;  
Lo here your ende of that I schal devyse.  
My wil is this, for playn conclusioun,  
Withouten eny repplicacioun,  
If that you likoth, tak it for the beste,  
That every of you schal go wher him leste 990  
Frely withouten raunsoun or daungeor ;  
And this day fyfty wykes, fer ne neer,  
Everich of you schal bryng an hundred knightes,  
Armed for lystes up at alle rightes  
Al redy to derayne hir by batayle.  
And thus byhote I you withouten fayle  
Upon my trouthe, and as I am a knight,  
That whethir of yow bothe that hath might,

This is to seyn, that whethir he or thou  
May with his hundred, as I spak of now, 1000  
Sle his contrary, or out of lystes dryve,  
Him schal I yeve Emelye to wyve,  
To whom that fortune yeveth so fair a grace.  
The lyste schal I make in this place,  
And God so wisly on my sowle rewe,  
As I schal even juge ben and trewe.  
Ye schul non othir ende with me make,  
That oon of yow schal be deed or take.  
And if you thinketh this is wel i-sayde,  
Say youre avys, and holdeth yow apayde. 1010  
This is youre ende and youre concludioun.  
Who loketh lightly now but Palomoun?  
Who spryngeth up for joye but Arcite?  
Who couthe telle, or who couthe endite,  
The joye that is made in this place  
Whan Theseus hath don so fair a grace?  
But down on knees wente every wight,  
And thanked him with al here hertes miht,  
And namely the Thebanes ofte sithe.  
And thus with good hope and herte blithe 1020  
They taken here leve, and hom-ward they ryde  
To Thebes-ward, with olde walles wyde.

I trow men wolde it deme necligence,  
If I foryete to telle the dispence  
Of Theseus, that goth so busily  
To maken up the lystes rially.  
And such a noble theatre as it was,  
I dar wel say that in this world ther nas.  
The circuite ther was a myle aboute,  
Walled of stoon, and dyched al withoute. 1030  
Round was the schap, in maner of compaas;

Ful of degré, the height of sixty paas,  
That whan a man was set in o degré  
He lettede nought his felaw for to se.

Est-ward ther stood a gate of marbul whit,  
West-ward such another in opposit.  
And schortly to conelude, such a place  
Was non in erthe in so litel space.

In al the lond ther nas no craftys man,  
That geometry or arsmetrike can,

1040

Ne portreyour, ne kerver of ymages,  
That Theseus ne yaf hem mete and wages  
The theatre for to maken and devyse.

And for to don his right and sacrificse,  
He est-ward hath upon the gate above,

In worschip of Venus, goddes of love,

Don make an auter and an oratory;

And westward in the mynde and in memory

Of Mars, he hath i-maked such another,

That coste largely of gold a fother.

1050

And northward, in a toret on the walle,

Of alabaster whit and reed coralle

An oratory riche for to see,

In worschip of Dyane, goddes of chastité,

Hath Theseus i-wrought in noble wise.

But yit had I forgeten to devyse

The nobil kervyng, and the purtretures,

The schap, the contynaunce of the figures,

That weren in these oratories thre.

Furst in the temple of Venus thou may se 1060

Wrought in the wal, ful pitous to byholde,

The broken slepes, and the sykes colde;

The sacred teeres, and the waymentyng;

The fuyry strokes of the desiryng,

That loves servauntz in this lyf enduren ;  
The othes that by her covenantz assuren.  
Plesance and hope, desyr, fool-hardynesse,  
Beaute and youthe, baudery and richesse,  
Charmes and sorcery, lesynges and flatery,  
Dispense, busynes, and jelousy, 1070  
That werud of yolo guldres a gerland,  
And a cukkow sitting on hire hand ;  
Festes, instrumentz, carols, and daunces,  
Lust and array, and al the eircumstaunces  
Of love, which I rekned and reken sehal,  
Ech by other were peynted on the wal.  
And mo than I can make of meneioun.  
For sothly al the mount of Setheroun,  
Ther Venus hath hir principal dwellyng,  
Was schewed on the wal here portrayng 1080  
With alle the gardyn, and al the lustynes.  
Nought was foryete ; the porter Ydelnes,  
Ne Narcisus the fayr of yore agon,  
Ne yet the foly of kyng Salomon,  
Ne eek the grete strengthe of him Hereules,  
Thenchaumentz of Medea and Cerces,  
Ne of Turnus the hard fuyry corage,  
The riche Cresus caytif in servage.  
Thus may we see, that wisdom and riches,  
Beauté ne sleight, strengthe ne hardynes, 1090  
Ne may with Venus holde champartye,  
For as sehe luste the world than may sehe gye.  
Lo, al this folk i-caught were in hire trace,  
Til they for wo ful often sayde allas.  
Suffieeth this ensample oon or tuo,  
And though I couthe reken a thousand mo.  
The statu of Venus, glorious for to see,

Was naked fletyng in the large see,  
And fro the navel doun al covered was  
With waves grene, *and* bright as eny glas. 1100  
A eitole in hire right hand hadde sehe,  
And on hir heed, ful semely on to see,  
A rose garland ful swete and wel smellyng,  
And aboven hire heed dowves *flikeryng*.  
Biforn hir stood hir sone Cupido,  
Upon his schuldres were wynges two ;  
And blynd he was, as it is often seene ;  
A bowe he bar and arwes fair and *kene*.  
Why schuld I nought as wel telle you alle  
The portraiture, that was upon the walle 1110  
Within the temple of mighty Mars the reede ?  
Al peynted was the wal in length and breede  
Like to the estres of the grisly place,  
That hight the gret tempul of Mars in Traee,  
In that colde and frosty regioun,  
Ther as Mars hath his sovereyn maneion.  
First on the wal was peynted a foreste,  
In which ther dwellede neyther man ne beste,  
With knotty knarry bareyn trees olde  
Of stubbes seharpe and hidous to byholde ; 1120  
In which ther ran a swymbul in a swough,  
As it were a storme schulde berst every bough :  
And downward on an hil under a bent,  
Ther stood the tempul of Marz armypotent,  
Wrought al of burned steel, of which thentre  
Was long and streyt, and gastly for to see.  
And therout came a rage of suche a prise,  
That it maad al the gates for to rise.  
The northen light in at the dore schon,  
For wyndow on the walle *ne* was ther noon, 1130

Thorugh the which men might no light discerne.  
 The dores wer alle ademauntz eterne,  
 I-clenched overthward and endelong  
 With iren tough ; and, for to make it strong,  
 Every piler the tempul to sustene  
 Was tonne greet, of iren bright and schene.  
 Ther saugh I furst the derk ymaginyng  
 Of felony, and al the compassyng ;  
 The cruel ire, as reed as eny gleede ;  
 The pikepurs, and cek the pale drede ; 1140  
 The smyler with the knyf under his cloke ;  
 The schipne brennyng with the blake smoke ;  
 The tresoun of the murtheryng in the bed ;  
 The open werres, with woundes al bi-bled ;  
 Contek with bloody knyf, and scharp manace.  
 Al ful of chirkyng was that sory place.  
 The sleer of himself yet saugh I there,  
 His herte-blood hath bathed al his here ;  
 The nayl y-dryve in the schode a-nyght ;  
 The colde deth, with mouth gapyng upright. 1150  
 Amyddes of the tempul set meschaunce,  
 With sory comfort and evel contynaunce.  
 Yet I saugh woodnes laughyng in his rage ;  
 The hunte strangled with wilde bores corage.  
*The caraigne in the busche, with throte i-korve :*  
*A thousand slayne, and not of qualme i-storve ;*  
*The tiraunt, with the pray bi force i-rafte ;*  
*The toune distroied, there was no thing lafte.*  
 Yet saugh I brent the schippis hoppesteres ;  
 The hunte strangled with the wilde beeres : 1160  
 The sowe freten the child right in the cradel ;  
 The cook i-skalded, for al his longe ladel.  
 Nought beth forgeten the infortune of Mart ;

The carter over-ryden with his cart,  
 Under the whel ful lowe he lay adoun.  
 Ther wer also of Martz divisioun,  
 The barbour, and the bowcher, and the smyth  
 That forgeth sharpe swerdes on his stith.

And al above depeynted in a tour  
 Saw I conquest sittynge in gret honour, 1170  
 With the sharpe sword over his heed  
 Hangynge by a sotil twyne threed.  
 Depeynted was ther the slaught of Julius,  
 Of grete Nero, and of Anthonius;  
 Al be that ilke tyme they were unborn,  
 Yet was here deth depeynted ther byforn,  
 By manasyng of Martz, right by figure,  
 So was it schewed right in the purtreture  
 As is depeynted in *the* sterres above,  
 Who schal be slayn or elles deed for love. 1180  
 Sufficeth oon ensample in stories olde,  
*I may not rekene hem alle, though I wolde.*

The statue of Mars upon a carte stood,  
 Armed, and lokede grym as he were wood;  
 And over his heed ther sehyneth two figures  
 Of sterres, that been cleped in scriptures,  
 That oon Puella, that othur Rubius.  
 This god of armes was arayed thus.  
 A wolf ther stood byforn him at his feet  
 With eyen reed, and of a man he eet; 1190  
 With sotyl peneel depeynted was this storie,  
 In redoutyng of Mars and of his glorie.

Now to the temple of Dyane the chaste  
 As schortly as I can I wol me haste,  
 To telle you al the descriptioun.  
 Depeynted ben the walles up and down,



Of huntynge and of schamefast chastite.  
Ther saugh I how woful Calystopé,  
Whan that Dyane was agreved with here,  
Was turned from a womman to a bere, 1200  
And after was sche maad the loode-sterre;  
Thus was it peynted, I can say no ferre;  
Hire son is eek *a sterre*, as men may see.  
Ther sawgh I Dyane turned intil a tree,  
I mene nought the goddes Dyane,  
But Peneus doughter, the whiche hight Dane.  
Ther saugh I Atheon an hert i-maked,  
For vengeance that he saugh Dyane al naked;  
I saugh, how that his houndes han him caught  
And freten him, for that they knew him naught.  
Yit i-peynted was a litel forthermore. 1211  
How Atthalaunce huntyde the wilde bore,  
And Melyagre, and many another mo,  
For which Dyane wrought hem care and woo.  
Ther saugh I eek many another story,  
The which me liste not drawe in to memory.  
This goddess on an hert ful hy she seet,  
With smale houndes *al aboute* hire feet,  
And undernethe hir feet sche had the moone,  
Wexyng it was, and schulde wane soone. 1220  
In gaude greene hire statue clothed was,  
With bowe in hande, and arwes in a cas.  
Hir eyghen caste sche ful lowe adoun,  
Ther Pluto hath his derke regioun.  
A womman travailyng was hire biforn,  
But for hire child so longe was unborn  
Ful pitously Lucyna gan she calle,  
And seyde, 'Help, for thou mayst best of alle.'  
Wel eouthe he peynte lyfly that it wrought,



With many a floren he the hewes bought. 1230

Now been thise listes maad, and Theseus  
That at his grete cost arrayede thus  
The temples and the theatres every del,  
Whan it was don, it liked him right wel.  
But stynt I wil of Theseus a lite,  
And speke of Palomon and of Arcite.

The day approeheth of her attournynge,  
That every schuld an hundred knightes brynge,  
The batail to derreyne, as I you tolde ;  
And til Athens, her covenant to holde, 1240  
Hath every of hem brought an hundred knightes  
Wel armed for the werre at alle rightes.

And sikerly ther trowede many a man  
That never, siththen that this world bigan,  
For to speke of knighthod of her hond,  
As fer as God hath maked see or lond,  
Nas, of so fewe, so good a eompany.  
For every wight that loveth chyvalry,  
And wold, his thanks, have a passant name,  
Hath preyed that he mighte be of that game ; 1250  
And wel was him, that therto chosen was.

For if ther felle to morwe such a caas,  
I knowe wel, that every lusty knight  
That loveth paramours, and hath his might,  
Were it in Engelond, or elleswhere,  
They wold, here thanks, wilne to be there.  
To fighte for a lady ; *benedicite !*

It were a lusty sighte for to see.  
And right so ferden they with Palomon.  
With him ther wente knyghtes many oon ; 1260  
Some wol ben armed in an haburgoun,  
In a bright brest-plat and a gypoun ;

And som wold have a peyre plates large ;  
 And som wold have a *Pruce* scheld, or a targe ;  
 Som wol been armed on here legges weel,  
 And have an ax, and eek a mace of steel.  
 Ther nys no newe gyse, that it nas old.  
 Armed were they, as I have *you* told,  
 Everich after his owen opinioun.

Ther maistow se comyng with Palomoun 1270  
 Ligure himself, the grete kyng of Trace ;  
 Blak was his berd, and manly was his face.  
 The cercles of his eyen in his heed  
 They gloweden bytwixe yolw and reed,  
 And lik a griffoun loked he aboute,  
 With kempe heres on his browes stowte ;  
 His lymes greet, his brawnes hard and stronge,  
 His schuldres brood, his armes rounde and longe.  
 And as the gyse was in his contré,  
 Ful heye upon a chare of gold stood he, 1280  
 With foure white boles in a trays.  
 In stede of cote armour in his harnays,  
 With nales yolwe, and bright as eny gold,  
 He had a bere skyn, cole-blak for old.  
 His lange heer y-kempt byhynd his bak,  
 As eny raven fether it schon for blak.  
 A wrethe of gold arm-gret, and huge of wighte,  
 Upon his heed, set ful of stoones brighte,  
 Of fyne rubeus and of fyn dyamauntz.  
 Aboute his chare wente white alauntz, 1290  
 Twenty and mo, as grete as eny stere,  
 To hunt at the lyoun or at the bere,  
 And folwed him, with mosel fast i-bounde,  
 Colerd with golde, and torettz fyled rounde.  
 An hundred lordes had he in his route

Armed ful wel, with hertes stern and stoute.

With Areita, in stories as men fynde,  
The gret Emetreus, the kyng of Ynde,  
Uppon a steede bay, trapped in steel,  
Covered with cloth of gold dyapred wel, 1300  
Cam rydyng lyk the god of armes Mars.  
His coote armour was of a eloth of Tars,  
Cowched of perlys whyte, round and grete.  
His sadil was of brend gold newe *i-bete* ;  
A mantelet upon his schuldre hangyng  
Bret-ful of rubies reed, as fir sparelyng.  
His erispe her lik rynges was *i-ronne*,  
And that was yalwe, and gliteryng as the sonne.  
His nose was heigh, his eyen *bright* eytryne,  
His lippes rounde, his colour was sangwyn, 1310  
A fewe freknes in his faee y-spreynd,  
Betwixe yolwe and somdel blak y-meynd,  
And as a lyoun he his lokyng caste.  
Of fyve and twenty yeer his age I caste.  
His berd was wel bygonne for to sprynge ;  
His voys was as a trumpe thunderynge.  
Upon his heed he wered *of* laurer grene  
A garlond freisch and lusty for to sene.  
Upon his hond he bar for his delyt  
An egle tame, as eny lylie whyt. 1320  
An hundred lordes had he with him ther,  
Al armed sauf here hedes in here ger,  
Ful richely in alle maner thinges.  
For trusteth wel, that dukes, erles, kynges,  
Were gadred in this noble companye,  
For love, and for eneres of chivalrye.  
Aboute the kyng ther ran on overy part  
Ful many a tame lyoun and lepart.

And in this wise this lordes alle and some  
 Been on the Sonday to the cité come 1330  
 Aboute prime, and in the toun alight.  
 This Theseus, this duk, this worthy knight,  
 Whan he hadde brought hem into this cité,  
 And ynned hem, everich at his degré  
 He festeth hem, and doth so gret labour  
 To esen hem, and do hem al honour,  
 That yit men wene that no mannes wyt  
 Of non estat that cowde amenden it.  
 The mynstraleye, the servyce at the feste,  
 The grete yiftes to the most and leste, 1340  
 The riche aray of *Theseus* paleys,  
 Ne who sat first ne last upon the deys,  
 What ladies fayrest ben or best daunsynge,  
 Or which of hem can daunce best or synge,  
 Ne who most felyngly speketh of love;  
 What haukes sitten on the perche above,  
 What houndes lyen in the floor adoun:  
 Of al this make I now no mencion;  
 But of theeffect; that thinketh me the beste; 1349  
 Now comth the poynt, and herkneth if you leste.

The Sonday night, or day bigan to springe,  
 When Palomon the larke herde synge,  
 Although it were nought day by houres tuo,  
 Yit sang the larke, and Palomon also  
 With holy herte, and with an heih corage  
 He roos, to wenden on his pilgrymage  
 Unto the blisful Cithera benigne,  
 I mene Venus, honorable and digne.  
 And in hire hour he walketh forth a paas  
 Unto the lystes, ther hir temple was, 1360  
 And doun he kneleth, and, with humble cheer

And herte sore, *he* seide as ye schal heer.

‘ Fairest *of faire*, o lady myn Venus,  
Doughter of Jove, and spouse to Vulcanus,  
Thou glader of the mount of Citheroun,  
For thilke love thou haddest to Adeoun  
Have pité on my bitter teeres smerte,  
And tak myn humble prayer to thin herte.  
Allas! I ne have no langage for to telle  
Theffectes ne the tormentz of myn helle; 1370  
Myn herte may myn harmes nat bewreye;  
I am so confuse, that I may not seye.  
But mercy, lady bright, that knowest wel  
My thought, and felest what harm that I fel,  
Consider al this, and rew upon my sore,  
As wisly as I schal for evermore  
Enforce my might thi trewe servant to be,  
And holde werre alday with chastité;  
That make I myn avow, so ye me helpe.  
I kepe nat of armes for to yelpe, 1380  
Ne nat I aske to morn to have victorie,  
Ne renoun in this caas, ne veyne glorie  
Of pris of armes, blowyng up and down,  
But I wolde have ful possessioun  
Of Emelye, and dye in thi servise;  
Fynd thou the maner how, and in what wyse.  
I recche nat, but it may better be,  
To have victorie of him, or he of me,  
So that I have my lady in myn armes.  
For though so be that Mars be god of armes, 1390  
And ye be Venus, the goddes of love,  
Youre vertu is so gret in heven above,  
Thy temple wol I worschipe evermo,  
And on thin auter, wher I ryde or go,

I wol do sacrifice, and fyres beete.  
And if ye wol nat so, my lady sweete,  
Than pray I the, to morwe with a spere  
That Arcita me thurgh the herte bere.  
Thanne rekke I nat, whan I have lost my lyf,  
Though that Arcite have hir to his wyf. 1400  
This is theeffect and ende of my prayeere;  
Yif me my love, *thou* blisful lady deere.  
Whan thorisoun was doon of Palomon,  
His sacrifice he dede, and that anoon  
Ful pitously, with alle circumstances,  
Al telle I nat as now his observances.  
But at the last the statu of Venus schook,  
And made a signe, wherby that he took  
That his prayer accepted was that day.  
For though the signe schewed a delay, 1410  
Yet wist he wel that graunted was his boone;  
And with glad herte he went him hom ful soone.

The thrid hour inequal that Palomon  
Bigan to Venus temple for to goon,  
Up roos the sonne, and up roos Emelye,  
And to the temple of Dian gan sche hye.  
Hir maydens, that sche with hir thider ladde,  
Ful redily with hem the fyr they hadde,  
Thencens, the clothes, and the remenant al  
That to the sacrifice longen schal; 1420  
The hornes ful of meth, as is the gyse;  
Ther lakketh nought to do here sacrificise.  
Smokyng the temple, ful of clothes faire,  
This Emelye with herte debonaire  
Hir body wessch with watir of a welle;  
But how sche dide I ne dar nat telle,  
But it be eny thing in general;

And yet it were a game to here it al ;  
To him that meneth wel it were no charge :  
But it is good a man be at his large. 1430  
Hir brighte her was kempt, untressed al ;  
A corone of a grene ok cerial  
Upon hir heed was set ful fair and meete.  
Tuo fyres on the auter gan sche beete,  
And did hir thinges, as men may biholde  
In Stace of Thebes and the bokes olde.  
Whan kynled was the fyre, with pitous cheere  
Unto Dyan sche spak, as ye may heere.

‘ O chaste goddes of the woodes greene,  
To whom bothe heven and erthe and see is seene  
Queen of the regne of Pluto derk and lowe, 1441  
Goddes of maydenes, that myn hert has knowe  
Ful many a yeer, ye woot what I desire,  
As keep me fro the vengans of thilk yre,  
That Atheon aboughte trewely :  
Chaste goddesse, wel wost thou that I  
Desire to ben a mayden al my lyf,  
Ne never wol I be no love ne wyf.  
I am yit, thou wost, of thi company,  
A mayden, and love hunt yng and venery, 1450  
And for to walken in the woodes wylde,  
And nought to ben a wyf, and be with chylde.  
Nought wol I knowe the company of man.  
Now helpe me, lady, sythnes ye may and kan,  
For the *thre* formes that thou hast in the.  
And Palomon, that hath such love to me,  
And eek Arcite, that loveth me so sore,  
This grace I praye the withouten more,  
And sende love and pees betwix hem two ;  
And fro me torne away here hertes so, 1460



That al here hoothe love, and here desire,  
 Al here besy torment, and al here fyre  
 Be queynt, or turned in another place.  
 And if so be thou wolt do me no graee,  
 Or if my destyné be schapid so,  
 That I sehal needes have on of hem two,  
 So send me him that most desireth me.  
 Biholde, goddes of elene chastité,  
 The bitter teeres that on my cheekes falle.  
 Syn thou art mayde, and keper of us alle, 1170  
 My maydenhode thou kepe and wel conserve,  
 And whil I lyve a mayde I wil the serve.'

The fyres brenne upon the auter cleer,  
 Whil Emelye was *thus* in hire preyer;  
 But sodeinly sehe saugh a sighte queynte,  
 For right anon on of the fyres queynte,  
 And quyked agayn, and after that anon  
 That other fyr was queynt, and al agon;  
 And as it queynt, it made a whistelyng,  
 As doth a wete brond in his brennyng. 1180  
 And at the brondes end out ran anoon  
 As it were bloody dropes many oon;  
 For which so sore agast was Emelye,  
 That sehe wel neih mad was, and gan to erie,  
 For sehe ne wiste what it signifiede;  
 But oonely for feere thus sehe cryede,  
 And wepte, that it was pité to heere.  
 And therewithal Dyane gan appeere,  
 With bow in hond, right as a hunteresse,  
 And seyde; 'A! doughter, stynt thyn hevynesse.  
 Among the goddes hye it is affermed, 1191  
 And by eterne word write and confermed,  
 Thou sehalt be wedded unto oon of tho,



That have for the so moche care and wo ;  
 But unto which of hem may I nat telle.  
 Farwel, for I may her no lenger dwelle.  
 The fyres which that on myn auter brenne  
 Schuln the declare, or that thou go henne,  
 Thyn adventure of love, and in this caas.'  
 And with that word, the arwes in the caas 1500  
 Of the goddesse clatren faste and rynge,  
 And forth sche went, and made a vanyschyng,  
 For which this Emelye astoneyd was,  
 And seide, ' What amounteth this, allas !  
 I put me under thy proteccioun,  
 Dyane, and in thi disposicioun.'  
 And hoom sche goth anon the nexto waye.  
 This is theeffect, ther nys no mor to saye.

The nexte houre of Mars folwyng this,  
 Arcite unto the temple walkyd is, 1510  
 To fyry Mars to doon his sacrificise,  
 With al the rightes of his payen wise.  
 With pitous herte and heih devocioun,  
 Right thus to Mars he sayd his orisoun :  
 ' O stronge god, that in the reynes colde  
 Of Trace honoured and lord art thou y-holde,  
 And hast in every regne and every land  
 Of armes al the bridel in thy hand,  
 And hem fortunest as the luste devyse,  
 Accept of me my pitous sacrificise. 1520  
 If so be that my youthe may deserve,  
 And that my might be worthi *for* to serve  
 Thy godhed, that I may be on of thine,  
 Then pray I the to rewe on my pyne,  
 For thilke peyne, and that hote fuyre,  
 In which whilom thou brendest for desyre,

Whan that thou usedest the gret bewté  
Of faire freissche Venus, that is so free,  
And haddest hir in armes at thy wille;  
And though the ones on a tyme mysfille, 1520  
When Vulcanus hadde caught the in his laas,  
And fand the liggyng by his wyf, allaas!  
For thilke sorwe that was in thin herte,  
Have reuthe as wel upon my peynes smerte.  
I am yong and unkonnyng, as thou wost,  
And, as I trowe, with love offendid most,  
That ever was eny lyves creature;  
For sche, that doth me al this wo endure,  
Ne rekketh never whether I synke or flete.  
And wel I woot, or sche me mercy heete, 1540  
I moot with strengthe wyn hir in the place;  
And wel I wot, withouten help or grace  
Of the, ne may my strengthe nought awayle.  
Then help me, lord, to morn in my batayle,  
For thilke fyr that whilom brende the,  
As wel as this fire now brenneth me;  
And do to morn that I have the victorie.  
Myn be the travail, al thin be the glorie.  
Thy sovereign tempul wol I most honouren  
Of any place, and alway most labouren 1550  
In thy plesaunce and in thy craftes stronge.  
And in thy tempul I wol my baner honge,  
And alle the armes of my companye,  
And ever more, unto that day I dye,  
Eterne fyr I wol bifore the fynde.  
And eek to this avow I wol me bynde:  
My berd, myn heer that hangeth longe adoun,  
That never yit no felt offensioun  
Of rasour ne of schere, I wol thee yive,

And be thy trewe servaunt whiles I lyve. 1560  
Lord, have rowthe uppon my sorwes sore,  
Yif me the vietorie, I aske no more.'

The preyer stynt of Arcita the strange,  
The rynges on the tempul dore that hange,  
And eek the dores, clatereden ful fast,  
Of which Arcita somewhat was agast.  
The fires brenden on the auter brighte,  
That it gan al the tempul for to lighte;  
A swote smel anon the ground upyaf,  
And Arcita anon his hand up haf, 1570  
And more encens into the fyr yet caste,  
With othir rightes, and than atte laste  
The statu of Mars bigan his hauberk rynges,  
And with that soun he herd a murmuryng  
Ful lowe and dym, and sayde thus, 'Victorie.'  
For which he yaf to Mars honour and glorie.  
And thus with joye, and hope wel to fare,  
Areite anon unto his inne is fare,  
As fayn as foul is of the brighte sonne.  
And right anon sueh stryf is bygonne 1580  
For that grauntyng, in the heven above,  
Bitwixe Venus the goddes of love,  
And Marcz the sterne god armypotente,  
That Jupiter was busy it to stente;  
Til that the pale Saturnes the eolde,  
That knew so many of adventures olde,  
Fond in his *olde* experiens an art,  
That he ful sone hath plesyd every part.  
As soth is sayd, eelde hath gret advantage,  
In eelde is bothe wisdom and usage; 1590  
Men may the eelde at-*renne*, but nat at-rede.  
Saturne anon, to stynte stryf and drede,

Al be it that it be agayns his kynde,  
Of al this stryf he can remedy fynde.  
' My deere doughter Venus,' quod Satourne,  
' My cours, that hath so wyde for to tourne,  
Hath more power than woot eny man.  
Myn is the drenchyng in the see so wan;  
Myn is the prisoun in the derke cote;  
Myn is the stranglyng and hangyng by the throte;  
The murmur, and the cherles rebellyng; 1601  
The groynyng, and the pryvé enpoysonyng,  
I do vengeance and pleyn correctioun,  
Whiles I dwelle in the signe of the lyoun.  
Myn is the ruen of the hihe halles,  
The fallyng of the toures and the walles  
Upon the mynour or the carpenter.  
I slowh Sampsoun in schakyng the piler.  
And myne ben the maladies colde,  
The derke tresoun, and the castes olde; 1610  
Myn lokyng is the fadir of pestilens.  
Now wepe nomore, I schal do my diligence,  
That Palomon, that is myn owen knight,  
Schal have his lady, as thou him bihight.  
Thow Marcz schal kepe his knight, yet nevertheles  
Bitwixe you ther moot som tyme be pees;  
Al be ye nought of oo complexioun,  
That ilke day causeth such divisioun.  
I am thi ayel, redy at thy wille;  
Wepe thou nomore, I wol thi lust fulfillc.' 1620  
Now wol I stynt of the goddes above,  
Of Mars, and of Venus goddes of love,  
And telle you, as plainly as I can,  
The grete effecte for *which* that I bigan.

Gret was the fest in Athenus that day,

And eek that lusty sesoun of that May  
Made every wight to ben in such plesaunce,  
That al the Monday jousten they and daunce,  
And spende hit in Venus hoigh servise.  
But by the cause that they schuln arise 1630  
Erly a-morwe for to see that fight,  
Unto their rest wente they at nyght.  
And on the morwe whan the day gan spryng,  
Of hors and hernoys noyse and claterynge  
Ther was in the oostes al aboute ;  
And to the paleys rood ther many a route  
Of lordes, upon steede and on palfreys.  
Ther mayst thou see devysyng of herneys  
So uncowth and so riche wrought and wel  
Of goldsmithry, of browdyng, and of steel ; 1640  
The scheldes bright, testers, and trappures ;  
Gold-beten helmes, hauberks, and cote armures ;  
Lordes in paramentz on her coursers,  
Knightes of retenu, and eek squyers  
Rayhyng the speres, and helmes bokelyng,  
Girdyng of scheeldes, with layneres lasyng ;  
Ther as need is, they were nothing ydel ;  
Ther fomen steedes, on the golden bridel  
Gnawyng, and faste armurers also  
With fylo and hamer prikyng to and fro ; 1650  
Yemen on foote, and knaves many oon  
With schorte staves, as thikke as they may goon ;  
Pypes, trompes, nakers, and clariounes,  
That in the batail blewe bloody sownes ;  
The paleys ful of popul up and down,  
Heer thre, ther ten, haldyng her questioun,  
Dyvynyng of this Thebans knightes two.  
Som seyden thus, som seyde it schal be so ;

Som heelde with him with the blake berd,  
 Som with the ballyd, som with *the* thikke hered;  
 Som sayd he lokede grym *and* wolde fighte; 1661  
 He hath a sparth of twenti pound of wighte.

Thus was the halle ful of devynyngē,  
 Lang after that the sonne gan to springe.  
 The gret Theseus that of his sleep is awaked  
 With menstraley and noyse that was maked,  
 Held yit the chambre of his paleys riche,  
 Til that the Thebanes knyghtes bothe i-liche  
 Honoured weren, and into paleys fet.

Duk Theseus was at a wyndow set, 1670  
 Arayed right as he were god in trone.  
 The pepul preseth thider-ward ful sone  
 Him for to seen, and doon him reverence,  
 And eek herken his hest and his sentence.  
 An herowd on a skaffold made a hoo,  
 Til al the noyse of the pepul was i-doo;  
 And whan he sawh the pepul of noyse al stille,  
 Thus schewed he the mighty dukes wille.

‘The lord hath of his heih discrecioun  
 Considered, that it were destruccioun 1680  
 To gentil blood, to fighten in this wise  
 Of mortal batail now in this emprise;  
 Wherfor to schapen that they schulde not dye,  
 He wol his firste purpos modifye.  
 No man therfore, up peyne of los of lyf,  
 No maner schot, ne pollax, ne schort knyf  
 Into the lystes sende, or thider brynge;  
 Ne schorte swerd for to stoke the *pointe* bytynge  
 No man ne drawe, ne bere by his side.  
 Ne noman schal unto his felawo ryde 1690  
 But oon cours, with a sharpe *ygrounde* spere;

Feyne if him lust on foote, himself to were.  
And he that is at meschief, schal be take,  
And nat slayn, but be brought to the stake,  
That schal be ordeyned on eyther syde ;  
But thider he schal by force, and ther abyde.  
And if so falle, a cheventen be take  
On eyther side, or elles sle his make,  
No lenger schal the turneynge laste.  
God spede you ; goth forth and ley on faste. 1700  
With long swerd and with mace fight your fille.  
Goth now your way ; this is the lordes wille.'

The voice of the poepul touchith heven,  
So lowde criede thei with *mery* steven :  
' God save such a lord that is so good,  
He wilneth no destruccioun of blood !'  
Up goth the trompes and the melodye.  
And to the lystes ryde the companye  
By ordynaunce, thurgh the cité large,  
Hangyng with cloth of gold, and not with sarge.  
Ful lik a lord this nobul duk can ryde, 1711  
These tuo Thebanes on cyther side ;  
And after rood the queen, and Emelye,  
And after hem of ladyes another companye,  
And after hem of comunes after hero degre.  
And thus they passeden thurgh that cité,  
And to the lystes come thei by tyme.  
It nas not of the day yet fully pryme,  
Whan sette was Theseus riche and hyc,  
Ypolita the queen and Emelye, 1720  
And other ladyes in here degrees aboute.  
Unto the seetes preseth al the route ;  
And west-ward, thorugh the yates of Mart,  
Arcite, and eek the hundred of his part,



With baners *rede* ys entred right anoon ;  
And *in* that selve moment Palomon  
Is, under Venus, est-ward in that place,  
With baner whyt, and hardy cheer *and* face

In al the world, to seeke up and down,  
So even without variacioun

1730

Ther nere suche companyes tweye.

For ther nas noon so wys that cowthe seye,  
That any had of other avauntage  
Of worthines, ne staat, ne of visage,  
So evene were they chosen for to gesse.

And in two ringes faire they hem dresse.

And whan here names i-rad were everychon,  
That in here nombre gile were ther noon,

Tho were the gates schitt, and cried lowde : 1729

‘ Doth now your devoir, yonge knightes proude ! ’

The heraldz laften here prikyng up and down ;

Now ryngede the tromp and clarioun ;

Ther is nomore to say, but est and west

In goth the speres *ful sadly* in arest ;

Ther seen men who can juste, and who can ryde ;

In goth the scharpe spore into the side.

Ther schyveren schaftes upon schuldres thykke ;

He feeleth thurgh the herte-spon the prikke.

Up sprengen speres on twenty foot on hight ;

Out goon the swerdes as the silver bright. 1750

The helmes thei to-hewen and to-schrede ;

Out brast the blood, with stoute stremes reede,

With mighty maces the bones thay to-breste.

He thurgh the thikkest of the throng gan threste.

Ther stomblen steedes strong, and doun can falle.

He *rolleth* under foot as doth a balle.

He feyneth on his foot with a tronehoun,



And him hurteleth with his hors adoun.  
He thurgh the body hurt is, and siththen take  
Maugré his heed, and brought unto the stake, 1750  
As forward was, right ther ho most abyde.  
Another lad is on that other syde.  
And som tyme doth Theseus hem to reste,  
Hem to refreissche, and drinke if hem leste.  
Ful ofte a-day have this Thebans twoo  
Togider y-met, and wrought his felaw woo ;  
Unhorsed hath eeh other of hem tweye.  
Ther nas no tygyr in the vale of Galgopleye,  
Whan that hir whelp is stole, whan it is lite,  
So cruel on the hunt, as is Arcite 1770  
For jelous hert upon this Palomon :  
Ne in Belmary ther is no fel lyoun,  
That hunted is, or is for hunger wood,  
Ne of his prey desireth so the blood,  
As Palomon to sle his foo Arcite.  
This jelous strokes on here helmes byte ;  
Out renneth blood on bothe here sides reede.  
Som tyme an ende ther is on every dede ;  
For er the sonne unto the reste wente,  
The strange kyng Emetreus gan hente 1780  
This Palomon, as he faught with Arcite,  
And his swerd in his fleisseh *depe* did byte ;  
And by the force of twenti he is take  
Unyolden, and i-drawe unto the stake.  
And in the reseous of this Palomon  
The stronge kyng Ligurgius is born adoun ;  
And kyng Emetreus for al his strengthe  
Is born out of his sadel his swerdes lengthe,  
So hit him Palamon er he were take ;  
But al for nought, he was brought to the stake.

His hardy herte might him helpe nought ; 1791  
 He most abyde whan that he was caught,  
 By force, and eek by composicioun.  
 Who sorweth now but *woful* Palomoun,  
 That moot nomore gon agayn to fighte?  
 And whan that Theseus hadde seen that sighte,  
 He cryed, 'Hoo! nomore, for it is doon!  
 Ne noon schal lenger unto his felaw goon.  
 I wol be trewe juge, and nought partye.  
 Arcyte of Thebes schal have Emelye, 1800  
 That hath by his fortune hire i-wonne.'  
 Anoon ther is *a* noyse of *peple* bygonne  
 For joye of this, so lowde and heye withalle,  
 It semede that the listes wolde falle.  
 What can now fayre Venus doon above?  
 What seith sche now? what doth this queen of love?  
 But wepeth so, for wantyng of hir wille,  
 Til that hire teeres in the lystes fille;  
 Sche seyde: 'I am aschamed douteles.'  
 Satournus seyde: 'Doughter, hold thy pees. 1810  
 Mars hath his wille, his knight hath his boone,  
 And by myn heed thou schalt be esed soone.'  
 The trompes with the lowde mynstraley,  
 The herawdes, that ful lowde yolle and cry,  
 Been in here joye for daun Arcyte.  
 But herkneth me, and stynteth but a lite,  
 Which a miracle *ther* bifel anoon.  
 This Arcyte fersly hath don his helm adoun,  
 And on his eourser for to schewe his face,  
 He priked endlange in the large place, 1820  
 Lokyng upward upon his Emelye;  
 And sche agayn him cast a frendly yghe,  
 For wommen, as for to speke in eomune,

Thay folwe alle the favour of fortune)  
And was alle his in echeer, and in his herte.  
Out of the ground a fyr infernal sterte,  
From Pluto send, at the request of Saturne,  
For which his hors for feere gan to turne,  
And leep asyde, and foundred as he leep;  
And or that Areyte may take keep, 1830  
He pight him on the pomel of his heed,  
That in that place he lay as he were deed,  
His brest to-broken with his sadil bowe.  
As blak he lay as eny col or crowe,  
So was the blood y-ronne in his faee.  
Anon he was y-born out of the place  
With herte sore, to Theseus paleys.  
Tho was he eorven out of his harneys,  
And in a bed y-brought ful fair and blyve,  
For yit he was in memory and on lyve, 1840  
And alway cryeng after Emelye.  
Duk Theseus, and al his companye,  
Is comen hom to Athenes his eit  ,  
With alle blys and gret solempnit  .  
Al be it that this aventure was falle,  
He nolde nought diseomforten hem alle.  
Men seyde eek, that Areita schulde nought dye,  
He schal be helyd of his maladye.  
And of another thing they were as fayn,  
That of hem alle ther was noon y-slayn, 1850  
Al were they sore hurt, and namely oon,  
That with a spere was thirled his brest boon.  
To other woundes, and to-broken armes,  
Some hadde salve, and some hadde charmes,  
Fermaeyes of herbes, and eek save  
They dronken, for they wolde here lyves have.

For which this noble duk, as he wel can,  
 Comforteth and honoureth every man,  
 And made revel al the lange night,  
 Unto the straunge lordes, as it was right. 1860  
 Ne ther was holden to discomfytyng.  
 But as a justes or as a *turneyng*;  
 For sothly ther was no discomfiture,  
 For fallynge is but an adventure.  
 Ne to be lad with fors unto the stake  
 Unyolden, and with twenty knightes take,  
 A person allone, withouten moo,  
 And *haried* forth by arme, foot, and too,  
 And eke his steede dryven forth with staves,  
 With footemen, bothe yemen and *eke* knaves, 1870  
 It was aretted him no vylonye,  
 Ne no maner man held it no cowardye.

For which Theseus lowd anon leet erie,  
 To stynten al raneour and al envye,  
 The gree as wel on o syde as on other,  
 And every side lik, as otheres brother;  
 And yaf hem yiftes after here degré,  
 And fully heeld a feste dayes thre;  
 And conveyede the knightes worthily  
 Out of his toun a journee largely. 1880  
 And hom went every man the righte way.  
 Ther was no more, but ‘Farwel, have good day!’  
 Of this batayl I wol no more endite,  
 But speke of Palomon and of Arcyte.

Swelleth the brest of Arcyte, and the sore  
 Eneresceth at his herte more and more.  
 The clothred blood, for eny leeche-craft,  
 Corrupith, and is in his bouk i-laft,  
 That nother veyne blood, ne ventusyng,

Ne drynk of herbes may ben his helpyng. 1890  
The vertu expulsif, or animal,  
For thilke vertu eleped natural,  
Ne may the venym voyde, ne expelle.  
The pypes of his lounes gan to swelle,  
And every lacerte in his brest adoun  
Is schent with venym and corrupeioun.  
Him gayneth nother, for to get his lyf,  
Vomyt up-ward, ne doun-ward laxatif;  
Al is to-broken thilke regioun;  
Nature hath now no dominacioun. 1900  
And certeynly wher nature wil not wirche,  
Farwel phisik; go bere the man to chirehe.  
This al and som, that Arcyte moste dye.  
For which he sendeth after Emelye,  
And Palomon, that was his cosyn deere.  
Than seyde he thus, as ye schul after heere.  
‘ Naught may the woful spirit in myn herte  
Declare a poynt of my sorwes smerte  
To you, my lady, that I love most;  
But I byquethe the service of my gost 1910  
To you aboven every creature,  
Syn that my lyf may no lenger dure.  
Allas, the woo! alas, the peynes stronge,  
That I for you have suffred, and so longe!  
Allas, the deth! alas, myn Emelye!  
Allas, departyng of our companye!  
Allas, myn hertes queen! alas, my wyf!  
Myn hertes lady, ender of my lyf!  
What is this world? what asken men to have?  
Now with his love, now in his colde grave 1920  
Allone withouten eny companye.  
Farwel, my swete! farwel, myn Emelye!

And softe take me in your armes tweye,  
For love of God, and herkneth what I seye.  
I have heer with my eosyn Palomon  
Had stryf and rancour many a day i-gon,  
For love of yow, and eek for jelousie.  
And Jupiter so wis my sowle gye,  
To speken of a servaunt proprely,  
With alle circumstaunces trewely, 1930  
That is to seyn, truthe, honour, and knighthede,  
Wysdom, humblesse, astaat, and *hye* kynrede,  
Fredam, and al that longeth to that art,  
So Jupiter have of my soule part,  
As in this world right now ne know I non  
So worthy to be loved as Palomon,  
That serveth you, and wol do al his lyf.  
And if that ye schul ever be a wyf,  
Foryet not Palomon, that gentil man.'  
And with that word his speche faile gan ; 1940  
For fro his herte up to his brest was come  
The cold of deth, that him hadde overcome.  
And yet moreover in his armes twoo  
The vital strength is lost, and al agoo.  
Only the intellect, withouten more,  
That dwelled in his herte sik and sore,  
Gan fayle, when the herte felte death,  
Duskyng his eyghen two, and faylede breth.  
But on his lady yit he cast his ye ;  
His laste word was, ' Mercy, Emelye !' 1950  
His spiryt chaunged was, and wente ther,  
As I cam never, I can nat tellen wher.  
Therefore I stynte, I nam no dyvynistre ;  
Of soules fynde I not in this registre,  
Ne me liste nat thopynyouns to telle

Of hem, though that thei wyten wher they dwelle.  
 Areyte is cold, *lat* Mars his soule gye ;  
 Now wol I speke forth of Emelye.

Shright Emely, and howlede Palomon,  
 And Theseus his sustir took anon 1960  
 Swownyng, and bar hir fro the corps away.

What helpeth it to tarye forth the day,  
 To telle how sche weep bothe eve and morwe ?  
 For in swich caas wommen can have such sorwe,  
 Whan that here housbonds ben from hem ago,  
 That for the more part they sorwen so,  
 Or elles fallen in such maladye,  
 That atte laste certeynly they dye.  
 Infynyt been the sorwes and the teeres  
 Of olde folk, *and folk* of tendre yeeres ; 1970

So gret a wepyng was ther noon certayn,  
 Whan Eetor was i-brought, al freissh i-slayn,  
 As that ther was for deth of this Theban ;  
 For sorwe of him ther weepeth bothe child and  
 man

At Troye, alas ! the pité that was there,  
 Cracchyng of cheekes, rending eek of here.  
 ‘ Why woldist thou be deed,’ this wommen eryl,  
 ‘ And haddest gold ynowgh, and Emelye ?’

No man mighte glade Theseus,  
 Savyng his olde fader Egeus, 1980  
 That knew this worldes transmutacioun,  
 As he hadde seen it torne up and doun,  
 Joye after woo, and woo aftir gladnesse :  
 And schewed him ensample and likenesse.

‘ Right as ther deyde never man,’ quod he,  
 ‘ That he ne lyved in erthe in som degree,  
 Yit ther ne lyvede never man,’ he seyde,



‘ In al this world, that som tyme he ne deyde.  
This world nys but a thurghfare ful of woo,  
And we ben pilgryms, passyng to and froo ;      1990  
Deth is an ende of every worldly sore.’

And over al this yit seide he mochil more  
To this effect, ful wysly to enhorte  
The peple, that *they* schulde him recomforte.

Duk Theseus, with al his busy cure,  
Cast busily wher that the sepulture  
Of good Arcyte may best y-maked be,  
And eek most honorable in his degré.  
And atte last he took conclusioun,  
That ther as first Arcite and Palomon      2000  
Hadden for love the batail hem bytwene,  
That in the selve grove, soote and greene,  
Ther as he hadde his amorous desires,  
His compleynt, and for love his hoote fyres,  
He wolde make a fyr, in which thoffice  
Funeral he might *hem* al accomplice ;  
And leet comaunde anon to hakke and hewe  
The okes old, and lay hem on a rowe  
In culpouns wel arrayed for to brenne.  
His officers with swifte foot they renne,      2010  
And ryde anon at his comaundement.  
And after this, Theseus hath i-sent  
After a beer, and it al overspradde  
With cloth of golde, the richest that he hadde.  
And of the same sute he clad Arcyte ;  
Upon his hondes were his gloves white ;  
Eke on his heed a croune of laurer grene ;  
And in his hond a swerd ful bright and kene.  
He leyde him bare the visage on the beere,  
Therwith he weep that pité was to heere.      2020



And for the poeple sehulde see him alle,  
Whan it was day he brought hem to the halle,  
That roreth of the ery and of the soun.  
Tho eam this woful Theban Palomoun,  
With flotery berd, and ruggy asshy heeres,  
In clothis blak, y-dropped al with teeres,  
And, passyng other, of wepyng Emelye,  
The rewfullest of al the companye.  
In as moche as the serviee sehulde be  
The more nobul and riehe in his degré, 2030  
Duk Theseus leet forth thre steedes brynge,  
That trapped were in steel al gliterynge,  
And ecovered with armes of dan Areyte.  
Upon the steedes, that weren grete and white,  
Ther seeten folk, of whieh oon bar his scheeld,  
Another his spere up in his hondes heeld;  
The thridde bar with him his bowe Turkeys,  
Of brend gold was the eaas and eek the herneys;  
And riden forth a paas with sorwful ehere  
Toward the grove, as ye schul after heere. 2040  
The nobles of the Grekes that ther were  
Upon here schuldres earieden the beerc,  
With slak paas, and eyhen reed and wete,  
Thurghout the eité, by the maister streete,  
That sprad was al with blak, and wonder hye  
Right of the same is al the stret i-wrye.  
Upon the right hond went olde Egeus,  
And on that other syde duk Theseus,  
With vessels in here hand of gold wel fyn,  
As ful of hony, mylk, and blood, and wyn; 2050  
Eke Palomon, with a gret companye;  
And after that eom woful Emelye,  
With fyr in hond, as was that time the gyse,

To do thoffice of funeral servise.

Heygh labour, and ful gret apparailynge  
Was at the servise and at the fyr makynge,  
That with his grene top the heven raughte,  
And twenty fadme of brede tharme straughte ;  
This is to seyn, the boowes were so brode.  
Of stree first was ther leyd ful many a loode. 2060  
But how the fyr was makyd up on highte,  
And eek the names how the trees highte,  
As ook, fyr, birch, asp, aldir, holm, popler,  
Wilw, elm, plane, assch, box, chesteyn, lynde, laurer,  
Mapul, thorn, beech, hasil, ew, wyppyltre,  
How they weren felde, schal nought be told for me ;  
Ne how the goddes ronnen up and down,  
Disheryt of here habitacioun,  
In which they whilom woned in rest and pees,  
Nymphes, Faunes, and Amadryes ; 2070  
Ne how the beestes and the briddes alle  
Fledden for feere, whan the woode was falle ;  
Ne how the ground agast was of the light,  
That was nought wont to see no sonne bright ;  
Ne how the fyr was couchid first with stree,  
And thanne with drye stykkes eloven in three,  
And thanne with grene woode and spicerie,  
And thanne with eloth of gold and with perrye,  
And gerlandes hangyng with ful many a flour,  
The myrre, thensens with also *sweet* odour ; 2080  
Ne how Areyte lay among al this,  
Ne what richesse aboute his body is ;  
Ne how that Emely, as was the gyse,  
Putt in the fyr of funeral servise ;  
Ne how she swownede when seche made the fyre,  
Ne what sche spak, ne what was hire desire ;

Ne what jewels men in the fyr tho easte,  
 Whan that the fyr was gret and brente faste;  
 Ne how sum easte hir scheeld, and summe her spere,  
 And of here vestimentz, which that they were,  
 And cuppes ful of wyn, and mylk, and blood, 2091  
 Unto the fyr, that brent as it were wood;  
 Ne how the *Grekes* with an huge route  
 Thre tymes ryden al the fyr aboute  
 Upon the lefte hond, with an heih sehoutyng,  
 And thries with here speres elateryng;  
 And thries how the ladyes gan to crye;  
 Ne how that lad was home-ward Emelye;  
 Ne how Areyte is brent to aschen colde;  
*Ne howe that liche-wake was y-holde* 2100  
 Al thilke night, ne how the *Grekes* pleye  
 The wake-pleyes, kepe I nat to seye;  
 Who wrastleth best naked, with oyle enoynt,  
 Ne who that bar him best in no disjoynt.  
 I wol not telle eek how that they ben goon  
 Hom til Athenes whan the pley is doon.  
 But schortly to the poynt now wol I wende,  
 And maken of my longe tale an ende.

By proees and by lengthe of certeyn yeres  
 Al styntyd is the mornyng and the teeres 2110  
 Of alle Grekys, by oon general assent.  
 Than semede me ther was a parlement  
 At Athenes, on a certeyn poynt and eas;  
 Among the whiche poyntes spoken was  
 To han with certeyn contrees alliaunee,  
 And have fully of Thebans obeissance.  
 For which this noble Theseus anon  
 Let senden after gentil Palomon,  
 Unwist of him what was the cause and why;

But in his blake clothes sorwfully 2120  
He cam at his comaundement in hye.  
Tho sente Theseus for Emelye.  
Whan they were sette, and hussht was al the place,  
And Theseus abyden hadde a space  
Or eny word cam fro his wyse brest,  
His eyen set he ther as was his lest,  
And with a sad visage he sykede stille,  
And after that right thus he seide his wille.

‘ The firste moevere of the cause above,  
Whan he first made the fayre cheyne of love, 2130  
Gret was theeffect, and heigh was his entente ;  
Wel wist he why, and what therof he mente ;  
For with that faire cheyne of love he bond  
The fyr, the watir, the eyr, and eek the lond  
In certeyn boundes, that they may not flee ;  
That same prynce and moevere eek,’ quod he,  
‘ Hath stabled, in this wrecched world adoun,  
Certeyn dayes and duracioun  
To alle that er engendrid in this place,  
Over the *whiche* day they may nat pace, 2140  
Al mowe they yit wel here dayes abregge ;  
Ther needeth non auctorité tallegge ;  
For it is preved by experience,  
But that me luste declare my sentence.  
Than may men wel by this ordre discerne,  
That thilke moevere stabul is and eterne.  
Wel may men knowe, but it be a fool,  
That every partye dyryveth from his hool.  
For nature hath nat take his bygynnyng  
Of no partye ne cantel of a thing, 2150  
But of a thing that parfyt is and stable,  
Descendyng so, til it be corumpable.

And therfore of his wyse purveannee  
He hath so wel biset his ordenaunce,  
That spices of thinges and progressiouns  
Schullen endure by successiouns,  
And nat eterne be withoute *any* lye:  
This maistow understand and se at ye.

‘ Lo the ook, that hath so long norisschyng  
Fro tyme that it gynneth first to springe, 2160  
And hath so long a lyf, as we may see,  
Yet atte laste wasted is the tree.

‘ Considereth eek, how that the harde stoon  
Under oure foot, on which we trede and goon,  
Yit wasteth it, as it lith by the weye.  
The brode ryver som tyme wexeth dreye.  
The grete townes see we wane and wende.  
Then may I see that al thing hath an ende.

‘ Of man and womman se we wel also,  
That wendeth in oon of this termes two, 2170  
That is to seyn, in youthe or elles in age,  
He moot ben deed, the kyng as schal a page;  
Sum in his bed, som in the deepe see,  
Som in the large feeld, as men may se.  
Ther helpeth naught, al goth thilke weye.  
Thanne may I seie wel that al thing schal deye.  
What maketh this but Jubiter the kyng?  
The which is prynce and cause of alle thing,  
Converting al unto his propre wille,  
From which he is dereyned, soth to telle. 2180  
And here agayn no creature of lyve  
Of no degré avayleth for to stryve.

‘ Than is it wisdom, as thenketh me,  
To maken vertu of necessité,  
And take it wel, that we may nat eschewe,

And namely that that to us alle is dewe.  
And who-so gruecheth aught, he doth folye,  
And rebel is to him that al may gye.  
And certeynly a man hath most honour  
To deyen in his exeellence and flour, 2190  
Whan he is siker of his goode name.  
Than hath he doon his freend, ne him, no schame,  
And glader ought his freend ben of his deth,  
Whan with honour is yolden up the breth,  
Thanne whan his name appalled is for age ;  
For al forgotten is his vasselage.  
Thanne is it best, as for a worthi fame,  
To dye whan a man is best of name.  
The contrary of al this is wilfulnesse.  
Why grucehen we ? why have we hevynesse, 2200  
That good Arcyte, of chyvalry the flour,  
Departed is, with worschip and honour  
Out of this foule prisoun of this lyf ?  
Why gruecheth heer his cosyn and his wyf  
Of his welfare, that loven him so wel ?  
Can he hem thank ? nay, God woot, never a del,  
That bothe his soule and eek himself offende,  
And yet they may here lustes nat amende.

‘ What may I conelude of this longe serye,  
But aftir wo I rede us to be merye, 2210  
And thanke Jubiter of al his graee ?  
And or that we departe fro this place,  
I rede that we make, of sorwes two,  
O parfyt joye lastyng ever mo :  
And loketh now wher most sorwe is her-inne,  
Ther wol we first amenden and bygyune.

‘ Sustyr,’ quod he, ‘ this is my ful assent,  
With al thavys heer of my parlement,

That gentil Palomon, your owne knight,  
That serveth yow with herte, wil, and might, 2220  
And ever hath doon, syn fyrst tyme ye him knewe,  
That ye schul of your grace upon him rewe,  
And take him for your housbond and for lord :  
Lene me youre hand, for this is oure acord.  
Let see now of your wommanly pité.  
He is a kynges brothir sone, pardee ;  
And though he were a pore bachiller,  
Syn he hath served you so many a yeer,  
And had for you so gret adversité,  
Hit moste be eonsidered, trusteth me. 2230  
For gentil merey aughte to passe right.’  
Than seyde he thus to Palomon ful right ;  
‘ I trowe ther needeth litel sermonyng  
To make you assente to this thing.  
Com neer, and tak your lady by the hond.’  
Betwix hem was i-maad anon the bond,  
That highte matrimoyn or mariage,  
By alle the counseil of the baronage.  
And thus with blys and eek with melodye  
Hath Palomon i-wedded Emelye. 2240  
And God, that al this wyde world hath wrought,  
Send him his love, that hath it deere i-bought.  
For now is Palomon in al his wele,  
Lyvyng in blisse, richesse, and in hele,  
And Emely him loveth so tendirly,  
And he hir serveth al so gentilly,  
That never *was ther* wordes hem bitweene  
Of gelousy, ne of non othir teene.  
Thus endeth Palomon and Emelye ;  
And God save al this fayre companye ! Amen !



## THE PROLOGE OF THE MYLLER.



HAN that the Knight hadde thus his  
tale i-told,  
In al the route nas ther yong ne old,  
That he ne seyde it was a noble story,  
And worthi to be drawn in memory;  
And namely the gentils everichoon.  
Oure Host tho lowh and swoor, 'So moot I goon,  
This goth right wel; unboked is the male;  
Let se now who schal telle another tale;  
For trewely this game is wel bygonne.  
Now telleth now, sir Monk, if that ye konne 10  
Somwhat, to quyte with the knightes tale.'  
The Myller that for drunken was al pale,  
So that unnethe upon his hors he sat,  
He wold avale nowther hood ne hat,  
Ne abyde no man for his curtesye,  
But in Pilates voys he gan to crye,  
And swor by armes and by blood and bones,  
'I can a noble tale for the noones,  
With which I wol now quyte the knightes tale.'  
Oure Hoost saugh wel how dronke he was of ale,  
And seyde, 'Robyn, abyde, my leve brother, 21  
Som bottre man schal telle us first another;  
Abyd, and let us worken thriftyly.'  
'By Goddes soule!' quod he, 'that wol nat I,  
For I wol speke, or elles go my way.'



Oure Host answerde, 'Tel on, a devel way!  
Thou art a fool; thy witt is overcome.'

‘Now herkneþ,’ quod this Myller, ‘al and some;  
But first I make a protestacioun,  
That I am dronke, I knowe wel by my soun;   30  
And therfore if that I mys-speke or seye,  
Wyte it the ale of Southwerk, I you preye;  
For I wol telle a legende and a lyf  
Bothe of a carpenter and of his wyf,  
How that the clerk hath set the wrightes cappe.’

The Reve answered and seyde, ‘Stynt thi clappe.  
Let be thy lewede drunken harlottrye.  
It is a synne, and eek a greet folye  
To apeyren eny man, or him defame,  
And eek to brynge wyves in ylle name. 40  
Thou mayst ynowgh of other thinges seyn.’  
This dronken Miller spak ful sone ageyn,  
And seyde, ‘Leeve brother Osewold,  
Who hath no wyf, he is no cokewold.  
But I seyo not therfore that thou art oon,  
Ther been ful goode wyves many oon.  
And ever a thousand goode agayns oon badde;  
That knowest thou wel thyself, but if thou madde.  
Why art thou angry with my tale now?  
I have a wyf, pardé! as wel as thow, 50  
Yet nolde I, for the oxen in my plough,  
Take upon me more than ynough;  
Though that thou deme thiself that thou be oon,  
I wol bileeve wel that I am noon.  
An housbond schal not be inquisityf  
Of Goddes pryveté, ne of his wyf.  
So that he fynde Goddes foysoun there,  
Of the remenaunt needeth nought enquere.’

What schuld I seye, but that this proude Myllere  
 He nolde his wordes for no man forbere, 60  
 But tolde his cherlich tale in his manere.  
 Me athinketh, that I schal reherce it heere;  
 And therfor every gentil wight I preye,  
 For Goddes love, as deme nat that I seye,  
 Of yvel entent, but for I moot reherse  
 Here wordes alle, al be they better or werse,  
 Or elles falsen som of my matecre.  
 And therfor who-so list it nat to heere,  
 Turne over the leef, and cheese another tale;  
 For he schal fynde ynowe bothe gret and smale, 70  
 Of storial thing that toucheth gentillesse,  
 And eek *moralité*, and holynesse.  
 Blameth nat me, if that ye cheese amys.  
 The Miller is a cherl, ye knowe wel this;  
 So was the Reeve, and othir many mo,  
 And hārlotry they tolden bothe two.  
 Avyseth you, and put me out of blame;  
 And men schulde nat make ernest of game.

## THE MILLERES TALE.



WHILOM ther was dwellyng at Oxenford  
 A richegnof, thatgestes heold to boorde.  
 And of his craft he was a carpenter.  
 With him ther was dwellyng a pore  
 scoler,  
 Hadde lerned art, but al his fantasye  
 Was torned for to lerne astrologye,



For sche was wilde and yong, and he was old,  
 And demed himself belik a cokewold, 40  
 He knew nat Catoun, for his wit was rude,  
 That bad man schulde wedde his similitude.  
 Men schulde wedde aftir here astaat,  
 For celde and youthe ben often at debaat.  
 But syn that he was brought into the snare,  
 He moste endure, as othere doon, his care.

Fair was the yonge wyf, and therewithal  
 As eny wesil hir body gent and smal.  
 A seynt sche werede, barred al of silk ;  
 A barm-cloth eek as whit as morne mylk 50  
 Upon hir lendes, ful of many a gore.  
 Whit was hir smok, and browdid al byfore  
 And eek byhynde on hir coler aboute,  
 Of cole-blak silk, withinne and eek withoute.  
 The tapes of hir white voluper  
 Weren of the same sute of hire coler ;  
 Hir filet brood of silk y-set ful heyne.  
 And certeynly sche hadd a licorous eyghe ;  
 Ful smal y-pulled weren hir browes two,  
 And tho were bent, as blak as *any* slo. 60  
 Sche was wel more blisful on to see  
 Than is the newe perjonette tree ;  
 And softer than the wol is of a wethir.  
 And by hir gurdil hyng a purs of lethir,  
 Tassid with silk, and perled with latoun.  
 In al this world to soken up and down  
 There nys no man so wys, that couthe thenche  
 So gay a popillot, or such a wenche.  
 For brighter was the *schynnyng* of hir hewe,  
 Than in the Tour the noble i-forged newe. 70  
 But of hir song, it was as lowde and yerne

As eny swalwe chiteryng on a berne.  
Therto sche cowde skippe, and make a game,  
As eny kyde or ealf folwyng his dame.  
Hir mouth was sweete as bragat is or meth,  
Or hoord of apples, layd in hay or heth.  
Wynsyng sche was, as is a joly colt;  
Long as a mast, and upright as a bolt.  
A broeh sehe bar upon hir loue eoleer,  
As brod as is the bos of a boeleer. 80  
Hir sehos were laced on hir legges heyghe;  
Sehe was a primerole and a piggesneyghe,  
For eny lord have liggyng in his bedde,  
Or yet for eny good yeman to wedde.

Now sir, and eft sir, so bifel the cas,  
That on a day this heende Nicholas  
Fil with this yonge wyf to rage and pleye  
Whil that hir housbond was at Oseneye,  
As elerkes ben ful sotil and ful queynte. 90  
And pryvely he caught hir by the queynte,  
And seyde, 'I-wis, but if I have my wille,  
For derne love of the, lemman, I spille.'  
And heeld hir harde by the haunche boones,  
And seyde, 'Lemman, love me *wel* at ones,  
Or I wol dye, as wisly God me save.'

And sche sprang out as doth a eolt in trave:  
And with hir heed sehe wriede fast away,  
And seyde, 'I wol nat kisse the, by my fey!  
Why let be,' quod sche, 'lat be thou, Nicholas  
Or I wol crye out harrow and alas! 100  
Do wey youre handes for youre curtesye!'  
This Nicholas gan merey for to eryl,  
And spak so faire, and profred him so faste,  
That sche hir love him graunted atte laste,

And swor hir oth by seynt Thomas of Kent,  
That sche wolde be at his commaundement,  
Whan that sche may hir leysir wel aspye.  
'Myn housbond is so ful of jelousie,  
That but ye wayten wel, and be pryvé,  
I woot right wel I am but deed,' quod sche : 110  
'Ye mosten be ful derne as in this caas.'  
'Therof ne care the nought,' quod Nicholas :  
'A clerk hath litherly byset his while,  
But if he cowde a carpenter bygyle.'  
And thus they ben acorded and i-sworn  
To wayte a tyme, as I have told biforn.

Whan Nicholas hadde doon thus every del,  
And thakked hire aboute the lendys wel,  
He kist hir sweet, and taketh his sawtrye,  
And pleyeth fast, and maketh melodye. 120  
Than fyl it thus, that to the parisch chirche  
Cristes owen workes for to wirche,  
This goode wyf went on an haly day ;  
Hir forheed schon as bright as eny day,  
So was it waisschen, whan sche leet hir werk.

Now ther was of that chirche a parisch clerk,  
The which that was i-cleped Absolon.  
Crulle was his heer, and as the gold it schon,  
And strowted as a fan right large and brood ;  
Ful streyt and eveno lay his joly schood. 130  
His rode was reed, his eyghen gray as goos,  
With Powles wyndowes corven in his schoos.  
In his hoses reed he wente fetusly.  
I-clad he was ful smal and propurly,  
Al in a kirtel of a fyn wachet,  
Schapen with goores in the newe get.  
And therupon he had a gay surplys,

As whyt as is the blosme upon the rys.  
A mery child he was, so God me save ;  
Wel couthe he lete blood, and clippe and schave,  
And make a chartre of lond and acquitaunce. 141  
In twenty maners he coude skippe and daunce,  
After the scole of Oxenforde tho,  
And with his legges casten to and fro ;  
And pleyen songes on a smal rubible ;  
Ther-to he sang som tyme a lowde quynoble.  
And as wel coude he pleye on a giterne.  
In al the toun nas brewhous ne taverne  
That he ne visitede with his solas,  
Ther as *that* any gaylard tapster was. 150  
Bot soth to say he was somdel squaymous  
Of fartyng, and of speche daungerous.  
This Absolon, that joly was and gay,  
Goth with a senser on the haly day,  
Sensing the wyves of the parisch faste ;  
And many a lovely look on hem he caste,  
And namely on this carpenteres wyf ;  
To loke on hire him thought a mery lyf ;  
Sche was so propre, sweete, and licorous.  
I dar wel sayn, if sche hadde ben a mous, 160  
And he a cat, he wold hir hent anoon.

This parisch clerk, this joly Absolon,  
Hath in his herte such a love longyng,  
That of no wyf ne took he noon offryng ;  
For curtesy, he seyde, he wolde noon.  
The moone at night ful cleer and brighte schoon,  
And Absolon his giterne hath i-take,  
For paramours he seyde he wold awake.  
And forth he goth, jolyf and amerous,  
Til he cam to the carpenteres hous, 170



A litel after the cok hadde y-crowe,  
And dressed him up by a schot wyndowe  
That was under the carpenteres walle.  
He syngeth in his voys gentil and smalle—  
‘Now, deere lady, if thi wille be,  
I praye yow that ye wol rewe on me.’  
Ful wel acordyng to his gyternynge.

This carpenter awook, and herde him synge,  
And spak unto his wyf, and sayde anoon,  
‘What Alisoun, herestow not Absolon, 180  
That chaunteth thus under oure boures wal?’  
And sche answered hir housbond therewithal,  
‘Yis, God woot, Johan, I heere it every del.’

This passeth forth; what wil ye bet than wel?  
Fro day to day this joly Absolon  
So woweth hire, that him is wo-bigon.  
He waketh al the night and al the day,  
To kembe his lokkes brode and made him gay.  
He woweth hire by mene and by brocage,  
And swor he wolde ben hir owne page. 190  
He syngeth crowyng as a nightyngale;  
And sent hire pyment, meth, and spiced ale,  
And wafres pypyng hoot out of the gleede;  
And for sche was of tounce, he profrede meede.  
For som folk wol be wonne for richesse,  
And som for strokes, som for gentillesse.  
Som tyme, to schewe his lightnes and maistrye,  
He pleyeth Herodz on a scaffold hye.  
But what awayleth him as in this caas?  
Sche loveth so this heende Nicholas, 200  
That Absolon may blowe the bukkes horn;  
He no hadde for al his labour but a skorn.  
And thus sche maketh Absolon hir ape,

And al his earnest torneth to a jape.

Ful soth is this proverbe, it is no lye,  
Men seyn right thus alway, the neye slyc  
Maketh the ferre leefe to be loth.

For though that Absolon be wood or wroth,  
Bycause that he fer was from here sight,  
This Nicholas hath stonden in his light.

210

Now bere the wel, thou heende Nicholas,  
For Absolon may wayle and synge allas.

And so bifelle it on a Satyrday  
This carpenter was gon to Osenay,  
And heende Nicholas and Alisoun  
Acordid ben to this conclusioun,  
That Nicholas schal schapen hem a wyle

This sely jelous housbond to begyle;

And if so were this game wente aright,

Sche schulde slepe in his arm al night,

220

For this was hire desir and his also.

And right anoon, withouten wordes mo,

This Nicholas no longer wold he tarye,

But doth ful softe into his chambur carye

Both mete and drynke for a day or tweye.

And to hir housbond bad hir for to seye,

If that he axed after Nicholas,

Sche schulde seye, sche wiste nat wher he was;

Of al that day sche saw him nat with eye;

Sche trowed he were falle in som maladye,

230

For no cry that hir mayden cowde him calle

He nolde answeere, for nought that may bifalle.

Thus passeth forth al that ilke Satyrday,

That Nicholas stille in his chambre lay,

And cet, and drank, and dede what him leste

Til Soneday the sonne was gon to reste.

This sely carpenter hath gret mervaile  
Of Nicholas, or what thing may him ayle,  
And seyde, ‘ I am adrad, by seynt Thomas !  
It stondeth nat aright with Nicholas ; 240  
God schilde that he deyde sodeinly.  
This world is now ful tykel sikerly ;  
I saugh to-day a corps y-born to chirche,  
That now on Monday last I saugh him wirche.  
Go up,’ quod he unto his knave, ‘ anoon ;  
Clepe at his dore, and knocke with a stoon ;  
Loke how it is, and telle me boldely.’  
This knave goth him up ful sturdily,  
And at the chambir dore whil *that* he stood,  
He cryed and knocked as that he were wood ; 250  
‘ What how ? what do ye, mayster Nicholay !  
How may ye slepen al this longe day ?’  
But al for nought, he herde nat o word.  
An hole he fond right lowe upon a boord,  
Ther as the cat was wont in for to creepe,  
And at that hole he loked in ful deepe,  
And atte laste he hadde of him a sight.  
This Nicholas sat ever gapyng upright,  
As he hadde loked on the newe moone.  
Adeun he goth, and tolde his mayster soone, 260  
In what aray he sawh this ilke man.  
This carpenter to blessen him bygan,  
And seyde, ‘ Now help us, seynte Frideswyde !  
A man woot litel what him schal betyde.  
This man is falle with his astronomye  
In som woodnesse, or in som agonye.  
I thought ay wel how that it schulde be.  
Men schulde nought knowe of Goddes pryvyté.  
Ye ! blessed be alwey a lewed man,

That nat but oonly his bileeve can. 270  
So ferde another clerk with astronomye ;  
He walked in the feeldes for to pryce  
Upon the sterres, what ther schulde bifalle,  
Til he was in a marle pit i-falle.  
He saugh nat that. But yet, by seint Thomas !  
Me reweth sore for heende Nicholas ;  
He schal be ratyd of his studyng,  
If that I may, by Jhesu heven kyng !  
Gete me a staf, that I may underspore,  
Whil that thou, Robyn, hevest up the dore : 280  
He schal out of his studyng, as I gesse.'  
And to the chambir dore he gan him dresse.  
His knave was a strong karl for the noones,  
And by the hasp he haf it up at oones ;  
And in the floor the dore fil down anoon.  
This Nicholas sat stille as eny stoon,  
And ever he gapyed up-ward to the eyr.  
This carpenter wende he were in despeir,  
And hent him by the schuldres mightily,  
And schook him harde, and cryede spitously, 290  
' What, Nicholas? what how, man? loke adoun ;  
Awake, and thynk on Cristes passioun.  
I crowche the from elves and from wightes.'  
Therwith the night-spel seyde he anon rightes,  
On the foure halves of the hous aboute,  
And on the threishfold of the dore withoute.  
' Lord Jhesu Crist, and seynte Benedight,  
Blesse this hous from every wikkede wight,  
*Fro nyghtes mare werye the with Pater-noster ;*  
Wher wonestow now, seynte Petres soster ?' 300  
And atte laste, heende Nicholas  
Gan for to syke sore, and seyde, ' Allas !

Schal al the world be lost eftsones now ?'  
This carpenter answerde, ' What seystow ?  
What? thenk on God, as we doon, men that swynke.'  
This Nicholas answerde, ' Fette me drynke ;  
And after wol I speke in pryvytè  
Of certeyn thing that toucheth the and me ;  
I wol telle it non other man certayn.'  
This carpenter goth forth, and comth agayn, 310  
And brought of mighty ale a large quart.  
Whan ech of hem y-dronken had his part,  
This Nicholas his dore gan to schitte,  
And dede this carpenter down by him sitte,  
And seide, ' Johan, myn host ful leve and deere,  
Thou schalt upon thy trouthe swere me heere,  
That to no wight thou schalt this counsel wreye,  
For it is Cristes counsel that I seye,  
And if thou telle it man, thou art forlore ;  
For this vengauce thou schalt han therfore, 320  
That if thou wreye me, thou schalt be wood.'  
' Nay, Crist forbede it for his holy blood !'  
Quod tho this sely man, ' I am no labbe,  
Though I it say, I am nought leef to gabbe.  
Say what thou wolt, I schal it never telle  
To child ne wyf, by him that harwed helle !'  
' Now, Johan,' quod Nicholas, ' I wol not lye :  
I have i-founde in myn astrologye,  
As I have loked in the moone bright,  
That now on Monday next, at quarter night, 330  
Schal falle a reyn, and that so wilde and wood,  
That half so gret was never Noes flood.  
This worlde,' he seyde, ' more than an hour  
Schal ben i-dreynt, so hidous is the schour :  
Thus schal mankynde drench, and leese his lyf.'

This carpenter answered, 'Allas, my wyf!  
And shal she drenche? allas, myn Alisoun!'  
For sorwe of this he fel almost adoun,  
And seyde, 'Is ther no remedy in this eaas?'  
'Why yis, for Gode,' quod heende Nicholas; 340  
'If thou wolt werken aftir lore and reed;  
Thou maist nought worke after thin owen heed.  
For thus seith Salomon, that was ful trewe,  
Werke by counseil, and thou schalt nat rewe.  
And if thou worken wolt by good counsail,  
I undertake, withouten mast and sail,  
Yet schal I saven hir, and the, and me.  
Hastow nat herd how saved was Noe,  
Whan that our Lord hadde warned him biforn,  
That al the world with watir schulde be lorn?'  
'Yis,' quod this carpenter, 'ful yore ago,' 351  
'Hast ow nought herd,' quod Nicholas, 'also  
The sorwe of Noc with his fclaschipe,  
That he hadde or he gat his wyf to schipe?  
Him hadde wel lever, I dar wel undertake,  
At thilke tyme, than alle his wetheres blake,  
That sche hadde a schip herself allone.  
And therefore wostow what is best to doone?  
This axeth hast, and of an hasty thing  
Men may nought preche or make taryyng 360  
Anon go gete us fast into this in  
A knedyng trowh or elles a kemelyn,  
For ech of us; but loke that they be large,  
In which that we may rowe as in a barge,  
And have therin vitaille suffisant  
But for o day; fy on the remenant;  
The water schal aslake and gon away  
Aboute prime upon the nexte day.

But Robyn may not wite of this, thy knave,  
Ne ek thy mayde Gille I may not save; 370  
Aske nought why; for though thou aske me,  
I wol nat tellen Goddes pryveté.  
Sufficeth the, but if that thy wittes maddo,  
To have as gret a grace as Noe hadde.  
Thy wyf schal I wel saven out of doute.  
Go now thy wey, and speed the heer aboute :  
And whan thou hast for hir, and the, and me,  
I-goten us this knedyng tubbes thre,  
Than schalt thou hange hem in the roof ful hie,  
That no man of oure purveaunce aspye; 380  
And whan thou thus hast doon as I have seyde,  
And hast our vitaille faire in hem y-leyde,  
And eek an ax to smyte the corde a-two  
Whan that the water cometh, that we may goo,  
And breke an hole an hye upon the gable  
Into the gardyn ward over the stable,  
That we may frely passen forth oure way,  
Whan that the grete schour is gon away ;  
Than schaltow swymme as mery, I undertake,  
As doth the white doke aftir hir drake; 390  
Than wol I clepe, How Alisoun, how Jon,<sup>1</sup>  
Booth merye, for the flood passeth anon.  
And thou wolt seye, Heyl, maister Nicholay,  
Good morn, I see the wel, for it is day.  
And than schul we be lordes al oure lyf  
Of al the world, as Noe and his wyf.  
But of oo thing I warne the ful right,  
Be wel avysed of that ilke nyght,  
That we ben entred into schippes boord,  
That non of us ne speke not a word, 400  
Ne clepe ne crye, but be in his preyere,



For it is Goddes owne heste decre.  
Thy wyf and thou most hangen fer a-twynne,  
For that bitwixe you schal be no synne,  
No more in lokyng than ther schal in dede.  
This ordynaunce is seyde; so God me speede.  
To morwe at night, whan men ben aslepe,  
Into our knedyng tubbes wol we erepe,  
And sitte ther, abydyng Goddes grace.  
Go now thy way, I have no lenger space 410  
To make of this no lenger sermonyng;  
Men seyn thus, send the wyse, and sey no thing;  
Thou art so wys, it needeth nat the teche.  
Go, save oure lyf, and that I the byseeche.'

This seely carpenter goth forth his way,  
Ful ofte he seyde, 'Allas, and weylaway!'  
And to his wyf he told his pryveté,  
And she was war, and knew it bet than he,  
What al this *queinte* caste was for to seye.  
But natheles she ferd as she schulde deye, 420  
And seyde, 'Allas! go forth thy way anon,  
Help us to skape, or we be ded echon.  
I am thy verray trewe wedded wyf;  
Go, deere spouse, and help to save oure lyf.'  
Lo, which a gret thing is affeccioun!  
A man may dye for ymaginacioun,  
So deepe may impressioun be take.  
This seely carpenter bygynneth quake;  
Him thenketh verrayly that he may se  
Noes flood come walking as the see 430  
To drenchen Alisoun, his hony decre.  
He weepeth, wayleth, he maketh sory cheere;  
He siketh, with ful many a sory swough,  
And goth, and geteth him a knedyng trough,

And after that a tubbe, and a kymelyn,  
And pryvely he sent hem to his in,  
And heng hem in the roof in pryveté.  
His owne honde than made *he* laddres thre,  
To elymben by the ronges and the stalkes  
Unto the tubbes hangyng in the balkes ; 440  
And hem vitaylede, bothe trough and tubbe,  
With breed and cheese, with good ale in a jubbe,  
Suffisyng right ynough as for a day.  
But or that he hadde maad al this array,  
He sent his knave and eek his wenche also  
Upon his neede to Londone for to go.  
And on the Monday, whan it drew to nyght,  
He schette his dore, withouten candel light,  
And dressed al this thing as it schulde be.  
And schortly up they clumben alle thre. 450  
They seten stille wel a forlong way :  
' Now, *Pater noster*, elum,' quod Nicholay,  
And ' elum,' quod Jon, and ' elum,' quod Alisoun.  
This carpenter seyde his devoeioun,  
And stille he sitt, and byddeth his prayere,  
Ay waytyng on the reyn, if he it heere.  
The deede sleep, for verray busynesse,  
Fil on this carpenter, right as I gesse;  
Abowten courfew tyme, or litel more.  
For travail of his goost he-groneth sore, 460  
And eft he routeth, for his heed myslay.  
Doun of the laddir stalketh Nicholay,  
And Alisoun ful softe adoun hir spedde.  
Withouten wordes mo they goon to bedde ;  
Ther as the carpenter was wont to lye,  
Ther was the revel and the melodyo.  
And thus lith Alisoun and Nicholas,

In busynesse of myrthe and of solas,  
 Til that the belles of laudes gan to ryng,  
 And freres in the chaunceel gan to syng. 470

This parissch clerk, this amercous Absolon,  
 That is for love so harde and woo bygon,  
 Upon the Monday was at Osenaye  
 With company, him to desporte and playe;  
 And axed upon caas a cloysterer  
 Ful pryvely after the carpenter;  
 And he drough him apart out of the chireche,  
 And sayde, 'Nay, I say him nat here wirche  
 Syn Satirday: I trow that he be went  
 For tymber, ther our abbot hath him sent. 480  
 For he is wont for tymber for to goo,  
 And dwellen at the Graunge a day or tuo.  
 Or elles he is at his hous certayn.  
 Wher that he be, I can nat sothly sayn.'

This Absolon ful joly was and light,  
 And thoughte, 'Now is tyme to wake al night,  
 For sikerly I sawh him nought styrynge  
 Aboute his dore, syn day bigan to spryng.  
 So mote I thryve, I schal at cokkes crowe  
 Ful pryvely go knocke at his wyndowe, 490  
 That stant ful lowe upon his bowres wal;  
 To Alisoun than wol I tellen al  
 My love-longyng; for yet I schal not mysse  
 That atte leste wey I schal hir kisse.  
 Som maner comfort schal I have, parfay!  
 My mouth hath icched al this longe day;  
 That is a signe of kysyng atte leste.  
 Al nyght I mette eek I was at a feste.  
 Therfore I wol go slepe an hour or tweye,  
 And al the night than wol I wake and pleye.' 500

Whan that the firste cok hath crowe, anoon  
Up ryst this jolyf lover Absolon,  
And him arrayeth gay, at poynt devys.  
But first he cheweth greyn and lycoris,  
To smellen swete, or he hadde kempt his heere.  
Under his tunge a trewe love he beere,  
For therby wende he to be gracious.  
He rometh to the carpenteres hous,  
And stille he stant under the schot wyndowe ;  
Unto his brest it raught, it was so lowe ; 510  
And softe he cowhith with a semysoun :  
' What do ye, honycomb, swete Alisoun ?  
My fayre bryd, my swete cynamome,  
Awake, lemman myn, and speketh to me.  
Ful litel thynke ye upon my wo,  
That for youre love I swelte ther I go.  
No wonder is if that I swelte and swete,  
I morne as doth a lamb after the tete.  
I-wis, lemman, I have such love-longyng,  
That like a turtill trewe is my moornyng. 520  
I may not cte no more than a mayde.'  
    ' Go fro the wyndow, jakke fool,' sehe sayde ;  
' As help me God, it wol not be, compaine.  
I love another, and elles were I to blame,  
Wel bet than the, by Jhesu, Absolon.  
Go forth thy wey, or I wol cast a stoon ;  
And let me slepe, a twenty devel way !'  
' Allas ! ' quod Absolon, ' and weylaway !  
That trewe love was ever so ylle byset ;  
Thanne kisseth me, syn it may be no bett, 530  
For Jesus love, and for the love of me.'  
' Wilt thou than go thy wey therwith ? ' quod sehe.  
' Ye, certes, lemman,' quod this Absolon.

‘Than mak the redy,’ quod sche, ‘I come anon.’  
This Absolon doun sette him on his knees,  
And seide, ‘I am a lord at alle degrees ;  
For after this I hope ther cometh more ;  
Lemman, thy grace, and, swete bryd, thyn ore.’  
The wyndow sche undyd, and that in hast ;  
‘Have doon,’ quod sche, ‘com of, and speed tho  
fast, 540

Lest that our neygheboures the aspye.’  
This Absolon gan wipe his mouth ful drye,  
Derk was the night as picche or as a cole,  
Out atte wyndow putte sche hir hole :  
And Absolon him fel no bet ne wers,  
But with his mouth he kist hir naked ers  
Ful savorly. Whan he was war of this,  
Abak he sterte, and thought it was amys,  
For wel he wist a womman hath no berd.  
He felt a thing al rough and long i-herd, 550  
And seyde, ‘Fy, allas ! what have I do ?’  
‘Te-hee !’ quod sche, and elapte the wyndow to ;  
And Absolon goth forth a sory paas.  
‘A berd, a berd !’ quod heende Nicholas ;  
‘By Goddes corps, this game goth fair and wel.’  
This seely Absolon herd every del,  
And on his lippe he gan for angir byte ;  
And to himself he seyde, ‘I schal the quyte.’

Who rubbith now, who froteth now his lippes  
With dust, with sand, with straw, with cloth, with  
chippes, 560

But Absolon ? that seith ful ofte, ‘Allas,  
My soule bytake I unto Sathanas !  
But me were lever than alle this toun,’ quod he,  
‘Of this dispit awroken for to be.

Allas !' quod he, 'allas ! I nadde *y-bleynt* !'  
 His hoothe love was eold, and al i-queint.  
 For fro that tyme that he hadde kist her ers,  
 Of paramours ne sette he nat a kers,  
 For he was helyd of his maledye ;  
 Ful ofte paramours he gan deffye, 570  
 And wept as doth a child that is i-bete.  
 A softe paas went he over the strete  
 Unto a smyth, men elepith daun Gerveys,  
 That in his forge smythede plowh-harneys ;  
 He scharpeth sehar and eultre bysily.  
 This Absolon knokketh al esily.  
 And seyde, 'Undo, Gerveys, and that anoon.'  
 'What, who art thou ?' 'It am I Absolon.'  
 'What? Absolon, what for Cristes swete tree !  
 Why ryse ye so rathe? *benedicite*, 580  
 What cyleth you? some gay gurl, God it woot,  
 Hath brought you thus upon the verytrot ;  
 By seinte Noet ! ye wote wel what I mene.'  
 This Absolon ne roughte nat a bene  
 Of al this pley, no word agayn he yaf ;  
 For he hadde more tow on his distaf  
 Than Gerveys knew, and seyde, 'Freend so  
 deere,  
 That hote cultre in the chymney heere  
 As lene it me, I have therwith to doone ;  
 I wol it bring agayn to the ful soone.' 590  
 Gerveys answerde, 'Certes, were it gold,  
 Or in a poke nobles al untold,  
 Ye schul him have, as I am trewe smyth.  
 Ey, Cristes fote ! what wil ye do therwith ?'  
 'Therof,' quod Absolon, 'be as be may ;  
 I schal wel telle it the to morwe day ;'

And caughte the eultre by the eolde stele.  
Ful soft out at the dore he gan it stele,  
And wente unto the carpenteres wal.  
He cowheth first, and knokketh therwithal 600  
Upon the wyndow, right as he dede er.  
This Alisoun answerde, 'Who is ther  
That knokketh so? I warant it a theef.'  
'Why nay,' quod he, 'God woot, my sweete leef,  
I am thyn Absolon, o my derlyng.  
Of gold,' quod he, 'I have the brought a ryng;  
My mooder yaf it me, so God me save!  
Ful fyn it is, and therto wel i-grave;  
This wol I yive the, if thou me kisse.'  
This Nicholas was risen for to pysse, 610  
And thought he wold amenden al the jape,  
He schulde kisse his ers or that he skape.  
And up the wyndow dyde he hastily,  
And out his ers putteth he pryvely  
Over the buttoke, to *the* haunche bon.  
And therwith spak this clerk, this Absolon,  
'Spek, sweete bryd, I wot nat wher thou art.'  
This Nicholas anon let flee a fart,  
As gret as it hadde ben a thundir dent,  
And with that strook he was almost i-blent; 620  
And he was redy with his yren hoot,  
And Nicholas amid the ers ho smoot.  
Of goth the skyn an hande brede aboute,  
The hote cultre brente so his toute;  
And for the smert he wende for to dye;  
As he were wood, anon he gan to crye,  
'Help, watir, watir, help, for Goddes herte!'  
This carpenter out of his slumber sterte,  
And herd on crye watir, as he wer wood.



He thought, ‘Allas, for now cometh Noes flood!’  
He sit him up withoute wordes mo, 631  
And with his ax he smot the corde a-two;  
And down he goth; he fond nowthir to selle  
No breed ne ale, til he com to the selle  
Upon the floor, and ther aswoun he lay.  
Up styrt hir Alisoun, and Nicholay,  
And cryden, ‘out and harrow!’ in the strete.  
The neygheboures bothe smal and grete,  
In ronnen, for to gauren on this man,  
That yet aswowne lay, bothe pale and wan; 640  
For with the fal he brosten had his arm.  
But stond he muste to his owne harm,  
For whan he spak, he was anon born down  
With heende Nicholas and Alisoun.  
They tolden every man that he was wood;  
He was agast and feerd of Noes flood  
Thurgh fantasie, that of his vanité  
He hadde i-bought him knedyng tubbes thre,  
And hadde hem hanged in the roof above;  
And that he preyed hem for Goddes love 650  
To sitten in the roof *par compaignye*.  
The folk gan lawhen at his fantasye;  
Into the roof they kyken, and they gape,  
And torne al his harm into a jape.  
For whatsoever the carpenter answerde,  
Hit was for nought, no man his resoun herde,  
With othis greet he was so sworn adoun,  
That he was holden wood in al the toun.  
For every clerk anon right heeld with othir;  
They seyde, ‘The man was wood, my leeve  
brother;’ 660  
And every man gan lawhen at his stryf.

Thus swyved was the carpenteres wyf  
For al his kepyng and his gelousye ;  
And Absolon hath kist hir nethir ye ;  
And Nicholas is skaldid in his towte.  
This tale is doon, and God save al the route.





Oure wil desireth folye ever in oon ;  
 For whan we may nat do, than wol we speke,  
 Yet in oure aisschen old is fyr i-reke.  
 Foure gledys have we, which I schal devyse,  
 Avanting, lyng angur, eoveytise. 30  
 This foure sparkys longen unto eelde.  
 Oure olde lymes mowen be unweelde,  
 But wil ne schal nat fayle us, that is soth.  
 And yet I have alwey a coltes toth,  
 As many a yeer as it is passed henne,  
 Syn that my tappe of lyf bygan to renne.  
 For sikirlik, whan I was born, anon  
 Deth drough the tappe of lyf, and leet it goon ;  
 And now so longe hath the tappe i-ronne,  
 Til that almost al empty is the tonne. 40  
 The streem of lyf now droppeth on the chymbe.  
 The sely tonge may wel rynge and chimbe  
 Of wreechednes, that passed is ful yooore :  
 With olde folk, sauf dotage, is no more.'

Whan that oure Host hadde herd this ser-  
 monyng,

He gan to speke as lordly as a kyng,  
 And seyde, ' What amounteth al this wit ?  
 What ? sehul we speke al day of holy wryt ?  
 The devyl made a reve for to preche,  
 Or of a sowter, sehipman or a leche. 50  
 Sey forth thi tale, and tarye nat the tyme ;  
 Lo heer is Depford, and it is passed prime ;  
 Lo Grenewich, ther many a schrewe is inne ;  
 It were al tyme thi tale *for* to bygynne.'

' Now, sires,' quod this Osewold the Reeve,  
 ' I pray yow alle, that noon of you him greeve,  
 Though I answere, and somewhat sette his howe,

For leeful is with force force to showve.  
 This dronken Myllere hath i-tolde us heer,  
 How that bygiled was a carpenter,  
 Peraventure in scorn, for I am oon ;  
 And by your leve, I schal him quyte anoon.  
 Right in his cherles termes wol I speke ;  
 I praye to God his nekke mot to-breke !  
 He can wel in myn eye seen a stalke,  
 But in his owne he can nought seen a balke.'

60.

## THE REEVES TALE.



T Trompyngtoun, nat fer fro Cante-  
 brigge,  
 Ther goth a brook, and over that a  
 brigge,  
 Upon the whiche brook ther stant a melle :  
 And this is verray sothe that I you telle.  
 A meller was ther dwellyng many a day,  
 As eny pecok he was prowld and gay ;  
 Pipen he coude, and fissh, and nettys beete,  
 And turne cuppes, wrastle wel, and scheete.  
 Ay by his belt he bar a long panade,  
 And of a swerd ful trechaunt was the blade. 10  
 A joly popper bar he in his pouche ;  
 Ther was no man for perel durst him touche.  
 A Scheffeld thwitel bar he in his hose.  
 Round was his face, and camois was his nose.  
 As pyled as an ape was his skulle.

He was a market-beter at the fulle.  
Ther durste no wight hand upon him legge,  
That he ne swor anon he schuld abegge.

A thief he was, for-soth, of corn and mele,  
And that a sleigh, and usyng for to stele. 20  
His name was hoote deynous Symekyn.

A wyf he hadde, eome of noble kyn ;  
The persoun of the toun hir fader was.  
With hire he yaf ful many a panne of bras,  
For that Symkyn schuld in his blood allye.  
Sche was i-fostryd in a nonnerye ;  
For Symkyn wolde no wyf, as he sayde  
But sche were wel i-norissched and a mayde,  
To saven his estaat and yomanrye.

And sche was proud and pert as is a pye. 30  
A ful fair sighte was ther *upon* hem two ;  
On haly dayes bifore hir wold he go  
With his typet y-bounde about his heed ;  
And sche eam aftir in a gyte of reed,  
And Symkyn hadde hosen of the same.

Ther durste no wight clepe hir but *madame* ;  
Was noon so hardy walkyng by the weye,  
That with hir dorste rage or elles pleye,  
But if he wolde be slayn of Symekyn  
With panade, or with knyf, or boydekyn ; 40

For gelous folk ben perilous everemo,  
Algate they wolde here wyves wende so.  
And eek for sche was somdel smoterlich,  
Sche was as deyne as water in a dich,  
As ful of hokir, and of bissemare.  
Hir thoughte ladyes oughten hir to spare,  
What for hir kynreed and hir nortelrye,  
That sche hadde lerned in the nonnerye.

O doughter hadden they betwix hem two,  
Of twenti yeer, withouten eny mo, 50  
Savyng a child that was of half yer age  
In cradil lay, and was a proper page.  
This wenche thikke and wel i-grownen was,  
With camoys nose, and eyghen gray as glas ;  
And buttokkes brode, and brestes round and hye,  
But right fair was hir heer, I wol nat lye.  
The persoun of the toun, for sche was feir,  
In purpos was to maken hir his heir,  
Bothe of his catel and his mesuage,  
And straunge made it of hir marlage. 60  
His purpos was to bystowe hir hye  
Into som worthy blood of ancetrye ;  
For holy chirche good moot be despendid  
On holy chirche blood that is descendid.  
Therefore he wolde his joly blood honoure,  
Though that he schulde holy chirehe devoure.

Gret soken hadde this meller, oute of doute,  
With whete and malt, of al the londe aboute ;  
And namely ther was a gret collegge,  
Men clepe it the Soler-halle of Cantebregge, 70  
Ther was here whete and eek here malt i-grounde.  
And on a day it happed on a stounde,  
Syk lay the mauncyple on a maledye,  
Men wenden wisly that he schulde dye ;  
For which this meller stal both mele and corn  
A thousand part more than byforn.  
For ther biforn he stal but curteysly ;  
But now he is a theef outrageously.  
For which the wardeyn chidde and made fare,  
But therof sette the meller not a tare ; 80  
He crakkede boost, and swor it was nat so.



Thanne weren there poore scoleres tuo,  
That dwelten in the halle of which I seye;  
Testyf they were, and lusty for to pleye;  
And, oonly for here mirth and revelrye,  
Upon the wardeyn bysily they crye,  
To yeve hem leve but a litel stounde  
To go to melle and see here corn i-grounde;  
And hardily they dursten ley here nekke,  
The meller schulde nat stel hem half a pekke 90  
Of corn by sleighte, ne by force hem reve.  
And atte last the wardeyn yaf hem leve.  
Johan hight that oon, and Alayn hight that  
other;

Of o toun were they born that highte Strothir,  
Fer in the North, I can nat telle where.  
This Aleyn maketh redy al his gere,  
And on an hors the sak he cast anoon:  
Forth goth Aleyn the clerk, and also Jon,  
With good swerd and with bocler by her side.  
Johan knew the way, that hem needith no gyde;  
And at the mylle the sak adoun he layth. 101  
Alayn spak first: 'Al heil! Symond, in faith  
How fares thy faire doughter and thy wyf?'  
'Alayn, welcome,' quod Symond, 'by my lyf!  
And Johan also; how now! what do ye here?  
'By God!' quod Johan, 'Symond, neede has na  
pcere.

Him falles serve himself that has na swayn,  
Or elles he is a fon, as clerkes sayn.  
Our mancyple, as I hope, wil be deed,  
Swa werkes ay the wanges in his heed. 110  
And therefore I is come, and eck Aleyn,  
To grynde oure corn, and carie it ham ageyn.

I prey you speed us in al that ye may.'  
'It schal be doon,' quod Symkyn, 'by my fay!  
What wol ye do whil that it is in hande?'  
'By God! right by the hoper wol I stande,'  
Quod Johan, 'and se how that the corn gas inne.  
Yet sawh I never, by my fader kynne!  
How that the hoper waggis to and fra.'  
Aleyn answerde, 'Johan, and wiltow swa? 120  
Than wol I be bynethe, by my croun!  
And se how that the mele fallys down  
Into the trough, that schal be my desport;  
For Jon, in faith, I may be of youre sort,  
I is as ille a meller as ere ye.'  
This mellere smyleth for here nyceté,  
And thought, 'Al this is doon but for a wyle;  
They wenen that no man may hem bigile.  
But, by my thrift, yet schal I blere here ye,  
For al here sleight and al here philosophie; 130  
The more queynte knakkes that they make,  
The more wol I stele whan I take.  
In stede of mele, yet wol I yeve hem bren.  
The grettest clerkes beth not wisest men,  
As whilom to the wolf thus spak the mare;  
Of al here art ne counte I nat a tare.'  
Out at the dore he goth ful pryvyly,  
Whan that he saugh his tyme sotyly;  
He loketh up and down, til he hath founde  
The clerkes hors, ther as it stood i-bounde 140  
Behynde the mylle, under a levesel;  
And to the hors he goth him faire and wel.  
He strepeth of the bridel right anoon.  
And whan the hors was loos, he gan to goon  
Toward the fen there wilde mares renne,

Forth with 'wi-he!' thurgh thikke and eek thurgh  
thenne.

This meller goth agayn, and no word seyde,  
But doth his note, and with the clerkes pleyde,  
Til that here corn was fair and wel i-grounde.  
And whan the mele was sakked and i-bounde, 150  
This Johan goth out, and fynt his hors away,  
And gan to crye, 'Harrow and weylaway!  
Oure hors is loste! Aleyn, for Goddes banes,  
Step on thy feet, cum on, man, al at anes.  
Allas! our wardeyn hath his palfray lorn!  
This Aleyn al forgeteth mele and corn,  
Al was out of his mynd his housbondrye;  
'What, whilke way is he gan?' gan he crye.  
The wyf cam lepyng in-ward with a ren,  
Sche seyde, 'Allas! your hors goth to the fen 160  
With wylde mares, as fast as he may go;  
Unthank come on his heed that band him so,  
And he that bettir schuld han knyht the reyne!  
'Allas!' quod Johan, 'Aleyn, for Cristes peyne!  
Leg down thi swerd, and I sal myn alswa;  
I is ful wight, God wat, as is a ra;  
By Goddes hart! he sal nat scape us bathe.  
Why nad thou put the capil in the lathe?  
Il hail, Aleyn, by God! thou is a fon!  
This sely clerkes speeden hem anoon 170  
Toward the fen, bothe Aleyn and eek Jon.  
And when the myller sawh that they were gon,  
He half a busshel of the flour hath take,  
And bad his wyf go knede it in a cake.  
He seyde, 'I trowe the clerkes ben aferd!  
Yet can a miller make a clerkes berd,  
For al his art; ye, lat hem go here waye!

Lo wher they goon ! ye, lat the ehildren playe ;  
They get hym nat so lightly, by my eroun !'  
This seely elerkes ronnen up and down, 180  
With ' Keep ! keep ! stand ! stand ! jossa, ware  
derere !

Ga wightly thou, and I sal keep him heere.'  
But sehortly, til that it was verray night,  
They eowde nat, though they did al here might,  
Here eapil eaehe, it ran away so faste,  
Til in a diehe they eaught him atte laste.  
Wery and wete as bestys in the reyn,  
Comth sely Johan, and with him eomth Aleyn.  
' Allas !' quod Johan, that day that I was born !  
Now are we dryve til hething and to seorn. 190  
Oure eorn is stole, men woln us foles ealle,  
Bathe the wardeyn and eek our felaws alle,  
And namely the myller, weyloway !'  
Thus pleyneeth Johan, as he goth by the way  
Toward the mylle, and Bayard in his hand.  
The myller sittying by the fyr he fand,  
For it was night, and forther mighte they noughte,  
But for the love of God they him bisoughte  
Of herberwh and of ese, as for her peny.  
The myller sayd agayn, ' If ther be eny, 200  
Swieh as it is, yit schul ye have your part.  
Myn hous is streyt, but ye han lerned art ;  
Ye eonne by argumentes make a plaee  
A myl brood of twenty footc of spae.  
Let se now if this plaee may suffyse,  
Or make it rom with speeche, as is your gyse.'  
' Now, Symond,' seyde this Johan, ' by seynt Cuth-  
berd ?

Ay is thou mery, and that is fair answerd.

I have herd say, men suld take of twa thinges,  
Slik as he fynt, or tak slik as he bringes. 210  
But specially I pray the, host ful deere,  
Get us som mete and drynk, and mak us cheere,  
And we wol paye trewely at the fulle ;  
With empty hand men may na hawkes tulle.  
Lo heer our silver redy for to spende.’  
This meller into toun his doughter sende  
For ale and breed, and rosted hem a goos,  
And band her hors, he scholde no more go loos ;  
And in his owne chambir hem made a bed,  
With schetys and with chalouns fair i-sprede, 220  
Nat from his owen bed ten foot or twelve.  
His doughter had a bed al by hirselve,  
Right in the same chambre by and by ;  
It mighte be no bet, and cause why  
Ther was no rommer herberw in the place.  
They sowpen, and they speke hem to solace,  
And dronken ever strong ale atte beste.  
Aboute mydnyght wente they to reste.  
Wel hath the myller vernysshed his heed,  
Ful pale he was for-dronken, and nat reed ; 230  
He yoxeth, and he speketh thurgh the nose,  
As he were on the quakke or on the pose.  
To bed he goth, and with him goth his wyf,  
As eny jay sche light was and jolyf,  
So was *hire* joly whistel wel y-wet ;  
The cradil at hire beddes feet is set,  
To rokken, and to yive the child to souke.  
And whan that dronken was al in the erouke,  
To bedde wente the doughter right anon ;  
To bedde goth Aleyn, and also Jon, 240  
Ther nas no more, hem needed no dwale.

This meller hath so wysly bibbed ale,  
 That as an hors he snortith in his sleep,  
 Ne of his tayl bihynd took he no keep.  
 His wyf *bar him* a burdoun, a ful strong,  
 Men might her rowtyng heeren a forlong.  
 The wenche routeth eek *par companye*.  
 Aleyn the clerk, that herde this melodye,  
 He pokyde Johan, and seyde, 'Slepistow?  
 Herdistow ever slik a sang er now?  
 Lo, slik a couplyng is betwix hem alle,  
 A wilde fyr upon thair bodyes falle!  
 Wha herkned ever swilk a ferly thing?  
 Ye, thei sul have the flour of ille endyng!  
 This lange night ther tydes me na rest.  
 But yet na fors, al sal be for the best.  
 For, Johan,' sayd he, 'as ever mot I thryve,  
 If that I may, yone wenche sal I swyve.  
 Som esement hath *the* lawe schapen us;  
 For Johan, ther is a lawe that says thus,  
 That if a man in a point be agreved,  
 That in another he sal be releved.  
 Oure eorn is stoln, sothly, it is na nay,  
 And we have had an ylle fitt to day;  
 And syn I sal have nan amendement  
 Agayn my los, I wol have esement.  
 By Goddes saule! it sal nan other be.'  
 This Johan answerd, 'Aleyn, avyse the;  
 The miller is a perlous man,' he sayde,  
 'And if that he out of his sleep abrayde,  
 He mighte do us bothe a vilonye.'  
 Aleyn answerd, 'I count it nat a flye!  
 And up he roos, and by the wenche *he* crepte.  
 This wenche lay upright and faste slepte,

Til he so neih was or sche might aspye  
That it hadde ben to late for to crye.  
And schortly for to seye, they weren at oon.  
Now pley, Alein, for I wol speke of Jon.

This Johan lith stille a forlong whyle or two,  
And to himself compleyned of his woo. 280

‘Allas! quod he, ‘this is a wikked jape;  
Now may I say that I am but an ape.  
Yet hath my felaw somewhat for his harm;  
He hath the myllers doughter in his arm;  
He auntred him, and has his needes sped,  
And I lye as a draf-sak in my bed;  
And when this jape is tald another day,  
I sal be held a daf, a cokenay.

Unhardy is unsely, as men saith.

I wol arise, and auntre it, in good faith.’ 290

And up he ros, and softly he wente  
Unto the cradil, and in his hand it hente,  
And bar it softe unto his beddis feet.  
Soone after this the wyf hir routyng leet,  
And gan awake, and went hir for to pisse,  
And cam agayn, and gan hir cradel mysse,  
And groped heer and ther, but sehe fond noon.

‘Allas!’ quod sche, ‘I had almost mysgoon;  
I had almost goon to the clerkes bed,  
Ey, *benedicite!* than had I foule i-sped!’ 300

And forth sehe goth, til sche the cradil fand.  
Sehe gropith alway forther with hir hand,  
And fand the bed, and thoughte nat but good,  
Bycause that the eradil by hit stood,  
Nat knowyng wher sche was, for it was derk;  
But faire and wel sche creep in to the clerk,  
And lith ful stille, and wolde han caught a sleep.



Withinne a while Johan the clerk up leep,  
And on this goode wyf *he* leyth on sore ;  
So mery a fytt ne hadde sche nat ful yore. 310  
He priketh harde and deepe, as he were mad.  
This joly lyf han this twey clerkes had,  
Til that the thridde cok bygan to synge.  
Aleyn wax wery in the dawenyng,  
For he hadde swonken al the longe night,  
And seyde, ‘ Farwel, Malyn, my sweete wight !  
The day is come, I may no lenger byde ;  
But evermo, wher so I go or ryde,  
I am thin owen clerk, so have I seel !’  
‘ Now, deere lemman,’ quod sche, ‘ go, farwel ! 320  
But or thou go, o thing I wol the telle :  
Whan that thou wendist hom-ward by the melle,  
Right at the entré of the dore byhynde  
Thou schalt a cake of half a busshel fynde,  
That was i-maked of thyn owen mele,  
Which that I hilp myn owen self to stele.  
And, goode lemman, God the save and kepe !’  
And with that word almost sche gan to weepe.  
Aleyn uprist, and thought, ‘ Er that it dawe  
I wol go crepen in by my felawe ;’ 330  
And fand the eradil with his hand anon.  
‘ By God !’ thought he, ‘ al wrong I have i-goon ;  
My heed is toty of my swynk to nyght,  
That makes me that I ga nought aright.  
I wot wel by the eradel I have mysgo ;  
Heer lith the myller and his wyf also.’  
Forth he goth in twenty devel way  
Unto the bed, ther as the miller lay.  
He wende have crope by his felaw Jon,  
And by the myller in he creep anon, 340

And caught him by the nekke, and soft he spak,  
And seyde, 'Jon, thou swyneshed, awak,  
For Cristes sowle ! and here a noble game ;  
For, by that lord that eleped is seynt Jame,  
As I have thries in this schorte night  
Swyved the myllers doughter bolt upright,  
Whiles thou hast as a coward ben agast.'  
'Ye, false harlot,' quod this mellere, 'hast ?  
A ! false traitour, false clerke !' quod he,  
'Thou schalt be deed, by Goddes dignité !' 350  
Who durste be so bold to disparage  
My doughter, that is com of hih lynage ?'  
And by the throte-bolle he caught Aleyn,  
And he hent him dispitously ageyn,  
And on the nose he smot him with his fest.  
Doun ran the blody streem upon his brest ;  
And in the floor with nose and mouth to-broke  
They walweden as pigges in a poke ;  
And up they goon, and doun they goon anon,  
Til that the millner stumbled at a ston, 360  
And doun he felle bakward on his wyf,  
That wyste nothing of this nyee stryf ;  
For sehe was falle asleepe a litel wight  
With Jon the clerke, that waked al the night,  
And with the falle right out of slepe sehe brayde.  
'Help, holy eroys of Bromholme !' sehe sayde,  
'*In manus tuas*, Lord, to the I ealle !  
Awake, Symond, the feend is in thin halle !  
My hert is broken ! help ! I am but deed !  
Ther lythe upon my wombe and on myn heed. 370  
Help, Symkyn ! for this false elerkes fighte.'  
This Johan stert up as fast as ever he mighte,  
And graspede by the walles to and fro,

To fynde a staf; and sehe sturt up also,  
 And knewe the estres bet than dede *that* Jon,  
 And by the wal sehe took a staf anon,  
 And sawh a litel glymeryng of light;  
 For at an hool in schon the moone bright,  
 And by that light she saugh hem bothe two;  
 But sikirly sehe wiste nat who was who, 380  
 But as sehe saugh a whit thing in hir ye.  
 And whan sehe gan this white thing aspye,  
 Sehe wende the clerk hadde wered a volupeer;  
 And with a staf sehe drough hir neer and neer,  
 And wend have hit this Aleyn atte fulle,  
 And smot this meller on the piled seulle,  
 That doun he goth, and eryeth, 'Harrow! I dye!'  
 This elerkes beeten him wel, and leet hym lye,  
 And greyth hem wel, and take her hors anon,  
 And eek here mele, and hoom anon they goon; 390  
 And at the millen dore they tok here eake  
 Of half a buisschel flour ful wel i-bake.

Thus is the prowde miller wel i-bete,  
 And hath i-lost the gryndyng of the whete,  
 And payed for the soper every del  
 Of Aleyn and of Johan, that beten him wel;  
 His wyf is swyved, and his doughter als.  
 Lo! such it is a miller to be fals.  
 And therto this proverbe is scyd ful soth,  
 He thar nat weene wel that evyl doth. 400  
 A gylour schal himself bygiled be.  
 And God, that sittest in thy magesté,  
 Save al this compaignie, gret and smale!  
 Thus have I quyt the miller in his tale.

## THE COKES PROLOGE.



HE Cook of Lonðone, whil the Reeve  
spak,  
For joye *him* thought he elawed him  
on the bak ;

‘Ha, ha !’ quod he, ‘for Cristes passioun,

This meller hath a scharp conclusioun

Upon his argument of herburgage.

Wel seyde Salomon in his langage,

Ne bryng nat every man into thyn hous,

For herburgage by night is perilous.

Wel aught a man avised for to be

Whom that he brought into his pryvyté.

10

I praye to God so gyf my body care,

Yif ever, siththe I highte Hoggo of Ware,

Herd I a miller better set a-werke ;

He hadde a jape of malice in the derke.

But God forbede that we stynten heere,

And therefore if ye fouchesauf to heere

A tale of me that am a pover man,

I wol yow telle as wel as *eny* kan

A litel jape that fel in oure eité.’

Oure Host answerde and seyde, ‘ I graunt it the.

Now telle on, Roger, and loke it be good ;

2’

For many a pastey hastow lete blood,

And many a Jakk of Dover hastow sold,

That hath be twyes hoot and twyes eold.

Of many a pilgrym hastow Cristes curs ;

For thy persly they faren yet tho wors,

That they have eten with the stubbil goos ;  
 For in thy schoppe is many a flye loos.  
 Now *telle on*, gentil Roger by thy name,  
 But yit I pray the be nought wroth for game ; 30  
*A man may seye ful sothe in game and pley.'*

'Thow saist ful soth,' quod Roger, 'by my fey !  
 But soth play quad play, as the Flemyng saith ;  
*And therfore, Henry Baillif, by thy faith,*  
 Be thou nat wroth, or we departen her,  
 Though that my tale be of an hostyler.  
 But natheles I wol not telle it yit,  
 But or we departen it schal be quyt.'  
 And therwithal he lowh and made chere,  
 And seyde his tale, as ye schal after heere. 40

## THE COKES TALE.



PRENTYS dwellede whilom in oure  
 citee,  
 And of a craft of vitailers was he ;  
 Gaylard he was, as goldfynch in the  
 schawe,  
 Broun as a bery, and a propre felawe,  
 With lokkes blak, and kempt ful fetously.  
 Dauncen he cowde so wel and prately,  
 That he was cleped Perkyn Revellour.  
 He was *as* ful of love and paramour  
 As is the honycombe of hony swete ;  
 Wel were the wenche that mighte him meete. 10  
*At every bridale wold he synge and hoppe ;*  
*He lovede bette the tavernne than the schoppe.*

For whan ther eny rydyng was in Cheepe,  
Out of the schoppe thider wolde he lepe;  
Tyl *that* he hadde al that sight i-seyn,  
And daunced wel, he nolde nat come ageyn;  
And gadred him a meyné of his sort,  
To hoppe and synge, and make such disport.  
And ther they setten stevene for to meete,  
To pleyen atte dys in such a strete, 20  
For in the toun ne was ther no prentys  
That fairer cowde caste a peyre dys  
Than Perkyn couthe, and therto he was free  
Of his dispence, in place of pryvyté.  
That fand his mayster wel in his chaffare,  
For often tyme he fond his box ful bare.  
For such a joly prentys revelour,  
That haunteth dys, revel, or paramour,  
His maister schal it in his schoppe abyge,  
Al have he no part of the mynstraleye. 30  
For thefte and ryot be convertyble,  
Al can they pley on giterne or rubible.  
Revel and trouthe, as in a lowe degré,  
They ben ful wroth al day, as ye may see.  
This joly prentys with his mayster bood,  
Til he was oute neygh of his prentyshood,  
Al were he snybbyd bothe erly and late,  
And som tyme lad with revel into Newgate.  
But atte laste his mayster him bythoughte  
Upon a day, whan he his papyr soughte, 40  
Of a proverbe, that saith this same word,  
Wel bette is roten appul out of hord,  
Than that it rote al the remenaunt.  
So fareth it by a ryotous servaunt;  
It is ful lasse harm to late him pace,

Than he schend al the servauntes in the place.  
 Therfore his mayster yaf him acquitaunce,  
 And bad him go, with sorwe and with meschaunce.  
 And thus the joly prentys had his leve.  
 Now let hym ryot al the night or leve. 50  
*And for there is no thef withowten a lowke,  
 That helpeth him to wasten and to sowke  
 Of that he bribe can, or borwe maye,  
 Anone he sent his bedde and his araie  
 Unto a compere of his owen sorte,  
 That loved dis, and revel, and disporte,  
 And had a wife, that held for contenaunce  
 A schoppe, and swyved for hire sustenaunce.  
 Fye theron, it is so foule, I wil nowe telle no forther,  
 For schame of the harlotrie that seweth after; 60  
 A velany it were thare of more to spelle,  
 Bot of a knyhte and his sonnes my tale I wil forthe  
 telle.*

### THE COKES TALE OF GAMELYN.



LITHETH, and lestneth, and herkneth  
 a right,  
 And ye schul heere a talkyng of a  
 doughty knight;  
 Sire Johan of Boundys was his right name,  
 He cowde of norture ynough and mochil of game.  
 Thre sones the knight had, that with his body he  
 wan;  
 The eldest was a moche schrewe, and sone he  
 bygan.



His bretheren loved wel here fader, and of him  
were agast,

The eldest deserved his fadres eurs, and had it at  
the last.

The goode knight his fader lyvede so yore,  
That deth was comen him to, and handled him  
ful sore. 10

The goode knight eared sore, sik ther he lay,  
How his echildren scholde lyven after his day.  
He hadde ben wyde wher, but non housbond he was,  
Al the lond that he had, it was verrey purehas.  
Fayn he wold it were dressed amonges hem alle,  
That eeh of hem had his part, as it mighte falle.  
Tho sent he into euntre after wise knyghtes,  
To helpedelen his londes and dressen hem to rightes.  
He sent hem word by lettres they schulden hye  
blyve,

Yf they wolde speke with him whil he was on lyve.  
Tho the knyghtes herden sik ther he lay, 21  
Hadde they no reste nother night ne day,  
Til they comen to him ther he lay stille  
On his deth bedde, to abyde Goddes wille.  
Than seyde the goode knight, syk her he lay,  
'Lordes, I you warne for soth, withoute nay,  
I may no lengere lyven heer in this stounde ;  
For thurgh Goddes wille deth draweth me to  
grounde.'

Ther nas non of hem alle that herd him aright,  
That they hadden reuthe of that ilke knight, 30  
And seyde, 'Sir, for Goddes love, ne dismay you  
nought ;

God may do bote of bale that is now i-wrought.'  
Than spak the goode knight, sik ther he lay,

‘Boote of bale God may sende, I wot it is no nay;  
But I byseke you, knightes, for the love of me,  
Goth and dresseth my lond among my sones thre.  
And, sires, for the love of God, deleth hem nat amys,  
And forgetith nat Gamelyn, my yonge sone that is.  
Taketh heed to that on, as wel as to that other;  
Selde ye see ony eyr, helpen his brother.’ 40

Tho leete they the knight lyen that was nought  
in hele,  
And wenten into counseil his londes for to dele;  
For to delen hem alle to oon, that was her thought,  
And for Gamelyn was yongest, he schuld have  
nought.

Al the lond that ther was they dalten it in two,  
And leeten Gamelyn the yonge withoute lond go,  
And ech of hem seyde to other ful lowde,  
His bretheren might yeve him lond whan he good  
cowde.

Whan they hadde deled the lond at here wille,  
They come ayein to the knight ther he lay ful stille,  
And tolden him anon-right how they hadden  
wrought; 51

And the knight there he lay liked it right nought.  
Than seyde the knight, ‘*I swere* by seynt Martyn,  
For al that ye have y-doon yit is the lond myn;  
For Goddes love, neyhebours, stondeth alle stille,  
And I wil dele my lond after my wille.

Johan, myn eldeste sone, shall have plowes fyve,  
That was my fadres heritage whil he was on lyve;  
And my myddeleste sone fyf plowes of lond,  
That I halp for to gete with my right hond; 60  
And al myn other purchas of londes and leedes  
That I byquethe Gamelyn, and alle my goode steedes.

And I byseke yow, goode men, that lawe conne of  
londe,

For Gamelynes love, that my queste stonde.'

Thus dalte the knight his lond by his day,

Right on his deth bed sik ther he lay;

And sone aftirward he lay stoon stille,

And deyde whan tyme com, as it was Cristes wille.

And anon as he was deed, and under gras i-grave,

Sone the elder brother gyled the yonge knave, 70

He took into his hond his lond *and* his leede,

And Gamelyn himsele to clothen and to feede.

He clothed him and fed him yvel and eck wrothe,

And leet his londes for-fare and his houses bothe,

His parkes and his woodes, and dede nothing wel,

And seththen he it aboutht on his *owne* fel.

So longe was Gamelyn in his brotheres halle,

For the strengest of good wil they doutiden him  
alle;

Ther was non therinne nowther yong ne olde

That wolde wraththe Gamelyn, were he never so  
bolde. 80

Gamelyn stood on a day in his brotheres yerde,

And bygan with his hond to handlen his berde;

He thought on his londes that layen unsawe,

And his faire okes that doun were i-drawe;

His parkes were i-broken, and his deer byrceved;

Of alle his goode steedes noon was him byleved;

His howses were unhiled and ful yvel dight.

Tho thoughte Gamelyn it wente nought aright.

Afterward cam his brother walkynge thare,

And seyde to Gamelyn, 'Is our mete yare?' 90

Tho wraththed him Gamelyn, and swor by Goddes  
book,

‘Thou shalt go bake thiself, I wil nought be thy  
cook.’

‘How? brother Gamelyn, how answerest thou now?  
Thou spake never such a word as thou dost now.’

‘By my faith,’ seyde Gamelyn, ‘now me thinketh  
neede,

Of alle the harmes that I have I tok never ar heede.  
My parkes ben to-broken, and my deer byrevd,  
Of myn armure and my steedes nought is me  
bileved ;

Al that my fader me byquath al goth to schame,  
And therfor have thou Goddes curs, brother, by  
thy name.’ 100

Than byspak his brother, that rape was of rees,  
‘Stond stille, gadelyng, and hold right thy pees ;  
Thow schalt be fayn for to have thy mete and thy  
wede ;

Whatspekest thou, Gamelyn, of lond oth er of leede? ’  
Thanne seyde Gamelyn, the child that was ying,  
‘ Cristes curs mot he have that clepeth me gadelyng !  
I am no worse gadelyng, ne no worse wight,  
But born of a lady, and geten of a knight.’

Ne durst he nat to Gamelyn ner a foote go, 109  
But clepide to him his men, and seyde to hem tho,  
‘Goth and beteth this boy, and reveth him his wyt,  
And lat him leren another tyme to answeere me bet.’

Thanne seyde the child, yonge Gamelyn,  
‘Cristes curs mot thou have, brother art thou myn ;  
And if I schal algate be beten anon,  
Cristes curs mot thou have, but thou be that oon.’  
And anon his brother in that grete hete  
Made his men to fette staves Gamelyn to bete.  
Whan that everich of hem a staf had i-nome, 119

Gamelyn was war anon tho he seigh hem come ;  
Tho Gamelyn seyh hem come, he loked over al,  
And was war of a pestel stood under a wal ;  
Gamelyn was light of foot and thider gan he lepe,  
And drof alle his brotheres men right on an hepe.  
He loked as a wilde lyoun, and leyde on good woon ;  
Tho his brother say that, he bigan to goon ;  
He fley up intil a loft, and schette the dore fast.  
Thus Gamelyn with the pestel made hem alle agast.  
Some for Gamelynes love and some for his eyghè,  
Alle they drowe by halves, tho he gan to pleyghe.  
'What ! how now ?' seyde Gamelyn, 'evel mot ye  
thee !

131

Wil ye bygynne eontek, and so sone flee ?'  
Gamelyn sought his brother, whider he was flowe,  
And saugh wher he loked out at a wyndowe.  
'Brother,' sayde Gamelyn, 'eom a litel ner,  
And I wil teche the a play atte bokeler.'  
His brother him answerde, and swor by seynt  
Rycher,

'Whil the pestel is in thin hond, I wil come no neer :  
Brother, I wil make thy pees, I swere by Cristes ore ;  
Cast away the pestel, and wraththe the nomore.'  
'I mot neede,' sayde Gamelyn, 'wraththe me at  
oones,

141

For thou wolde make thy men to breke myne  
boones,  
Ne had I hadde mayn and might in myn armes  
To have i-put hem fro me, they wolde have do me  
harmes.'

'Gamelyn,' sayde his brother, 'be thou nought  
wroth,

For to seen the have harm it were me right loth ;

I ne dide it nought, brother, but for a fondyng,  
For to loken or thou were strong and art so ying.’  
‘ Com adoun than to me, and graunte me my bone,  
Of thing I wil the aske, and we schul saughte sone.’  
Doun than cam his brother, that fykil was and  
felle,

And was swithe sore agast of the pestelle.  
He seyde, ' Brother Gamelyn, aske me thy boone,  
And loke thou me blame but I graunte sone.'  
Thanne seyde Gamelyn, ' Brother, i-wys,  
And we schulle ben at oon, thou most me graunte  
this,

Al that my fader me byquith whil he was on lyve,  
Thou most do me it have, yif we schul nat stryve.'  
' That schalt thou have, Gamelyn, I swere by Cristes  
ore !

Al that thi fader the byquath, though thou woldest  
have more ;

Thy lond, that lyth laye, ful wel it schal be sowe,  
And thyn howses reysed up, that ben leyd so lowe.’  
Thus seyde the knight to Gamelyn with mowthe,  
And thought eek of falsnes, as he wel couthe.  
The knight thought on tresoun, and Gamelyn on  
noon,

And went and kist his brother, and than they were  
at oon.

Allas ! yonge Gamelyn, nothing he ne wiste  
With which a false tresoun his brother him kiste.

Litheth, and lestneth, and holdeth your tonge,  
And ye schul heere talkyng of Gamelyn the yonge,  
Ther was ther bysiden cryed a wrastlyng, 171  
And therfor ther was sette up a ram and a ryng;  
And Gamelyn was in good wil to wende therto,

For to preuen his might what he eowthe do.  
 'Brother,' seyde Gamelyn, 'by seynt Rieher,  
 Thou most lene me to nyght a litel courser  
 That is freisch to the spore, on for to ryde ;  
 I most on an erande, a litel her byside.'  
 'By God!' seyde his brother, 'of steedes in my stalle  
 Go and ehese the the best, and spare non of alle, 180  
 Of steedes or of coursers that stonden hem bisyde ;  
 And tel me, goode brother, whider thou wolt ryde.'  
 'Her byside, brother, is erylde a wrastlyng,  
 And therfor sehal be set up a ram and a ryng ;  
 Moche worschip it were, brother, to us alle,  
 Might I the ram and the ryng bryng home to this  
 halle.'

A steede ther was sadeled smertely and skeet ;  
 Gamelyn did a paire spores fast on his feet,  
 He set his foot in the styrop, the steede he bystrood,  
 And toward the wrastelyng the yonge child rood. 190  
 Tho Gamelyn the yonge was ride out at the gate,  
 The fals knight his brother lokked it after thatc,  
 And bysoughte Jhesu Crist, that is heven kyng,  
 He mighte breke his nekke in that wrastlyng.  
 As sone as Gamelyn eom ther the place was,  
 He lighte down of his steede, and stood on the gras,  
 And ther he herd a frankeleyn wayloway synge,  
 And bigan bitterly his hondes for to wrynge.  
 'Goode man,' seyde Gamelyn, 'why makest ow this  
 fare? 199

Is ther no man that may you helpe out of this eare ?'  
 'Allas !' seyde this frankleyn, 'that ever was I bore !  
 For tweye stalworthe sones I wene that I have lore ;  
 A champioun is in the plaee, that hath i-wrought  
 me sorwe,



For he hath slayn my two sones, but if God hem  
borwe.

I wold yeve ten pound, by Jhesu Crist ! and more,  
With the nones I fand a man to handil him sore.'  
'Goode man,' seyde Gamelyn, 'wilt thou wel doon,  
Hold myn hors, whil my man draweth of my schoon,  
And help my man to kepe my clothes and my steede,  
And I wil into place go, to loke if I may speede.' 210  
'By God !' sayde the frankeleyn, 'anon it schal be  
doon ;

I wil myself be thy man, to drawn of thy schoon,  
And wende thou into the place, Jhesu Crist the  
speede !

And drede not of thy clothes, nor of thy goode  
steede.'

Barfoot and unger Gamelyn in cam,  
Alle that weren in the place heede of him they name,  
How he durst aunte him of him to doon his might  
That was so doughty champioun in wrastlyng and  
in fight.

Up sterte the champioun raply and anoon,  
Toward yonge Gamelyn he bigan to goon, 220  
And sayde, 'Who is thy fader and who is thy sire ?  
For-sothe thou art a gret fool, that thou come hire.'  
Gamelyn answerde the champioun tho,  
'Thou knewe wel my fader whil he couthe go,  
Whiles he was on lyve, by seint Martyn !  
Sir Johan of Boundys was his name, and I  
Gamelyn.'

'Felaw,' seyde the champioun, 'al so mot I thryve,  
I know wel thy fader, whil he was on lyve ;  
And thiself, Gamelyn, I wil that thou it heere,  
Whil thou were a yong boy a moche schrewe thou  
were.'

Than seyde Gamelyn, and swor by Cristes ore,  
 ‘Now I am older woxe, thou schalt me fynd a  
 more.’

‘By God!’ sayde the champion, ‘welcome mote  
 thou be!’

Come thou ones in myn hond, schalt thou never  
 the.’

It was wel withinno the night, and the moone  
 schon,

Whan Gamelyn and the champion togider gon to  
 goon.

The champion caste tornes to Gamelyn that was  
 prest,

And Gamelyn stood stille, and bad him doon his  
 best.

Thanne seyde Gamelyn to the champion,

‘Thou art fast aboute to brynge me adoun; 210

Now I have i-proved many tornes of thyne,

Thow most,’ he seyde, ‘proven on or tuo of myne.’

Gamelyn to the champion yede smartly anon,

Of alle the tornes that he cowthe he schewed him  
 but oon,

And kast him on the left syde, that thre ribbes to-  
 brake,

And therto his oon arm, that yaf a gret crake.

Thanne seyde Gamelyn smertly anoon,

‘Schal it be holde for a cast, or elles for noon?’

‘By God,’ seyde the champion, ‘whether that it bee,

He that comes ones in thin hand schal he never  
 thee!’ 250

Than seyde the frankeleyn, that had his sones  
 there,

‘Blessed be thou, Gamelyn, that ever thou bore  
 were!’

The frankleyn seyde to the champioun, of him  
stood him noon eye,

‘This is yonge Gamelyn that taughte the this pleye,’  
Ayein answerd the champioun, that liked nothing  
welle,

‘He is a lither mayster, and his pley is right felle ;  
Sith I wrastled first, it is i-go ful yore,  
But I was nevere my lyf handled so sore.’

Gamelyn stood in the place allone withoute serke,  
And seyde, ‘If there be eny mo, lat hem come to  
werke ;

260

The champioun that peyned him to werke so sore,  
It seemeth by his continuance that he wil nomore.’

Gamelyn in the place stood as stille as stoon,  
For to abyde wrastelyng, but there com noon ;  
Ther was noon with Gamelyn wolde wrastle more,  
For he handled the champioun so wonderly sore.

Two gentilmen ther were that yemed the place,  
Comen to Gamelyn, God give him goode grace !  
And sayde to him, ‘Do on thyn hosen and thy  
schoon,

For-sothe at this tyme this feire is i-doon.’

270

And than seyde Gamelyn, ‘So mot I wel fare,  
I have nought yet halvendel sold up my ware.’

Tho seyde the champioun, ‘So brouk I my sweere,  
He is a fool that thereof beyeth, thou selleth it so  
deere.’

Tho sayde the frankeleyn that was in moche care,  
‘Felow,’ he seyde, ‘why lakkest thou his ware ?  
By seynt Jame in Galys, that many man hath  
sought,

Yet it is to good cheep that thou hast i-bought.’  
Tho that wardeynes were of that wrastlyng,

279

Come and broughte Gamelyn the ram and the ryng,  
 And seyden, 'Have, Gamelyn, the ryng and the ram  
 For the best wrasteler that ever here cam.'

Thus wan Gamelyn the ram and the ryng,  
 And wente with moche joye home in the mornyng.  
 His brother seihe wher he cam with the grete  
 rowte,

And bad schitte the gate, and holde him withoute,  
 The porter of his lord was ful sore agast,  
 And stert anon to the gate, and lokked it fast.

Now litheth, and lestneth, bothe yong and olde,  
 And ye schul heere gamen of Gamelyn the bolde.  
 Gamelyn come therto for to have comen in, 291  
 And thanne was it i-schet faste with a pyn;  
 Than seyde Gamelyn, 'Porter, undo the yate,  
 For many good mannes sone stondest therate.'  
 Than answerd the porter, and swor by Goddes berde,  
 'Thow ne schalt, Gamelyn come into this yerde.'  
 'Thow lixt,' sayde Gamelyn, 'so browke I mychyn!'  
 He smot the wyket with his foot, and brak away  
 the pyn.

The porter seyhe tho it might no better be,  
 He sette foot on erthe, *and* he bigan to flee. 300  
 'By my faith,' seyde Gamelyn, 'that travail is  
 i-lore,

For I am of foot as light as thou, though thou  
 haddest swore.'

Gamelyn overtook the porter, and his teene wrak,  
 And gert him in the nekke, that the bon to-brak,  
 And took him by that oon arm, and threw him in  
 a welle,

Seven fadmen it was deep, as I have herd telle.  
 Whan Gamelyn the yonge thus hadde pleyed his  
 play,

Alle that in the yerde were drewen hem away ;  
They dredden him ful sore, for werkes that he  
wroughte, 309

And for the faire company that he thider broughte.  
Gamelyn yede to the gate, and leet it up wyde ;  
He leet in alle maner men that gon in wold or ryde,  
And seyde, ' Ye be welecome withouten eny greeve,  
For we wiln be maistres heer, and aske no man  
leve.

Yestirday I lefte,' seyde yonge Gamelyn,  
' In my brother seller fyve tonne of wyn :  
I wil not that this compaignye parten a-twynne,  
And ye wil doon after me, while eny sope is  
thrynne ;

And if my brother grueehe, or make foul eheere,  
Other for spense of mete or drynk that we spenden  
heere, 320

I am oure eatour, and bere oure aller purs,  
He schal have for his grueehyng seint Maries eurs.  
My brother is a nyggoun, I swer by Cristes ore,  
And we wil spende largely that he hath spared yore ;  
And who that maketh grucehyng that we here  
dwelle,

He sehal to the porter into the draw-welle.'  
Seven dayes and seven nyght Gamelyn held his  
feste,

With moeche myrth and solas that was ther and no  
eheste ;

In a litel toret his brother lay i-steke,  
And sey hem wasten his good, but durst he not  
speke. 330

Erly on a mornyng on the eighte day  
The gestes come to Gamelyn and wolde gon here  
way.

‘Lordes,’ seyde Gamelyn, ‘wil ye so hye?  
 Al the wyn is not yet y-dronke, so brouk I myn ye.’  
 Gamelyn in his herte was he ful wo,  
 Whan his gestes took her leve from him for to go;  
 He wold they had lenger abide, and they seyde nay,  
 But bitaughte Gamelyn God, and good day.  
 Thus made Gamelyn his fest, and brought it wel  
 to ende,

And after his gestys took leve to wende. 340

Litheth, and lestneth, and holdeth youre tonge,  
 And ye schul heere gamen of Gamelyn the yonge;  
 Herkneth, lordynges, and lesteneth aright,  
 Whan alle the gestes were goon how Gamelyn was  
 dight.

Al the whil that Gamelyn heeld his mangerye,  
 His brother thought on him be wreke with his  
 treceherie.

Tho Gamelyns gestes were riden and i-goon,  
 Gamelyn stood allone, frendes had he noon;  
 Tho after ful soone withinne a litel stounde,  
 Gamelyn was i-take and ful hard i-bounde. 350

Forth com the fals knight out of the selleer,  
 To Gamelyn his brother he yede ful neer,  
 And sayde to Gamelyn, ‘Who made the so bold  
 For to stroye my stoor of myn houshold?’  
 ‘Brother,’ seyde Gamelyn, ‘wraththo the right  
 nought,

For it is many day i-gon siththen it was bought;  
 For, brother, thou hast i-had, by seynt Richer,  
 Of fiftene plowes of lond this sixtene yer,  
 And of alle the beestes thou hast forth bred,  
 That my fader me biquath on his deth bed; 360  
 Of al this sixtene yer I yeve the the prow

For the mete and the drynk that we have spende  
now.'

Thanne seyde the fals knyght, evel mot he the,  
'Herkne, brother Gamelyn, what I wol yeve the;  
For of my body, brother, geten heir have I noon,  
I wil make the myn heir, I swere by seint Johan.'  
'*Par ma foy!*' sayde Gamelyn, 'and if it so be,  
And thou thanke as thou seyst, God yelde it the!  
Nothing wiste Gamelyn of his brotheres gyle;  
Therefore he him bigyled in a litel while. 370

'Gamelyn,' seyde he, 'o thing I the telle;  
Tho thou threwe my porter in the draw-welle,  
I swor in that wraththe, and in that grete moot,  
That thou schuldest be bounde bothe hand and foot;  
Therefore I the biseeche, brother Gamelyn,  
Lat me nought be forsworn, as brother art thou  
myn;

Lat me bynde the now bothe hand and feet,  
For to holde myn avow, as I the biheet.'

'Brother,' sayde Gamelyn, 'al-so mot I the!  
Thou schalt not be forsworen for the love of me.'  
Tho made they Gamelyn to sitte, might he nat  
stonde, 381

Til they had him bounde bothe foot and honde.  
The fals knight his brother of Gamelyn was agast,  
And sent aftir feteres to feteren him fast.  
His brother made lesynges on him ther he stood,  
And told hem that comen in that Gamelyn was wood.  
Gamelyn stood to a post bounden in the halle,  
Tho that comen in ther lokod on him alle.  
Ever stood Gamelyn even upright;  
But mete ne drynk had ne non, neither day ne  
night. 390



Than seyde Gamelyn, ' Brother, by myn hals,  
 Now I have aspied thou art a party fals ;  
 Had I wist that tresoun that thou haddest y-founde,  
 I wolde have yeve the strokes or I had be bounde !'  
 Gamelyn stood bounden stille as eny stoon ;  
 Two dayes and two nightes mete had he noon.  
 Thanneseyde Gamelyn, that stood y-bounde stronge,  
 ' Adam spencer, me thinkth I faste to longe ;  
 Adam spencer, now I byseeche the, .  
 For the mochel love my fader loved the, 400  
 Yf thou may come to the keyes, lese me out of bond,  
 And I wil parte with the of my free lond.'  
 Thanne seyde Adam, that was the spencer,  
 ' I have served thy brother this sixtene yeer,  
 If I leete the goon out of this bour,  
 He wolde say afterward I were a traytour.'  
 ' Adam,' sayde Gamelyn, ' so brouk I myn hals !  
 Thou schalt fynde my brother atte laste fals ;  
 Therfor, brother Adam, louse me out of bond,  
 And I wil parte with the of my free lond.' 410  
 ' Up swich a forward,' seyde Adam, ' i-wys,  
 I wil do therto al that in me is.'  
 ' Adam,' seyde Gamelyn, ' al-so mot I the,  
 I wol holde the covenant, and thou wil me.'  
 Anon as Adames lord to bedde was i-goon,  
 Adam took the keyes, and leet Gamelyn out anoon ;  
 He unlokked Gamelyn bothe hand and feet,  
 In hope of avauncement that he him byheet.  
 Than seyde Gamelyn, ' Thanked be Goddes sonde !  
 Now I am loosed bothe foot and honde ; 420  
 Had I now eten and dronken aright,  
 The is noon in this hous schuld bynde me this  
 night.'

Adam took Gamelyn, as stille as ony stoon,  
And ladde him into spence rapely and anon,  
And sette him to soper right in a privé stede,  
And bad him do gladly, and Gamelyn so dede.  
Anon as Gamelyn hadde eten wel and fyn,  
And therto y-dronke wel of the rede wyn,  
'Adam,' seyde Gamelyn, 'what is now thy reed?  
Wher I go to my brother and girde of his heed?  
'Gamelyn,' seyde Adam, 'it schal not be so, 431  
I ean teeche the a reed that is worth the two.  
I wot wel for-sothe that this is no nay,  
We schul have a mangery right on Sonday;  
Abbotes and priours many heer schal be,  
And other men of holy ehirehe, as I telle the;  
Thow schalt stonde up by the post as thou were  
hond-faste,  
And I schal leve hem unloke, away thou may  
hem easte,  
Whan that they have eten and waissechen here  
hondes,  
Thou schalt biseke hem alle to brynge the out of  
bondes; 440  
And if they wille borwe the, that were good game,  
Then were thou out of prisoun, and I out of blame;  
And if everieh of hem say unto us nay,  
I schal do another thing, I swere by this day!  
Thou schalt have a good staf and I wil have another,  
And Cristes curs have that oon that faileth that  
other!  
'Ye, for Gode!' seyde Gamelyn, 'I say it for me,  
If I fayle on my syde, yvel mot I the!  
If we schul algate assoile hem of here synne,  
Warne me, brother Adam, whan I schal bygynne.'

'Gamelyn,' seyde Adam, 'by seynte Charité, 451  
 I wil warne the byforn whan that it schal be ;  
 Whan I twynk on the, loke for to goon,  
 And cast away the fetures, and com to me anon.'  
 'Adam,' seide Gamelyn, 'blessed be thy bones !  
 That is a good counseil yevyng for the nones ;  
 If they werne me thanne to brynge me out of  
 bendes,

I wol sette goode strokes right on here lendes.'  
 Tho the Sunday was i-come, and folk to the feste,  
 Faire they were welcomed bothe lest and meste ;  
 And ever as they atte halle dore comen in, 461  
 They caste their eye on yonge Gamelyn.  
 The fals knight his brother, ful of treehery,  
 Alle the gestes that ther wer atte mangery,  
 Of Gamelyn his brother he tolde hem with monthe  
 Al the harm and the sehame that he telle conthe.  
 Tho they were served of messes tuo or thre,  
 Than seyde Gamelyn, 'How serve ye me ?  
 'It is nought wel served, by God that al made !  
 That I sytte fastyng, and other men make glade.'  
 The fals knight his brother, ther that he stood, 471  
 Tolde alle his gestes that Gamelyn was wood ;  
 And Gamelyn stood stille, and answerde nought,  
 But Adames wordes he held in his thought.  
 Tho Gamelyn gan speke dolfully withalle  
 To the gret lordes that saten in the halle :  
 'Lordes,' he seyde, 'for Cristes passioum,  
 Helpeth brynge Gamelyn out of prisoun.'  
 Than seyde an abbot, sorwe on his cheeke !  
 'He schal have Cristes curs and seynte Maries eeke,  
 That the out of prisoun beggeth other borwe, 481  
 But ever worthe hem wel that doth the moche sorwe.'

After that abbot than spak another,  
'I wold thin heed were of, though thou were my  
brother!

Alle that the borwe, foule mot hem falle!  
Thus they seyde alle that were in the halle.  
Than seyde a priour, yvel mot he thryve!  
'It is moche skathe, boy, that thou art on lyve,'  
'Ow,' seyde Gamelyn, 'so brouk I my bon?  
Now I have aspyed that freendes have I non. 490  
Cursed mot he worthe bothe fleisch and blood,  
That ever do priour or abbot any good!  
Adam the spencer took up the cloth,  
And loked on Gamelyn, and say that he was wroth;  
Adam on the pantrye litel he thought,  
But tuo goode staves to halle dore he brought.  
Adam loked on Gamelyn, and he was war anoon,  
And caste away the feteres, and he bigan to goon:  
Tho he com to Adam, he took that oo staf,  
And bygan to worche, and goode strokes yaf. 500  
Gamelyn cam into the halle, and the spencer bothe,  
And loked hem aboute, as they had be wrothe;  
Gamelyn sprengeth holy-water with an oken spire,  
That some that stode upright fel in the fire.  
Ther was no lewede man that in the halle stood,  
That wolde do Gamelyn eny thing but good,  
But stood besyde, and leet hem bothe werche,  
For they hadde no rewthe of men of holy cherche;  
Abbot or priour, monk or chanoun,  
That Gamelyn overtok, anon they yeeden doun. 510  
Ther was non of hem alle that with his staf mette,  
That he made him overthrowe and quyt him his  
dette.

'Gamelyn,' seyde Adam, 'for seynte Charité,

Pay large lyverey, for the love of me,  
 And I wil kepe the dore, so ever here I masse!  
 Er they ben assoyled ther shal noon passe.'  
 'Dowt the nought,' seyde Gamelyn, 'whil we ben  
     in feere,

Kep thou wel the dore, and I wol werehe heere;  
 Stere the, good Adam, and lat ther noon flee,  
 And we schul telle largely how many ther be.' 520  
 'Gamelyn,' seyde Adam, 'do hem but good;  
 They ben men of holy ehirche, draw of hem no  
     blood,

Save wel the eroune, and do hem non harmes,  
 But brek bothe her legges and siththen here armes.'  
 Thus Gamelyn and Adam wroughte right fast,  
 And pleyden with the monkes, and made hem agast.  
 Thider they come rydyng jolily with swaynes,  
 But hom ayen they were i-lad in eartes and in  
     waynes.

Tho they hadden al y-don, than seyde a gray frere,  
 'Allas! sire abbot, what did we now heere?' 530  
 Tho that eomen hider, it was a eold reed,  
 Us hadde ben better at home with water and breed.'  
 Whil Gamelyn made ordres of monkes and frere,  
 Ever stood his brother, and made foul ehere;  
 Gamelyn up with his staff, that he wel knew,  
 And gert him in the nekke, that he overthrew;  
 A litel above the girdel the rigge-bon to-barst;  
 And sette him in the feteres ther he sat arst.  
 'Sitte ther, brother,' sayde Gamelyn,  
 'For to eolyn thy blood, as I dide myn.' 540  
 As swithe as they hadde i-wroken hem on here  
     foon,

They askeden watir and waisschen anoon,

What some for here love and some for awe,  
Alle the servantz served hem of the beste lawe.

The seherreve was thennes but a fyve myle,  
And al was y-told him in a litel while,  
How Gamelyn and Adam had doon a sory rees,  
Bounden and i-wounded men ayein the kinges pees;  
Tho bigan some strif for to wake, 549  
And the seherref aboute *caste* Gamelyn for to take.

Nowlythethandlestneth, so God yif you goode fyn!  
And ye schul heere good game of yonge Gamelyn.  
Four and twenty yonge men, that heelden hem ful  
bolde,

Come to the sehirref and seyde that they wolde  
Gamelyn and Adam fetten away.

The scherref yaf hem leve, soth as I you say;  
They hyeden faste, wold they nought bylynne,  
Til they come to the yate, ther Gamelyn was inne.  
They knocked on the gate, the porter was ny,  
And loked out at an hol, as man that was sly. 560  
The porter hadde byholde hem a litel while,  
Ho loved wel Gamelyn, and was adrad of gyle,  
And leet the wyket stonden ysteke ful style  
And asked hem withoute what was here wille.

For al the grete eompany thanne spak but oon,  
'Undo the gate, porter, and lat us in goon.'

Than seyde the porter, 'So brouke I my chyn,  
Ye schul sey your erand er ye eomen in.'

'Sey to Gamelyn and Adam, if here wille be,  
We wil speke with hem wordes two or thre.' 570

'Felawe,' seyde the porter, 'stond there stille,  
And I wil wende to Gamelyn to witen his wille.'

In went the porter to Gamelyn anoon,  
And seyde, 'Sir, I warne you her ben come your  
foon.



The scherreves meyne ben atte gate,  
 For to take you bothe, schul ye nat skape.'  
 'Porter,' seyde Gamelyn, 'so moot I wel tho!  
 I wil allowe the thy wordes whan I my tyme se;  
 Go agayn to the yate, and dwel with hem a while,  
 And thou schalt se right sone, porter, a gyle. 580  
 Adam,' sayde Gamelyn, 'looke the to goon;  
 We have foomen atte gate, and frendes never oon;  
 It ben the schirrefes men, that hider ben i-come,  
 They ben swore to-gidere that we schul be nome.'  
 'Gamelyn,' seyde Adam, 'hyc the right blyve,  
 And if I faile the this day, evel mot I thryve!  
 And we schul so welcome the scherreves men,  
 Thatsome of hem schul make here beddes in the den.'  
 Atte posterne gate Gamelyn out wente,  
 And a good cart staf in his hand he hente; 590  
 Adam hente sone another gret staf,  
 For to helpe Gamelyn, and goode strokes yaf.  
 Adam felde tweyne, and Gamelyn felde thre,  
 The other setten feet on erthe, and bygonne fle.  
 'What?' seyde Adam, 'so ever here I masse!  
 I have a draught of good wyn, drynk er ye passe.'  
 'Nay, by God!' sayde they, 'thy drynk is not good,  
 It wolde make mannes brayn to lien in his hood.'  
 Gamelyn stood stille, and loked him aboute,  
 And seih the scherreve come with a gret route. 600  
 'Adam,' seyde Gamelyn, 'what be now thy reedes?  
 Here comth the scherreve and wil have oure heedes.  
 Adam,' sayde Gamelyn, 'my reed is now this,  
 Abide we no lenger, lest we fare amys:  
 I rede that we to wode goon ar that we be founde,  
 Better is us ther loos than in town y-bounde.'  
 Adam took by the hond yonge Gamelyn;



And everich of hem tuo drank a draught of wyn,  
 And after took her coursers and wenten her way.  
 Tho fond the scherreve nest, but non ay. 610  
 The scherreve lighte adoun, and went into the halle,  
 And fond the lord y-fetered faste withalle.  
 The scherreve unfetered him sone, and that anoon,  
 And sent after a leche to hele his rigge-boon.

Lete we now this fals knight lyen in his care,  
 And talke we of Gamelyn, and loke how he fare.  
 Gamelyn into the woode stalkede stille,  
 And Adam the spenser liked ful ylle;  
 Adam swor to Gamelyn, by seynt Richer,  
 'Now I see it is mery to be a spencer, 620  
 That lever me were keyes for to bere,  
 Than walken in this wilde woode my clothes to tere.'  
 'Adam,' seyde Gamelyn, 'dismaye theright nought;  
 Many good mannes child in care is i-brought.'  
 And as they stode talkyng bothen in fecre,  
 Adam herd talkyng of men, and ney him thought  
 thei were.

Tho Gamelyn under the woode loked aright,  
 Sevene score of yonge men he saugh wel adight;  
 Alle satte atte mete *in* compas aboute.  
 'Adam,' seyde Gamelyn, 'now have we no doute,  
 After bale cometh boote, thurgh grace of God al-  
 might; 631  
 Me thynketh of mete and of drynk that I have a  
 sight.'

Adam lokede tho under woode bowgh,  
 And whan he seyh mete he was glad ynough;  
 For he hopede to God for to have his deel,  
 And he was sore alonged after a good meel.  
 As he seyde that worde, the mayster outlawe

Saugh Gamelyn and Adam under woode schawe.

'Yonge men,' seyde the maister, 'by the goode  
roode, 639

I am war of gestes, God send us non but goode ;  
Yonder ben tuo yonge men, wonder wel adight,  
And paraventure ther ben mo, who-so loket aright.  
Ariseth up, ye yonge men, and fetteth hem to me ;  
It is good that we witen what men they bee.'

Up ther sterten sevene fro the dyner,  
And metten with Gamelyn and Adam spenser.  
Whan they were neyh hem, than seyde that oon,  
'Yeldeth up, yonge men, your bowes and your floon.'  
Thanne seyde Gamelyn, than yong was of elde,  
'Moche sorwe mot he have that to you hem yelde !  
I curse non other, but right myselfe, 651

They ye fette to yow fyve, thanne ye be twelve.'  
Tho they herde by his word that might was in his arm,  
Ther was none of hem alle that wolde do him harm,  
But sayd unto Gamelyn, myldely and stille,

'Com afore our maister, and sey to him thy wille.'  
'Yonge men,' sayde Gamelyn, 'by your lewté,  
What man is your maister that ye with be !'

Alle they answerde withoute lesyng,  
'Oure maister is i-crowned of outlawes kyng.' 660  
'Adam,' seyde Gamelyn, 'go we in Cristes name ;  
He may neyther mete nor drynk werne us for  
schame.

If that he be heende, and come of gentil blood,  
He wol yeve us mete and drynk, and doon us som  
good.'

'By seynt Jame !' seyd Adam, 'what harm that I  
gete,

I wil auntre to the dore that I hadde mete.'

Gamelyn and Adam wente forth in feere,  
And they grette the maister that they founde there.  
Than seide the maister, kyng of outlawes,  
' Whatseeke ye, yonge men, under woode schawes?'  
Gamelyn answerde the kyng with his croune, 671  
' He moste needes walke in woode, that may not  
walke in towne.

Sire, we walke not heer noon harm for to do,  
But if we meete with a deer, to scheete therto,  
As men that ben hungry, and mow no mete fynde,  
And ben harde bystad under woode lynde.'  
Of Gamelynes wordes the maister hadde routhe,  
And seyde, ' Ye schal have ynough, have God my  
trouthe,'

He bad hem sitte ther adoun, for to take reste;  
And bad hem ete and drynke, and that of the beste.  
As they sete and eeten and dronke wel and fyn, 681  
Than seyde that oon to that other, 'This is  
Gamelyn.'

Tho was the maister outlawe into counseil nome,  
And told how it was Gamelyn that thider was  
i-come.

Anon as he herde how it was bifalle,  
He made him maister under him over hem alle.  
Within the thridde wyke him com tydyng,  
To the maister outlawe that tho was her kyng,  
That he schulde come hom, his pees was i-made;  
And of that goode tydyng he was tho ful glad. 690  
Tho seyde he to his yonge men, soth for to telle,  
' Me ben comen tydynges I may no lenger dwelle.'  
Tho was Gamelyn anon, withoute taryng,  
Made maister outlawe, and crowned her kyng.

Tho was Gamelyn crowned kyng of outlawes,

And walked a while under woode schawes.

The fals knight his brother was scherreve and sire,  
And leet his brother endite for hate and for ire.

Tho were his bonde-men sory and nothing glade,  
Whan Gamelyn her lord wolves-heed was cryed  
and made ; 700

And sente out of his men wher they might him fynde,  
For to seke Gamelyn under woode lynde,  
To telle him tydynges how the wynd was went,  
And al his good reved, and his men schent.

Whan they had him founde, on knees they hem sette,  
And adoun with here hood, and here lord grette :  
' Sire, wraththe you nought, for the goode roode,  
For we have brought you tydynges, but they be  
nat goode.

Now is thy brother scherreve, and hath the baillye,  
And he hath endited the, and wolves-heed doth the  
erie.' 710

' Allas !' seyde Gamelyn, ' that ever I was so slak  
That I ne hadde broke his nekke, tho his rigge brak !  
Goth, greteth hem wel, myn housbondes and wyf,  
I wol ben atte nexte schire, have God my lyf.'

Gamelyn came wel redy to the nexte schire,  
And ther was his brother bothe lord and sire.

Gamelyn com boldelych into the moot halle,  
And put adoun his hood among the lordes alle :

' God save you alle, lordynges, that now here be !  
But broke-bak scherreve, evel mot thou the ! 720

Why hast thou do me that schame and vilonye,  
For to late endite me, and wolves-heed me crye ?'

Tho thought the fals knight for to ben awreke,  
And leet take Gamelyn, most he nomore speke ;  
Might ther be nomore grace, but Gamelyn atte last

Was cast into prisoun and fetered ful fast.  
Gamelyn hath a brother that highte sir Ote,  
As good a knight and heende as mighte gon on foote.  
Anon ther yede a messenger to that goode knight, 729  
And tolde him altogidere how Gamelyn was dight.  
Anon as sire Ote herde how Gamelyn was adight,  
He was wonder sory, was he nothing light,  
And leet saddle a steede, and the way he nam,  
And to his tweyne bretheren anon right he cam.  
'Sire,' seyde sire Ote to the seherreve tho,  
'We ben but thre bretheren, schul we never be mo,  
And thou hast y-prisoned the best of us alle;  
Swich another brother yvel mot him bifalle!'  
'Sire Ote,' seide the fals knight, 'lat be thi eurs;  
By God, for thy wordes he schal fare the wurs; 740  
To the kynges prisoun anon he is y-nome,  
And ther he schal abyde til the justice come.'  
'Parde!' seyde sir Ote, 'better it schal be,  
I bidde him to mayinpris, that thou graunt him me,  
Fil the nexte sittying of delyveraunce,  
And thanne lat Gamelyn stande to his ehaunce.'  
'Brother, in swich a forthward I take him to the;  
And by thi fader soule, that the bygat and me,  
But-if he be redy whan the justice sitte,  
Thou schalt bere the juggement for al thi grete  
witte.' 750  
'I graunte wel,' seide sir Ote, 'that it so be.  
Let delyver him anon, and tak him to me.'  
Tho was Gamelyn delyvered to sire Ote his brother;  
And that night dwelledon that on with that other.  
On the morn seyde Gamelyn to sir Ote the heende,  
'Brother,' he seide, 'I moot for sothe from the  
wende,

To loke how my yonge men leden here lyf,  
 Whether they lyven in joie or elles in stryf.'  
 'Be God!' seyde sire Ote, 'that is a eold reed,  
 Now I see that al the eark schall fallen on myn heed;  
 For whan the justice sitte, and thou be nought  
                   i-founde, 761

I schal anon be take, and in thy stede i-bounde.'  
 'Brother,' sayde Gamelyn, 'dismaye the nought,  
 For by seint Jame in Gales, that many man hath  
                   sought,

If that God almighty hold my lyf and witt,  
 I wil be ther redy whan the justice sitt.'  
 Than seide sir Ote to Gamelyn, 'God schilde the  
                   fro schame;

Com whan thou seest tyme, and bring us out of  
                   blame.'

Litheth, and lestneth, and holdeth you stille,  
 And ye schul here how Gamelyn had al his wille.  
 Gamelyn wente ayein under woode rys, 771  
 And fond there pleying yonge men of prys.  
 Tho was yonge Gamelyn glad and blithe ynough,  
 Whan he fond his mery men under woode bough.  
 Gamelyn and his men talked in feere,  
 And they hadde good game here maister to heere;  
 They tolden him of adventures that they hadde  
                   founde,

And Gamelyn hem tolde ayein how he was fast  
                   i-bounde.

Whil Gamelyn was outlawed, had he no cors;  
 There was no man that for him ferde the wors, 780  
 But abbotes and priours, monk and chanoun;  
 On hem left he nothing whan he might hem nome.  
 Whil Gamelyn and his men made merthes ryve,



The fals knight his brother, yvel mot he thryve !  
For he was fast about bothe day and other,  
For to hyre the quest, to hangen his brother.  
Gamelyn stood on a day, and as he biheeld  
The woodes and the schawes in the wilde feeld,  
He thought on his brother how he him beheet  
That he wolde be redy whan the justiee seet ; 790  
He thoughte wel that he wolde, withoute delay,  
Come afore the justice to kepen his day,  
And seide to his yonge men, ‘ Dighteth you yare,  
For whan the justice sitt, we moote be thare,  
For I am under borwe til that I come,  
And my brother for me to prisoun schal be nome.’  
‘ By seint Jame !’ seyde his yonge men, ‘ and thou  
rede therto,

Ordeyne how it schal be, and it schal be do.’  
Whil Gamelyn was comyng ther the justice sat,  
The fals knight his brother, foryat he nat that, 800  
To huyre the men on his quest to hangen his brother ;  
Though he hadde nought that oon, he wolde have  
that other.

Tho eam Gamelyn fro under woode rys,  
And broughte with him his yonge men of prys.

‘ I se wel,’ seyde Gamelyn, ‘ the justiee is sette ;  
Go afor, Adam, and loke how it spette.’  
Adam went into the halle, and loked al aboute,  
He seyh there stonde lordes gret and stoute,  
And sir Ote his brother fetered wel fast :  
Tho went Adam out of halle, as he were agast. 810  
Adam said to Gamelyn and to his felaws alle,  
‘ Sir Ote stant i-fetered in the moot halle.’  
‘ Yongemen,’ seide Gamelyn, ‘ this ye heeren alle ;  
Sire Ote stant i-fetered in the moot halle.



If God yif us grace wel for to doo,  
 He schal it abegge that broughte *him* thertoo.'  
 Thanne sayde Adam, that lokkes hadde hore,  
 ' Cristes curs most he have that him bond so sore !  
 And thou wilt, Gamelyn, do after my red, 819  
 Ther is noon in the halle schal bere away his heed.'  
 ' Adam,' seyde Gamelyn, ' we wilne nought don so,  
 We wil slee the giltyf, and lat the other go.  
 I wil into the halle, and with the justice speke ;  
 On hem that ben gultyf I wil ben awreke.  
 Lat non skape at the dore; take, yonge men, yeme;  
 For I wil be justice this day domes to deme.  
 God spede me this day at my newe werk !  
 Adam, com on with me, for thou schalt be my elerk.'  
 His men answereden him and bade him doon his  
 best,

' And if thou to us have neede, thou schalt fynde  
 us prest; 830  
 We wiln stande with the, whil that we may dure,  
 And but we werke manly, pay us non hure.'  
 ' Yonge men,' seyde Gamelyn, ' so mot I wel the !  
 As trusty a maister ye schal fynde of me.'  
 Right there the justice sat in the halle,  
 In wente Gamelyn amonges hem alle.

Gamelyn leet unfetere his brother out of beende.  
 Thanne seyde sir Ote, his brother that was heende,  
 ' Thou haddest almost, Gamelyn, dwelled to longe,  
 For the quest is oute on me, that I schulde honge.'  
 ' Brother,' seyde Gamelyn, ' so God yif me goodrest !  
 This day they schuln ben hanged that ben on thy  
 quest ;

And the justice bothe that is jugges man,  
 And the scherreve bothe, thurgh him it bigan.'

Than seyde Gamelyn to the justise,  
 ‘ Now is thy power y-don, thou most nedes arise ;  
 Thow hast yeven domes that ben yvel dight,  
 I wil sitten in thy sete, and dressen hem aright.’  
 The justice sat stille, and roos nought anoon ;  
 And Gamelyn clevede his cheeke boon ; 850  
 Gamelyn took him in his arm, and no more spak,  
 But threw him over the barre, and his arm to-brak.  
 Durste non to Gamelyn seye but good,  
 For-fered of the company that withoute stood.  
 Gamelyn sette him down in the justices sete,  
 And sire Ote his brother by him, and Adam at his  
 feet.

Whan Gamelyn was i-set in the justices stede,  
 Herkneth of a bourde that Gamelyn dede.  
 He leet fetre the justice and his fals brother,  
 And dede hem come to the barre, that oon with  
 that other. 860

Tho Gamelyn hadde thus y-doon, had he no rest,  
 Til he had enquired who was on the quest  
 For to deme his brother, sir Ote, for to longe ;  
 Er he wiste which they were he thoughte ful longe.  
 But as sone as Gamelyn wiste wher they were,  
 He dede hem everichone fetere in feere,  
 And bringen hem to the barre, and sette hem in  
 rewe ;

‘ By my faith !’ seyde the justice, ‘ the scherreve  
 is a schrewe.’

Than seyde Gamelyn to the justise,  
 ‘ Thou hast y-yeve domes of the wors assise,’ 870  
 And the twelve sisours that weren of the queste,  
 They schul ben hanged this day, so have I reste.’  
 Thanne seide the scherreve to yonge Gamelyn,

'Lord I erie the mercy, brother art thou myn.'  
 'Therefore,' seyde Gamelyn, 'have thou Cristes curs,  
 Forand thou were maister, yit I schulde have wors.'  
 Butfor to make short tale, and nought to tarie longe,  
 He ordeyned him a queste of his men so stronge ;  
 The justice and the scherreve bothe honged hye,  
 To weyven with ropes and with the wynd drye ;  
 And the twelve sisours, sorwe have that rekke! 881  
 Alle they were hanged faste by the nekke.  
 Thus ended the fals knight with his treecherie,  
 That ever had i-lad his lyf in falsnes and folye ;  
 He was hanged by the nek, and nought by the purs,  
 That was the meede that he had for his fadres curs.  
 Sir Ote was eldest, and Gamelyn was ying,  
 They wenten with here freendes even to the kyng ;  
 They made pees with the kyng of the best assise.  
 The kyng loved wel sir Ote, and made him a justise.  
 And after the kyng made Gamelyn, both in est and  
 west, 891

Chef justice of al his fre forest ;  
 Alle his wighte yonge men the kyng foryaf here gilt,  
 And sitthen in good office the kyng hem hath i-pilt.  
 Thus wan Gamelyn his lond and his leede,  
 And wrak him of his enemys, and quyt hem here  
 meede,  
 And sire Ote his brother made him his heir,  
 And siththen wedded Gamelyn a wyf bothe good  
 and feyr ;  
 They lyveden togidere whil that Crist wolde,  
 And sithen was Gamelyn graven under molde. 900  
 And so schal we alle, may ther no man fle :  
 God bryng us to the joye that ever schal be !  
 Amen !

## THE MAN OF LAWES PROLOGE.



WRE Hoste sawh that the brighte sonne  
 The arke of hisartificial day hathi-ronne  
 The fourthe part, of half an hour and  
 more ;

And though he were nat depe *expert* in lore,  
 He wist it was the *eightetene* day  
 Of April, that is messanger to May ;  
 And sawe wel that the schade of every tree  
 Was in the lengthe the same quantité  
 That was the body erecte, that caused it ;  
 And therfore by the schadwe he took his wit, 10  
 That Phebus, which that schoon so fair and brighte,  
 Degrees was five and fourty clombe on highte ;  
 And for that day, as in that latitude,  
 Hit was ten of the elokke, he gan conelude ;  
 And sodeynly he plight his hors aboute.  
 ‘ Lordynges,’ quod he, ‘ I warne you al the route,  
 The fourthe party of this day is goon ;  
 Now, for the love of God and of seint Jon,  
 Leseth no tyme, as *ferforth* as ye may,  
 Lordynges, the tyme passeth night and day, 20  
 And stelith fro us, what pryvely slepyng,  
 And what thurgh necligence in oure wakyng,  
 As doth the streem, that torneth never agayn,  
 Descendyng fro the mounteyn into playn.  
 Wel ean Senek and many philosopher  
 Bywaylen time, more than gold in cofre.  
 For losse of catel may recovered be,  
 But losse of tyme schendeth us, quod he.

It wil nat come agayn, withoute drede,  
 Nomore than wol Malkyns maydenhede, 30  
 Whan sche hadde lost it in hir wantownesse.  
 Let us nat mowlen thus in ydelnesse.

‘ Sir Man of Lawe,’ quod he, ‘ so have ye blisse,  
 Telle us a tale anon, as forward ys.  
 Ye be submitted thurgh your fre assent  
 To stonden in this eas at my juggement.  
 Acquyteth yow, and holdeth youre byheste ;  
 Than have ye doon your devour atte leste.’

‘ Host,’ quod he, ‘ *De par Dieux I assente*,  
 To breke forward is nat myn entent. 40  
 Byheste is dette, and I wol holde fayn  
 Al my byhest, I can no better sayn.  
 For such lawe as a man yeveth another wight,  
 He schuld himselve usen hit by right.  
 Thus wol oure text : but natheles certeyn  
 I can right now non other tale seyn,  
 That Chaucer, they he can but lewedly  
 On metres and on rymyng certeynly,  
 Hath seyde hem in such Englisch as he can  
 Of olde tyme, as knoweth many man. 50  
 And yif he have nought sayd hem, leeve brother,  
 In o bok, he hath seyde hem in another.  
 For he hath told of lovers up and down,  
 Moo than Ovide made of mencion  
 In his Epistelles, that ben so olde.  
 What schuld I tellen hem, syn they be tolde ?  
 In youthe he made of Coys and Aleioun,  
 And siththe hath he spoke of everychon  
 These noble wyfes, and these lovers ecke,  
 Who-so wole his large volume seeke, 60  
 Cleped the seintes legendes of Cupide ;

Ther may he see the large woundes wyde  
Of Lucresse, and of Babiloun Tysbee;  
The sorwe of Dido for the fals Enee;  
The trece of Philles for hir Demephon;  
The pleynt of Dyane and of Ermyon,  
Of Adrian, and of Ysyphilee;  
The barreyn yle stondyng in the see;  
The dreynt Leandere for his fayre Erro;  
The teeres of Eleyn, and eek the woo 70  
Of Bryxseyde, and of Ledomia;  
The cruelté of the queen Medea,  
The litel children hangyng by the hals,  
For thilke Jason, that was of love so fals.  
O Ypermystre, Penollope, and Alceste,  
Youre wyfhood he comendeth with the beste.  
But certeynly no worde writeth he  
Of thilke wikked ensample of Canace,  
That loved hir owen brother synfully;  
On whiche corsed stories I seye fy! 80  
Or elles of Tyro Appoloneus,  
How that the cursed kyng Anteochous  
Byreft his doughter of hir maydenhede,  
That is so horrible a tale as man may rede,  
Whan he hir threw upon the pament.  
And therefore he of ful avysement  
Wolde never wryte in non of his sermons  
Of such unkynde abhominaciouns;  
Ne I wol non reherse, if that I may.  
But of my tale how schal I do this day? 90  
Me were loth to be lykned douteles  
To Muses, that men clepen Pyerides.  
(*Methamorphoseos* wot what I mene);  
But natheles I recche nat a bene,

They I come after him with hawe-bake,  
 I speke in prose, and let him rymes make.'  
 And with that word, he with a sobre cheere  
 Bygan his tale, as ye schal after heere.

## THE MAN OF LAWES TALE.



HATEFUL harm, condicion of povert,  
 With thurst, with cold, with hongre so  
 confoundyd,

To asken help it schameth in thin hert,  
 If thou non aske, with neede so art thou woundyd,  
 That verray neede unwrappeth al thy woundes hyd;  
 Maugré thyn heed thou most for indigence  
 Or stele, or begge, or borwe thy dispence.

Thow blamest Crist, and seyst ful bitterly,  
 He mysdeparteth riches temporal;  
 And thyn neyhebour thou wytest synfully;      10  
 And seyst thou hast to litel, and he hath al.  
 Parfay, seystow, som tyme he rekne schal,  
 Whan that his tayl schal brennen in the gleede,  
 For he nought helpeth the needful in his neede.

Herkneth what is the sentens of the wyse,  
 Bet is to dye than haven indigence;  
 Thy-selve neyghebour wol the despyse,  
 If thou be pore, farwel thy reverence.  
 Yet of the wyse man tak this sentence,      .  
 Alle the dayes of pore men be wikke;      20  
 Be war therfore or thou come to that prikke.

If thou be pore, thy brother hateth the,  
 And alle thy frendes fleeth fro the, allas!



O riche marchaundz, ful of welc be ye,  
O noble prudent folk as in this cas,  
Youre bagges beth nat fuld with ambes aas,  
But with sys synk, that renneth on your chaunce;  
At Crystemasse wel mery may ye daunce.

Ye seeke land and see for your wynnynge,  
As wyse folk as ye knowe alle thastates 30  
Of regnes, ye be fadres of tydynge,  
Of tales, bothe of pees and of debates.  
I were right now of tales desolat,  
Nere that a merchaunt, gon siththen many a yere,  
Me taught a tale, which ye schal after heere.

In Surrie dwellede whilom a companye  
Of chapmen riche, and therto sad and trewe,  
That wyde-where sent her spycerye,  
Clothes of gold, and satyn rich of hewe.  
Her chaffar was so thrifty and so newe, 40  
That every wight hadde deynté to chaffare  
With hem, and eek to selle hem of here ware.

Now fel it, that the maystres of that sort  
Han schapen hem to Rome for to wende,  
Were it for chapmanhode or for disport,  
Non other message nolde they thider sende,  
But came hemself to Rome, this is the ende;  
And in such place as thought hem avauntage  
For here entent, they tooke her herburgage.

Sojourned have these marchauntz in the toun 50  
A certeyn tyme, as fel to here plesaunce.  
But so bifell, that the excellent renoun  
Of themperoures doughter dame Custaunce  
Reported was, with every circumstaunce,  
Unto these Surrienz marchauntz, in such wyse  
Fro day to day, as I schal you devyse.

This was the comyn voys of every man :  
' Oure emperour of Rome, God him see !  
A doughter hath, that, sith the world bygan,  
To rekne as wel hir goodnes as her bewté, 60  
Nas never such another as was sche.  
I prey to God hir save and susteene,  
And wolde sche were of al Europe the queene.

' In hire is hye bewté, withoute pryde ;  
Yowthe, withoute grefhed or folye ;  
To alle here werkes vertu is hire gyde ;  
Humblesse hath slayne in hir tyrrannye ;  
Sche is myrour of alle curtesye,  
Hir herte is verrey chambre of holynesse,  
Hir hond mynistre of fredom and almesse.' 70

And al this voys is soth, as God is trewe.  
But now to purpos let us turne ayein :  
These marchantz have don fraught here schippes  
newe,

And whan they have this blisful mayde seyn,  
Home to Surrey be they went ayein,  
And doon here needes, as they have don yore,  
And lyven in wele, I can you saye no more.

Now fel it, that these marchauntz stooden in grace  
Of him that was the sowdan of Surrye.  
For whan they come fro eny straunge place, 80  
He wolde of his benigne curtesye  
Make hem good chere, and busily aspye  
Tydynges of sondry regnes, for to lere  
The wordes that they mighte seen and heere.

Among other thinges specially  
These marchauntz him told of dame Constaunce  
So gret noblesse, in earnest so ryally,  
That this sowdan hath caught so gret plesaunce

To have hir figure in his remembraunce,  
 That al his lust, and al his besy cure, 90  
 Was for to love hir, whiles his lyf may dure.

Paraventure in thilke large booke,  
 Which that is cleped the heven, i-write was  
 With sterres, whan that he his burthe took,  
 That he for love schulde have his deth, alas !  
 For in the sterres, elerere than is glas,  
 Is wryten, God woot, who-so cowthe it rede,  
 The deth of every man, withouten drede.

In sterres many a wynter therbyfore,  
 Was writé the deth of Ector and Achilles, 100  
 Of Pompe, Julius, er they were i-bore ;  
 The stryf of Thebes, and of Ereules,  
 Of Sampson, Turnus, and of Soerates  
 The deth ; but mennes wittes ben so dulle,  
 That no wight can wel rede it at the fulle.

This sowdan for his pryvé counseil sente,  
 And sehortly of this mater for to pace,  
 He hath to hem declared his entente,  
 And seyde him certeyn, but he might have grace  
 To have Constanee withinne a litel space, 110  
 He nas but deed, and charged hem in hyghe  
 To schapen for his lyf som remedye.

Dyverse men diveres thinges seyde,  
 The argumentes casten up and down ;  
 Many a subtyl resoun forth they leyden ;  
 They spekyn of magike, and of ambusioun ;  
 But finally, as in conclusioun,  
 They can nought seen in that non avauntage,  
 Ne in non other wey, save in mariage.

Then sawghe they therein such difficulté 120  
 By wey of resoun, to speke it al playn,

Bycause that ther was such dyversité  
Bitwen here bothe lawes, as they sayn,  
They trowe that 'no cristen prince wolde fayn  
Wedden his child under our lawe swete,  
That us was taught by Mahoun oure prophete.'

And he answerde: 'Rather than I lese  
Constance, I wol be cristen doubteles;  
I moot be heres, I may non other cheese;  
I pray you haldeth your arguments in pees, 130  
Saveth my lyf, and beth nat recheles.  
Goth, geteth hire that my lyf in cure,  
For in this wo I may no lenger dure.'

What needeth gretter dilatacioun?  
I say, by tretys and ambassatrye,  
And by the popes mediacioun,  
And al the chirche, and al the chyvalrye,  
That in destruccioun of mawmetrye,  
And in encesse of Cristes lawe decre,  
They ben acordid, as ye schal after heere, 140

How that the soudan and his baronage,  
And alle his lieges schuld i-crystned be,  
And he schal have Constance in mariage,  
And certeyn gold, I not what quantité,  
And therfore founden they suffisant scurté.  
This same acord was sworn on every syde;  
Now, fair Constance, almighty God the guyde!

Now wolde som men wayten, as I gesse,  
That I schulde tellen al the purvyauce,  
That themperour of his gret noblesse 150  
Hath schapen for his doughter dame Constaunce.  
Wel may men knowe that so gret ordynaunce  
May no man telle in so litel a clause,  
As was arrayed for so high a cause.

Bisschops ben schapen with hir for to wende,  
 Lordes, ladyes, and knightes of renoun,  
 And other folk ynowe, this is the ende.  
 And notefied is thurghout the toun,  
 That every wight with gret devocioun  
 Schulde preye Crist, that he this mariage 160  
 Receyve in gree, and spede this viage.

The day is come of hire departyng,  
 (I say the woful day *fatal* is come)  
 That ther may be no lenger tarryyng,  
 But forthe-ward they dresse hem alle and some.  
 Constance, that with sorwe is overcome,  
 Ful pale arist, and dresseth hir to wende.  
 For wel sche saugh ther nas non other ende.

Allas ! what wonder is it though sche wepte,  
 That schal be sent to so straunge nacioun, 170  
 Fro freendes, that so tenderly hir kepte,  
 And to be bounde undur subjeccioun  
 Of oon sche knew nat his condicioun ?  
 Housbondes ben al goode, and han be yore ;  
 That knowen wyfes, I dar saye no more.

‘ Fader,’ sche seide, ‘ thy wrecched child Cons-  
 taunce,  
 Thy yonge doughter fostred up so softe,  
 And ye, my mooder, my soverayn plesaunce  
 Over al thing, outaken Criste on lofte,  
 Constaunce your child hir recomaundeth ofte 180  
 Unto your grace ; for I schal into Surrye,  
 Ne schal I never see you more with ye.

‘ Allas ! unto the Barbre nacioun  
 I most anoon, sethens it is your wille :  
 But Crist, that starf for our redempcioun,  
 So yeve me grace his hestes to fulfille,  
 I, wrecched womman, no fors they I spille !

Wommen ben born to thraldam and penaunce,  
And to ben under mannes governaunce.'

I trowe at Troye whan Pirrus brak the wal, 190  
Or Yleon that brende Thebes the citee,  
Ne at Rome for the harme thurgh Hanibal,  
That Romayns han venquysshed tymes thre,  
Nas herd such tender wepyng for pité,  
As in the chambur was for hir partynge;  
But forth sche moot, whether sche weep or syngc.

O firste mevyng cruel firmament,  
With thi diurnal swough that crowdest ay,  
And hurlest al fro est to occident.  
That naturelly wold hold another way; 200  
Thyn crowdyng sette the heven in such array  
At the bygynnyng of this fiers viage,  
That cruel Martz hath slayn this marriage.

Infortunat ascendent tortuous,  
Of which the lordes helples falle, alas!  
Out of his angle into the derkest hous.  
O Mariz Attezere, as in this caas;  
O feeble moone, unhappy been thi paas,  
Thou knetttest the ther thou art nat receyved,  
Ther thou wer wel fro thennes artow weyved. 210

Inprudent emperour of Rome, alas!  
Was ther no philosopher in al thy toun?  
Is no tyme bet than other in such caas?  
Of viage is ther noon eleccioun.  
Namly to folk of heigh condieoun,  
Nought whan a roote is of a birthe i-knowe?  
Allas! we ben to lewed, and cek to slowe.

To schippe is brought this woful faire mayde  
Solempnely, with every circumstaunce.  
'Now Jhesu Crist so be with you,' she sayde. 220  
Ther nys nomor, but farwel, fair Custaunce;

She peyneth hire to make good conticnaunce.  
 And forth I lete hire sayle in this manere,  
 And torne I wol ayein to my matiere.

The moder of the sawdan, ful of vices,  
 Aspyed hath hir sones playn entente,  
 How he wol lete his olde sacrifices;  
 And right anoon sche for hir counseil sente;  
 And they ben come, to knowe what sche mente;  
 And whan assembled was this folk in fere, 230  
 Sche sette hir doun, and sayd as ye schal heere.

‘ Lordes,’ quod sche, ‘ ye knowen everichon,  
 How that my sone in poynt is for to lete  
 The holy lawes of our Alkaroun,  
 Yeven *by* Goddes messangere Makamete;  
 But oon avow to grete God I hete,  
 The lyf schulde rather out of my body sterte,  
 Or Makametes law go out of myn herte.

‘ What schal us tyden of this newe lawe  
 But thraldam to oure body and penaunce, 240  
 And afterward in helle to be drawe,  
 For we reneyede Mahound oure creaunce?  
 But, lordes, wol ye maken assuraunce,  
 As I schal say, assentyng to my lore?  
 And I schal make us sauf for evermore.’

They sworn and assenten every man  
 To lyfe with hir and dye, and by hir stonde;  
 And everich in the beste wise he can  
 To strengthen hir schal al his frendes fonde.  
 And sche hath emperise take on honde, 250  
 Which ye schul heere that I schal devyse,  
 And to hem alle sche spak in this wyse:

‘ We schul first feyne ous cristendom to take;  
 Cold watir schal nat greve us but a lite;



And I schal such a fest and revel make,  
That, as I trow, I schal the sowdan quyte.  
For though his wyf be cristned never so white,  
Sche schal have need to waissche away the rede,  
They sche a font of watir with hir lede.'

O sowdones, root of iniquité 260  
Virago thou Semyram the secounde ;  
O serpent under feminité,  
Lyk to the serpent deep in helle i-bounde ;  
O feyned womman, alle that may confounde  
Vertu and innocence, thurgh thy malice,  
Is bred in the, as nest of every vice.

O Satan, envyous syn thilke day  
That thou were chased fro oure heritage,  
Wel knewest thou to wommen the olde way.  
Thou madest Eve to bryng us in servage, 270  
Thou wolt fordoon this cristen mariage.  
Thyn instrument so (weylaway the while !)  
Makestow of wommen whan thou wolt bygyle.

This sowdones, whom I thus blame and wary  
Let pryvely hir counseil gon his way ;  
What schuld I in this tale lenger tary ?  
Sche rideth to the sowdan on a day,  
And seyde him, that sche wolde reney hir lay,  
And cristendam of prestes handes fonge,  
Repentyng hir sche hethen was so longe ; 280

Bysechyng him to doon hir that honour,  
That sche most have the cristen men to feste ;  
'To plesen hem I wil do my labour.'  
The sawdan seith, 'I wol do at your heste,'  
And knelyng, thanketh hir of that requeste ;  
So glad he was, he nyst nat what to seye.  
Sche kyst hir sone, and hom sche goth hir weye.

Arryved ben the cristen folke to londe  
 In Surry, with a gret solempne route,  
 And hastily this soudan sent his sonde, 290  
 First to his moder, and al the regne aboute,  
 And seyde, his wyf was comen out of doute,  
 And preyeth hir for to ride ayein the queene,  
 The honour of his regne to susteene.

Gret was the prees, and riche was tharray  
 Of Surriens and Romainys mette in feere.  
 The moodur of the sowdan riche and gay  
 Receyved hir with al so glad a cheere,  
 As eny moodir might hir doughter deere ;  
 And to the nexte citee ther bysyde 300  
 A softe paas solempnely thay ryde.

Nought trow I the triumphe of Julins,  
 Of which that Lukan maketh moche bost,  
 Was ryaller, ne more curious,  
 Than was thassemble of this blisful oost.  
 But this scorpioun, this wikked goost,  
 The sowdones, for al hir flaterynge,  
 Cast under this ful mortally to styngre.

The sawdan comth himself sone after this  
 So really, that wonder is to telle ; 310  
 And welcometh hir with al joy and blys.  
 And thus with mirth and joy I let hem dwelle.  
 The fruyt of this matier is that I telle.  
 Whan tyme com, men thought it for the best  
 That revel stynt, and men goon to her rest.

The tyme com, the olde sowdonesse  
 Ordeyned hath this fest of which I tolde ;  
 And to the feste cristen folk hem dresse  
*In generale, bothe yong and olde.*  
 Ther men may fest and realté byholde, 320

And deyntes mo than I can of devyse,  
But al to deere they bought it ar they ryse.

O sodeyn wo ! that ever art successour  
To worldly blis, spreynd is with bitternesse  
The ende of oure joye, of oure worldly labour ;  
Wo occupieth the fyn of oure gladnesse.  
Herken this counseil for thyn sikernessee ;  
Upon thyn glade dayes have in thi myndo  
The unwar woo that cometh ay bihyndo.

For schortly for to tellen at o word, 336  
The sawdan and the cristen everichone  
Ben al to-hewe and stiked atte bord,  
But it were dame Constaunce allone.  
This olde sowdones, this cursede crone,  
Hath with hir frendes doon this cursede dede,  
For sche herself wold al the contre lede.

Ne ther was Surrien noon that was converted,  
That of the counseil of the sawdon woot,  
That he nas al to-hewe or he asterted ;  
And Constaunce have they take anon foot-hoot, 340  
And in a schippe, stereles, God it woot,  
They have hir set, and bad hir lerne to sayle  
Out of Surry ayein-ward to Ytaile.

A certain tresour that sche thider ladde,  
And, soth to sayn, vitaile gret plente,  
They have hir yeven, and clothes eek sche hadde,  
And forth sche sayleth in the salte see.  
O my Constaunce, ful of benignité,  
O emperoures yonge doughter deere,  
He that is Lord of fortun be thi steere ! 350

Sche blesseth hir, and with ful pitous voys  
Unto the croys of Crist than seyde sche :  
' O cler, O welful auter, holy croys,

Red of the lambes blood, ful of pité,  
 That wissh the world fro old iniquité,  
 Me fro the fecnd and fro his clowes keepe,  
 That day that I schal drenchen in the deepe. .

‘ Victorious tre, proteccioun of trewe,  
 That oonly were worthy for to bere  
 That Kyng of Heven, with his woundes newe, 360  
 The white Lambe, that hurt was with a spere ;  
 Flemer of fecndes, out of him and here  
 On which thy lymes feithfully extenden,  
 Me kepe, and yif me might my lyf to menden.’

Yeres and dayes flette this creature  
 Thurghout the see of Grece, into the strayte  
 Of Marrok, as it was hir adventure.  
 O many a sory mele may sche bayte,  
 After hir deth ful ofte may sche wayte,  
 Or that the wilde wawe wol hir dryve 370  
 Unto the place ther as sche schal arryve.

Men mighten aske, why sche was nought slayn ?  
 Ek at the fest who might hir body save ?  
 And I answere that demaunde agayn,  
 Who savede Daniel in thorrible cave,  
 That every wight, sauf he, mayster or knave,  
 Was with the lioun frete, or he asterte ?  
 Ne wight but God, that he bar in his herte.

God lust to schewe his wondurful miracle  
 In hir, for we schulde seen his mighty werkes ;  
 Crist, which that is to every harm triacle, 381  
 By certeyne menes ofte, as knowen clerkes.  
 Doth thing for certeyn ende, that ful derk is  
 To mannes witt, that for our ignoraunce  
 Ne can nought knowe his prudent purvyance.

Now sith sche was nat at the fest i-slawe,  
 Who kepte hir fro drenching in the see ?

Who kepte Jonas in tho fische's mawe,  
Til he was spouted up at Ninive?  
Wel may men knowe, it was no wight but He 390  
That kepte the pepul Ebrayk fro her drenchyng,  
With drye feet thurghout the see passyng.

Who *bad* foure spiritz of tempest,  
That power han to noyen land and see,  
Bothe north and south, and also west and est,  
Anoyen neyther londe, see, ne tree?  
Sothly the comaunder of that was He  
That fro the tempest ay this womman kepte,  
As wel when sche awok as when sche slepte.

Wher might this womman mete and drinke have?  
Thre yer and more, how lasteth hir vitaille? 401  
Who fedde the Egipcien Marie in the eave,  
Or in desert? no wight but Crist *saunz faile*.  
Fyf thousand folk, it was gret mervaille  
With loves fyf and fissesches tuo to feede;  
God sent his foyssoun at her grete neede.

Sche dryveth forth into oure ocean  
Thurghout oure wilde see, til atte laste  
Under an holte, that nempnen *I ne* can,  
Fer in Northumberland, the wave hir easte, 410  
And in the sand the schip stykede so faste,  
That thennes wold it nought in al a tyde;  
The wille of Crist was that sche schold abyde.

The constabil of the castel down is fare  
To se this wrak, and al the schip he soughte,  
And fond this very womman ful of eare;  
He fand also the tresour that sche broughte:  
In hir langage merey sche bisoughte,  
The lif out of her body for to twynne,  
Hir to delyver of woo that sche was inne. 420

A maner Latyn corupt was hir speche,

But algates therby sche was understonde.  
 The constabil, whan him luste no lenger seche.  
 This woful womman broughte he to londe.  
 Sche kneleth doun, and thanketh Goddes sonde  
 But what sche was, sche wolde no man seye  
 For foul ne faire, though sche scholde deye.

Sche was, sche seyde, so mased in the see,  
 That sche forgot hir mynde, by hire trowthe.  
 The constable had of hir so gret pitee, 430  
 And eek his wyf, they wepeden for routhe;  
 Sche was so diligent withouten slouth  
 To serve and plese ever in that place,  
 That alle hir loven that loken on hir face.

The constable and dame Hermegyld his wyf,  
 To telle you playne, payenes bothe were;  
 But Hermegyld loved Constance as hir lyf;  
 And Constance hath so long herberwed there  
 In orisoun, with many a bitter teere,  
 Til Jhesu hath converted thurgh his grace 440  
 Dame Hermegyld, the constables wif of the place.

In al the lond no cristen men durste route;  
 Al cristen men ben fled from that contré  
 Thurgh payens, that conquered al aboute  
 The places of the north by land and see.  
 To Wales fled the cristianité  
 Of olde Britouns, dwellyng in this yle;  
 Ther was hir refut for the mene while.

But yit nere cristen Britouns so exiled,  
 That ther nere some in here pryvité 450  
 Honourede Christ, and hethen folk bygiled;  
 And neigh the castel such ther dwellide thre.  
 That oon of hem was blynd, and mighte nat se,  
 But-if it were with eyen of his mynde,

With which men seen after that they ben blynde.

Bright was the sonne, as in someres day,  
For which the constable and his wif also  
And Constaunce haddē take the righte way  
Toward the see, a forlong wey or two,  
To pleyen, and to romen to and fro ; 460  
And in that walk this blynde man they mette,  
Croked and olde, with eyen fast y-schette.

‘ In name of Crist,’ eryede this old Britoun,  
‘ Dame Hermegyld, yif me my sight ayeyn !’  
This lady wax affrayed of the soun,  
Lest that hir houseband, schortly to sayn,  
Wold hir for Jhesu Cristes love have slayn,  
Til Constaunce made hir bold, and bad hir werche  
The wil of Crist, as doughter of holy ehirche.

The constable wax abaissed of that sight, 470  
And sayde, ‘ What amounteth al this fare ?’  
Constaunce answered, ‘ Sir, it is Cristes might,  
That helpeth folk out of the feendes snare.’  
And so ferforth sehe gan hir lay declare,  
That sche the constable, er that it was eve  
Converted, and on Crist made him bileve.

This constable was not lord of the place  
Of which I speke, ther he Constanee fond,  
But kept it strongly many a wynter space  
Under Alla, kyng of Northumberlond, 480  
That was ful wys, and worthy of his hond,  
Ayein the Scottes, as men may wel heere.  
But tourne ayein I wil to my mateere.

Satan, that ever us wayteth to begile,  
Sawe of Constaunce *al hir perseeioun*,  
And cast anoon how he mighte quyt hir while ;  
And made a yong knight, that dwelt in the toun,



Love hir so hoot of foul affeccoun,  
That verrayly him thought he schulde spille,  
But he of hire oones had his wille.

490

He wowith hir, but it avayleth nought,  
Sehe wolde do no synne by no weye;  
And for despyt, he compassed in his thought  
To maken hir a schamful deth to deye.  
He wayteth whan the constable was aweye,  
And pryvyly upon a nyght he erepte  
In Hermyngyldes chambre whil sche slepte.

Wery, for-waked in here orisoun,  
Slepeth Constaunce, and Hermyngyld also.  
This knight, thurgh Satanas temptacioun,  
Al softely is to the bed y-go,  
And kutte the throte of Hermegild a-two,  
And leyde the bloody knyf by dame Constaunce,  
And went his way, ther God yeve him meschaunce.

500

Sone after comth this constable hom agayn,  
And eek Alla, that was kyng of that lond,  
And say his wyf dispitously i-slayn,  
For which ful oft he wept and wrong his hond;  
And in the bed the blody knyf he fond  
By Dame Custaunce: alas! what mighte she say?  
For verray woo hir witt was al away.

511

To king Alla was told al this meschaunce,  
And eek the tyme, and wher, and eek the wyse  
That in a schip was founden this Constaunce,  
As here bifore ye have herd me devyse.  
The kinges hert of pité gan agrise,  
Whan he saugh so benigne a creature  
Falle in disese and in mysaventure.

For as the lomb toward his deth is brought,  
So stant this innocent bifore the kyng.

520

This false knight, that hath this tresoun wrought,  
Bereth hir an hand that sche hath don this thing ;  
But nevertheles ther was gret mornynge  
Among the people, and seyn they can not gesse  
That sche hadde doon so gret a wikkednesse.]

For they han seyen hir so vertuous,  
And lovyng Hermegyd right as hir lyf ;  
Of this bar witnesse everich in that hous,  
Save he that slowgh Hermegyd with his knyf.  
This gentil kyng hath caught a gret motyf 539  
Of his witnesse, and thought he wold enquire  
Deppere in this cas, a trouthe to lere.

Allás ! Constaunee, thou ne has no champioun,  
Ne fighte canstow nat, so welaway !  
But He that for oure redempcioun  
Bonde Sathan, *that* yit lith ther he lay,  
So be thy stronge champioun this day ;  
For but Crist upon the miraele kythe, .  
Withouten gilt thou schalt be slayn as swithe. 539

Sche set hir doun on knees, and than sche sayde  
' Immortal God, that savedest Susanne  
Fro false blame ; and thou, merciful mayde,  
Mary I mene, doughter of seint Anne,  
Bifore whos child aungeles syng Osanne ;  
If I be gultles of this felonye,  
My socour be, for elles schal I dye !'

Have ye not seye som tyme a pale faee,  
Among a prees, of him that hath be lad  
Toward his deth, wher him geyneth no grace,  
And such a colour in his face hath had, 550  
Men mighte knowe his face was so bystad,  
Among alle the faces in that route ;  
So stant Constance, and loketh hire about.

O queenes lyvyng in prosperité,  
Duchesses, and ye ladies everychon,  
Haveth som reuthe on hir adversité;  
An emperoures doughter stond allon;  
Sche nath no wight to whom to make hir moon;  
O blod ryal, that stondest in this drede,  
Ferre be thy frendes at thy grete neede! 560

This Alla kyng hath such compassioun,  
As gentil hert is fulfild of pité,  
That from his eyen ran the water down.  
'Now hastily do fech a book,' quod he;  
'And if this knight wil swere how that sche  
This womman slowgh, yet wol we us avyse,  
Whom that we wille schal be oure justise.'

A Britoun book, i-write with Evaungiles,  
Was fette, and on this book he swor anoon  
Sche gultif was; and in the mene whiles 570  
An hond him smot upon the nekke boon,  
That doun he fel anon right as a stoon;  
And bothe his yen brast out of his face,  
In sight of every body in that place.

A vois was herd, in general audience,  
And seide, 'Thou hast disclaundred gulteles  
The doughter of holy chirche in hire presence;  
Thus hastow doon, and yit I holde my pees?'  
Of this mervaile agast was al the prees,  
As mased folk they stoden everychon 580  
For drede of wreche, save Custaunce allon.

Gret was the drede and eek the repentaunce  
Of hem that hadden wrong suspeccioun  
Upon the sely innocent Custaunce;  
And for this miracle, in conclusioun,  
And by Custaunces mediacioun,

The kyng, and many other in the place,  
Converted was, thanked be Cristes grace !

This false knight was slayn for his untrouthe  
By juggement of Alla hastyly ; 590  
And yit Custaunce hath of his deth gret routhe.  
And after this Jhesus of his mercy  
Made Alla wedde ful solempnely  
This holy mayde, that is bright and schene,  
And thus hath Crist i-maad Constance a queene.

But who was woful, if I schal not lye,  
Of this weddyng but Domegild and *no mo*,  
The kynges mooder, ful of tyrannye ?  
Hir thought hir cursed herte brast a-two ;  
Sche wolde nat hir sone had i-do so ; 600  
Hir thoughte despyte, that he schulde take  
So straunge a creature unto his make.

Me lust not of the cas ne of the stree  
Make so long a tale, as of the corn.  
What schuld I telle of the realté  
Of this mariage, or which cours goth biforn,  
Who bloweth in a trompe or in an horn ?  
The fruyt of every tale is for to seye ;  
They ete and drynk, and daunce and synge and  
pleye.

They gon to bed, as it was skile and right ; 610  
For though that wyfes ben ful holy thinges,  
They moste take in pacience a-night  
Such maner necessaries as ben plesynges  
To folk that han i-wedded hem with rynges,  
And halvendel her holynesse ley aside  
As for the tyme, it may non other betyde.

On hire he gat a knave child anoon,  
And to a bischope, and to *his* constable ecke,

He took his wyf to kepe, whan he is goon  
To Scotlond-ward, his foomen for to seeke. 620  
Now faire Custaunce, that is so humble and meeke,  
So long is goon with childe til that stille  
Sche held hir chambre, abidyng Goddes wille.

The tyme is come, a knave childe sche bere ;  
Mauricius atte funstone men him calle.  
This constabil doth come forth a messenger,  
And wrot to his kyng that cleped was Alle,  
How that this blisful tydyng is bifalle,  
And other thinges spedful for to seye.  
He taketh the lettre, and forth he goth his weye.

This messenger, to doon his avauntage, 631  
Unto the kynges moder he goth ful swithe,  
And salueth hire fair in his langage.  
'Madame,' quod he, 'ye may be glad and blithe,  
And thanke God an hundred thousand sithe ;  
My lady queen hath child, withouten doute  
To joye and blis of al the reame aboute.

'Lo heer the lettres scaled of this thing,  
That I mot bere with al the hast I may ;  
If ye wole ought unto youre sone the kyng, 640  
I am youre servaunt bothe night and day.'  
Doungyld answerde, 'As now this tyme, nay ;  
But here al nyght I wol thou take thy rest,  
To morwen I wil saye the what me lest.'

This messenger drank sadly ale and wyn,  
And stolen were his lettres pryvely  
Out of his box, whil he sleep as a swyn ;  
And countrefeet they were subtilly ;  
Another sche him wroot ful synfully,  
Unto the kyng direct of this matiere 650  
Fro his constable, as ye schul after heere.

The lettre spak, the queen delyvered was  
Of so orryble and feendly creature,  
That in the castel noon so hardy was  
That eny while dorste therin endure ;  
The mooder was an elf by aventure  
Bycome by charmes or by sorcerie,  
And every man hatith hir companyne.

Wo was this kyng whan he this letter hadde seyn,  
But to no wight he told his sorwes sore, 660  
But of his owen hand he wrot agayn :  
' Welcome the sond of Crist for everemore  
To me, that am now lerned in this lore ;  
Lord, welcome be thy lust and thy pleasaunce !  
My lust I putte al in thyn ordinaunce.

' Kepeth this child, al be it foul or fair,  
And eek my wyf, unto myn hom comyng ;  
Crist whan him lust may sende me an hair  
More agreable than this to my likyng.'  
This lettre he selet, pryvyly wepyng, 670  
Which to the messenger he took ful sone,  
And forth he goth, ther nys no more to done.

O messenger, fulfild of dronkenesse,  
Strong is thy breth, thy lymes faltren ay,  
And thou bywreyest alle sykernesce ;  
Thy mynde is lorn, thou janglest as a jay ;  
Thy face is torned al in a newe array ;  
Ther drunkenesse regneth in eny route,  
Ther is no counseil hid, withouten doute.

O Domegyld, I have non Englisch digne 680  
Unto thy malice and thy tyrannye ;  
And therfor to the feend I the resigne,  
Let him endyten of thi treccherie.  
Fy, mannyssch, fy !—o nay, by God, I lye ;

Fy! feendly spirit, for I dar wel telle,  
Though thou here walke, thy spirit is in helle.

This messenger comth fro the kyng agayn,  
And at the kinges modres court he lighte,  
And sehe was of this messenger ful fayn,  
And pleseth him in al that ever sche mighte. 590  
He drank, and wel his gurdel underpighte;  
He slepeth, and he fareth in his gyse  
Al nyght, unto the sonne gan arise.

Eft were his lettres stolen everichon,  
And eountrefeted lettres in this wise:  
'The kyng comaundeth his eonstable anon,  
Up peyne of hangyng of an heigh justise,  
That he ne schulde suffre in no maner wyse  
Constaunce in his regne for to abyde  
Thre dayes, and a quarter of a tyde; 700

But in the same schip as he hir fond,  
Hire and hir yonge sone, and al hire gere,  
He schulde putte, and erowde fro the londe,  
And charge hire that sche never eft eome there.'  
O my Constaunce, wel may thy goost have fere,  
And siepyng in thy drem ben in penaunce,  
Whan Domegyl<sup>d</sup> cast al this ordynaunce.

This messenger a-morwe, whan he awook,  
Unto the eastel held the nexte way;  
And to the eonstable he the lettre took; 710  
And whan that he the pitous lettre say,  
Ful ofte he seyde alas and welaway;  
'Lord Crist,' quod he, 'how may this world endure?  
So ful of synne is many a creature!

O mighty God, if that it be thy wille,  
Seth thou art rightful jugge, how may this be  
That thou wolt suffre innocentz to spille,



And wikked folk regne in prosperité?  
O good Constance, alas! so wo is me,  
That I moot be thy tormentour, or deye 720  
On schamful deth, ther is non other weye.'

Wepen bothe yong and olde in al that place,  
Whan that the kyng this corsed lettre sente;  
And Constance with a dedly pale face  
The *ferthe* day toward hir schip sche wente.  
But nevertheles sche taketh in good entente  
The wil of Christ, and knelyng on the grounde  
Sche sayde, 'Lord, ay welcome be thy sonde!

He that me kepte fro the false blame,  
Whil I was on the lond amonges you, 730  
He can me kepe from harm and eek fro schame  
In the *salte* see, although I se nat how;  
As strong as ever he was, he is right now,  
In him trust I, and in his mooder decre,  
That is to me my sayl and eek my steere.'

Hir litel child lay wepyng in hir arm,  
And knelyng pitously to him sche sayde:  
'Pees, litle sone, I wol do the noon harm.'  
With that hir kerechef of hir hed sche brayde,  
And over his litel yghen sche it layde, 740  
And in hir arm sche lullith it wel faste,  
And unto heven hir eyghen up sche caste.

'Moder,' quod sche, 'and mayde bright, Marie,  
Soth is, that thurgh wommannes eggement  
Mankynde was lorn and dampned ay to dye,  
For which thy child was on a cros to-rent;  
Thyn blisful eyghen sawh al this torment;  
Then nys ther noon comparisoun bitwene  
Thy wo, and any woo man may sustene.

'Thow saugh thy child i-slawe byfor thyn yen,

And yit now lyveth my litel child, parfay ; 751  
 Now, lady bright, to whom alle wofulle cryen,  
 'Thou glory of wommanhod, thou faire may,  
 Thou heven of refute, brighte sterre of day,  
 Rewe on my child, that of thyn gentillesse  
 Rewest on every synful in destresse.

'O litel child, alas ! what is thi gilt,  
 That never wroughtest synne as yet, pardé ?  
 Why wil thyn harde fader han the spilt ?  
 O mercy, deere constable,' seyde sche, 759  
 'And let my litel child here dwelle with the ;  
 And if thou darst not saven him for blame,  
 So kys him oones in his fadres name.'

'Therwith sche lokede bak-ward to the londe,  
 And seyde, 'Farwel, housbond rewtheles !'  
 And up sche rist, and walketh down the stronde  
 Toward the schip, hir folweth al the prees ;  
 And ever sche preyeth hir child to hold his pees,  
 And took hir leve, and with an holy entente 759  
 Sche blesseth hire, and to the schip sche wente.

Vytailled was the schip, it is no drede,  
 Abundauntly for hire a ful longe space ;  
 And other necessities that schulde nede  
 Sche had ynowgh, heryed be Cristez graee ;  
 For wynd and water almighty God purchace,  
 And bryng hir hom, I can no bettre saye,  
 But in the see sche dryveth forth hir waye.

Alla the kyng cometh hom soon after this  
 Unto the eastel, of the which I tolde,  
 And asketh wher his wyf and his child ys. 780  
 The constable gan aboute his herte colde,  
 And playnly al the maner he him tolde  
 As ye han herd, I can telle it no better,

And schewede the kynges seal and his letter ;

And seyde, ‘ Lord, as ye comaundede me  
Up peyne of deth, so have I do certayn.’

This messenger tormented was, til he  
Moste biknowe and telle it plat and playn,  
Fro nyght to night in what place he hadde layn ;  
And thus by witt and subtil enquiryng, 790  
Ymaged was by wham this gan to sprynge.

The hand was knowen that the lettre wroot,  
And al the venym of this cursed dede ;  
But in what wyse, certeynly I noot.  
Theffect is this, that Alla, out of drede,  
His moder slough, as men may pleynly reede,  
For that sche traytour was to hir ligeaunce.  
Thus endeth olde Domegild with meschaunce.

The sorwe that this Alla night and day  
Makth for his wyf and for his child also, 800  
Ther is no tonge that it telle may.  
But now I wol unto Custaunce go,  
That fleeteth in the see in peyne and wo  
Fyve yeer and more, as liketh Cristes sonde,  
Er that hir schip approched unto londe.

Under an hethen castel atte laste,  
Of which the name in my text nought I fynde,  
Constaunce and eek hir child the see upcaste.  
Almighty God, that saveth al mankynde, 809  
Have on Constaunce and on hir child som mynde !  
That fallen is in hethen hond eftsone,  
In poynt to spille, as I schal telle you soone.

Doun fro the castel comth many a wight,  
To gawren on this schip, and on Constaunce ;  
But schortly fro the castel on a night,  
The lordes styward, God yive him meschaunce !

A theef that hadde reneyed oure creaunce,  
Com into schip alone, and seyde he scholde  
Hir lemman be, whethir sche wold or nolde.

Wo was this wrecched womman tho bigoon, 820  
Hire childe crieth and sche pytously;  
But blisful Mary hilp hir right anoon,  
For with hir *strogelynge* wel and mightily  
The theef fel over-boord al sodeinly,  
And in the see he drenched for vengeance,  
And thus hath Crist unwemmed kept Constaunce.

O foule luste, O luxurie, lo thin ende!  
Nought oonly that thou feyntest mannes mynde,  
But verrayly thou wolt his body schende.  
The ende of thyn werk, or of thy lustes blynde,  
Is compleynyng; how many may men fynde, 831  
That nought for werk som tyme, but for thentent  
To doon his synne, ben eyther slayn or schent!

How may this weyke womman han the strengthe  
Hir to defende ayein the renegat?  
O Goliath, unmesurable of lengthe,  
How mighte David make the so mate?  
So yong, and of armure so desolate,  
How dorst he loke upon thyn dredful face?  
Wel may men seyn, it nas but Goddes grace. 840

Who yaf Judith corage or hardynesse  
To slen him Olefernes in his tent,  
And to delyveren out *of* wrecchednes  
The peple of God? I say in this entente,  
That right as God spiryte *and* vigor sente  
To hem, and saved hem out of meschaunce,  
So sent he might and vigor to Constaunce.

Forth goth hir schip thurghout the narwe mouth  
Of Jubalter and Septé, dryvyng *away*,

Som tyme west, *and* som tyme north and south, 850  
And som tyme est, ful many a very *day* ;  
Til Cristes mooder, blessed be sche ay !  
Hath schapen thurgh hir endeles goodnesse  
To make an ende of hir hevynesse.

Now let us stynt of Constaunce but a throwe,  
And speke we of the Romain emperour,  
That out of Surrye hath by lettres knowe  
The slaughter of cristen folk, and deshonour  
Doon to his doughter by a fals traytour,  
I mene the cursed and wikked sowdenesse, 860  
That at the fest leet slee bothe more and lesse.

For which this emperour hath sent anoon  
His senatours, with real ordynaunce,  
And other lordes, Got wot, many oon,  
On Surriens to take high vengeance.  
They brenne, sleen, and bringen hem to meschaunce  
Ful many a day ; but schortly this is thende,  
Hom-ward to Rome they schapen hem to wende.

This sanatour repayreth with victorie  
To Rome-ward, saylyng ful really, 870  
And mette the schip dryvyng, as seith the story,  
In which Constance sitteth ful pitously.  
Nothing ne knew he what sche was ne why  
Sche was in such aray, sche nolde seye  
Of hire astaat, although sche scholde deye.

He bryngeth hir to Rome, and to his wyf  
He yaf hir, and hir yonge sone also ;  
And with the senatour laddre sche hir lyf.  
Thus can our lady bryngen out of woo  
Woful Constaunce and many another moo ; 880  
And longe tyme dwellede sche in that place,  
In holy werkes, as ever was hir grace.

The senatoures wif hir aunte was,  
But for al that sche hir never more :  
I wol no lenger taryen in this eas,  
But to kyng Alla, which I spak of yore,  
That for his wyf wepeth and siketh sore,  
I wol retorne, and lete I wol Constaunce  
Under the senatoures governaunce.

Kyng Alla, which that had his mooder slayn, 890  
Upon a day fel in such repentaunce,  
That, if I schortly telle schal and playn,  
To Rome he cometh to receyve his penaunce,  
And putte him in the popes ordynaunce  
In heigh and lowe, and Jhesu Crist bysoughte,  
Foryef his wikked werkes that he wroughte,

The fame anon thurgh Rome toun is born,  
How Alla kyng schal come in pilgrymage,  
By herberjourz that wenten him biforn,  
For which the senatour, as was usage, 900  
Rood him ayein, and many of his lynage,  
As wel to schewen his magnificence,  
As to doon eny kyng a reverence.

Gret cheere doth this noble senatour  
To kyng Alla, and he to him also ;  
Everich of hem doth other gret honour,  
And so bifel, that in a day or two  
This senatour is to kyng Alla go  
To fest, and schortly if I schal not lye,  
Constaunces sone went in his companye. 910

Som men wolde seyn at request of Custaunce  
This senatour hath lad this child to feste ;  
I may not telle every circumstaunce,  
Be as be may, ther was he atte leste ;  
But soth it is, right at his modres heste,

Byforu hem alle, duryng the metes space,  
The child stood loking in the kynges face.

This Alla kyng hath of this child gret wonder,  
And to the senatour he seyde anon,  
'Whos is that faire child that stondeth yonder?'  
'I not,' quod he, 'by God and by seynt Jon! 921  
A moder he hath, but fader hath he non,  
That I of woot:' and shortly in a stounde  
He told Alla how that this child was founde.

'But God woot,' quod this senatour also,  
'So vertuous a lyver in my lyf  
Ne saugh I never, such as sche, nomo  
Of worldly womman, mayden, or of wyf;  
I dar wel say sche hadde lever a knyf  
Thurghout hir brest, than ben a womman wikke,  
Ther is no man can bryng hir to that prikke.' 931.

Now was this child as lik unto Custaunce  
As possible is a creature to be.  
This Alla hath the face in remembraunce  
Of dame Custaunce, and thereon mused he,  
If that the chilles mooder were ought sche  
That is his wyf; pryvely he highte,  
And sped him fro the table that ho mighte.

'Parfay!' thought he, 'fantom is in myn heed;  
I ought to deme, of rightful juggement, 940  
That in the salte see my wyf is deed.'  
And after-ward he made this argument:  
'What woot I, wher Crist hath hider sent  
My wyf by see, as wel as he hir sente  
To my contré, fro thennes that sche wente?'

And after noon home with the senatour  
Goth Alla, for to see this wonder chaunce.  
This senatour doth Alla gret honour,



And hastely he sent after Custaunce.

But trusteth wel, hir luste nat to daunce, 950  
Whan that sche wiste wherfor was that sonde,  
Unnethes on hir feet sche mighte stonde.

Whan Alla saugh his wyf, fayre he hir grette,  
And wepte, that it was rewthe to se;  
For at the firste look he on hir sette  
He knew wel verrely that it was sche.  
And for sorwe, as domb sche stant as a tre;  
So was hire herte schett in hire distresse,  
Whan sche remembred his unkyndenesse.

Twies sche swowned in his owen sighte; 960  
He wept and him excuseth pitously;  
'Now God,' quod he, 'and alle his halwes brighte  
So wisly on my soule as have mercy,  
That of youre harm as gulteles am I  
As is Maurice my sone, so lyk youre face,  
Elles the feend me fecche out of this place.'

Long was the sobbyng and the bitter peyne,  
Or that here woful herte mighte cesse;  
Gret was the pité for to here hem pleyne,  
Thurgh whiche playntez gan here wo eneresse. 970  
I pray you alle my labour to relese,  
I may not telle al here woo unto morwe,  
I am so very for to speke of the sorwe.

But fynally, whan that the soth is wist,  
That Alla gilteles was of hir woo,  
I trowe an hundred tymes they ben kist,  
And such a blys is ther bitwix hem tuo,  
That, save the joye that lasteth everemo,  
Ther is noon lyk, that eny creature  
Hath seyn or schal, whil that the world may dure.

Tho prayde sche hir housbond meekely 981

In the relees of hir *long* pytous pyne,  
That he wolde preye hir fader specially,  
That of his majesté he wold enelyne  
To vouchesauf som tyme with him to dyne.  
Sche preyeth him eek, he schulde by no weye  
Unto hir fader no word of hir seye.

Som men wolde seye, that hir child Maurice  
Doth his message unto the emperour ;  
But, as I gesse, Alla was nat so nyce, 990  
To him that is so soverayn of honour,  
As he that is of Cristes folk the flour,  
Sent eny child ; but it is best to deeme  
He went himsilf, and so it may wel seme.

This emperour hath graunted gentilly  
To come to dyner, as he him bysoughte ;  
As wel rede I, he lokede besily  
Upon the child, and on his doughter thoughte.  
Alla goth to his in, and as him oughte  
Arrayed for this fest in every wyse, 1000  
As ferforth as his connyng may suffise.

The morwe cam, and Alla gan him dresse,  
And eek his wyf, the emperour for to meete ;  
And forth they ryde in joye and in gladnesse,  
And whan sche saugh hir fader in the streete,  
Sche light adoun and falleth him to feete.  
'Fader,' quod sche, 'your yonge child Constance  
Is now ful clene out of your remembraunce.

'I am your doughter Custaunce,' quod sche,  
'That whilom ye have sent unto Surrye ; 1010  
It am I, fader, that in the salte see  
Was put alloon, and dampned for to dye.  
Now, goode fader, mercy I you crye,  
Send me no more unto noon hethenesse,

But thanke my lord her of his kyndenesse.'

Who can the pytous joye telle al  
Bitwix hem thre, sith they be thus i-mette?  
But of my tale make an ende I schal;  
The day goth fast, I wol no lenger lette.  
This glade folk to dynere they ben sette; 1020  
In joye and blys at mete I let hem dwelle,  
A thousand fold wel more than I can telle.

This child Maurice was siththen emperour  
I-maad by the pope, and lyved cristenly,  
To Cristes chirche dede he gret honour.  
But I let al his story passen by,  
Of Custaunce is my tale specially;  
In olde Romain gestes men may fynde  
Maurices lyf, I bere it nought in mynde.

This kyng Alla whan he his tyme say. 1030  
With his Constaunce, his holy wyf so swete,  
To Engelond they come the righte way.  
Wher as they lyve in joye and in quyete.  
But litel whil it last, I you bihecte,  
Joy of this world for tyme wol not abyde,  
Fro day to night it chaungeth as the tyde.

Who lyved ever in such delyt a day,  
That him ne meved eyther his conscience,  
Or ire, or talent, or som maner affray,  
Envy, or pride, or passioun, or offence? 1040  
I ne say but for this ende this sentence,  
That litel whil in joye or in plesaunce  
Lasteth the blis of Alla with Custaunce.

For deth, that takth of heigh and low his rente,  
Whan passed was a yeere, *even* as I gesse,  
Out of this worlde kyng Alla he hente,  
For whom Custauns hath ful gret hevynesse.


Now let us praye that God his soue blesse !  
And dame Custaunce, fynally to say,  
Toward the toun of Rome goth hir way. 1050

To Rome is come this nobil creature,  
And fynt hir freendes ther bothe hool and sound ;  
Now is sche skaped al hir aventure.  
And whanne sche her fader had i-founde,  
Doun on hir knees falleth sche to grounde,  
Wepying for tendirnes in herte blithe  
Sche heriede God an hundred thousand sithe.

In vertu and in holy almes-dede  
They lyven alle, and never asondre wende ;  
Til deth departe hem, this lyf they lede. 1060  
And far now wel, my tale is at an ende.  
Now Jhesu Crist, that of his might may sende  
Joy after wo, governe us in his grace,  
And keep ous alle that ben in this place.



## THE PROLOGE OF THE WYF OF BATHE.

 XPERIENS, though noon auctorité  
 Were in this world, it were ynough  
 for me  
 To speke of wo that is in mariage ;  
 For, lordyngs, syns I twelf yer was of age,  
 I thank it God that is eterne on lyve,  
 Housbondes atte chirch dore I have had fyve,  
 For I so ofte might have weddid be,  
 And alle were worthy men in here degré.  
 But me was taught, nought longe tyme goon is,  
 That synnes Crist wente never but onys 10  
 To weddyng, in the Cane of Galile,  
 That by the same ensampul taught he me  
 That I ne weddid schulde be but ones.  
 Lo, herken such a scharp word for the nones !  
 Beside a welle Jhesus, God and man,  
 Spak in reproef of the Samaritan :  
 ‘ Thou hast y-had fyve housbondes,’ quod he ;  
 ‘ And that ilk man, which that now hath the,  
 Is nought thin housbond ;’ thus he sayde certayn ;  
 What that he mente therby, I can not sayn. 20  
 But that I axe, why the fyfte man  
 Was nought housbond to the Samaritan ?  
 How many mighte sche have in mariage ?  
 Yit herd I never tellen in myn age  
 Uppon this noumbre diffinicioun ;

Men may divine and glosen up and doun.  
 But wel I wot, withouten eny lye,  
 God bad us for to wax and multiplie ;  
 That gentil tixt can I wel understonde.  
 Ek wel I wot, he sayde, myn housebonde 30  
 Schulde lete fader and moder, and folwe me ;  
 But of no noumber mencioune made he,  
 Of bygamyne or of octogomyne ;  
 Why schulde men speken of that vilonyne ?  
 Lo hier the wise kyng daun Salamon,  
 I trow he hadde wifes mo than oon,  
 As wolde God it were leful unto me  
 To be refreissed half so oft as he !  
 Which yift of God had he for alle his wyvys !  
 No man hath such, that in the world on lyve is.  
 God wot, this nobil king, as to my wit, 41  
 The firste night hadde many a mery fit  
 With ech of hem, so wel was him on lyve.  
 I-blessid be God that I have weddid fyve !  
 Welcome the sixte whan that ever he schal !  
 For-sothe I nyl not kepe me chast in al ;  
 Whan myn housbond is fro the world i-gon,  
 Som cristne man schal wedde me anon,  
 For than thapostil saith that I am fre  
 To wedde, a goddis half, wher so it be. 50  
 He saith, that to be weddid is no synne ;  
 Bet is to be weddid than to brynne.  
 What recchith me what folk sayn viloyne  
 Of schrewid Lameth, or of *his* bigamyne ?  
 I wot wel Abram was an holy man,  
 And Jacob eek, as ferforth as I can,  
 And ech of hem hadde wyves mo than tuo,  
 And many another holy man also.

Whan sawe ye in eny maner age  
That highe God defendide mariage 60  
By expres word? I pray you tellith me;  
Or wher eommaunded he virginité?  
I wot as wel as ye, it is no drede,  
Thapostil, when he spekth of maydenhede,  
He sayde, that preecept therof had he noon;  
Men may counseil a womman to be oon,  
But counselyng nys no eomaundement;  
He put it in our owne juggement.  
For hadde God eomaundid maydenhede,  
Than had he dampnyd weddyng with the dede; 70  
And eertes, if ther were no seed i-sowe,  
Virginité whereon schuld it growe?  
Poul ne dorste not eomaunde atte leste  
A thing, of which his maister yaf non heste.  
The dart is set upon virginité,  
Caeh who-so may, who rennith best let se.  
But this word is not taken of every wight,  
But ther as God list yive it of his might.  
I wot wel that thapostil was a mayde,  
But natheles, though that he wrot or sayde, 80  
He wolde that every wight were such as he,  
Al nys but counseil unto yirginité.  
And for to ben a wyf he gaf me leve,  
Of indulgence, so nys it to repreve  
To wedde me, if that my make deye,  
Withoute exeepeioun of bigamye;  
Al were it good no womman for to touche,  
(He mente in his bed or in his coueche)  
For peril is bothe fuyr and tow to assemble;  
Ye knowe what this ensample wolde resemble. 90  
This is al and som, he holdith virginité



More parfit than weddyng in frelté;  
 (Frelté clepe I, but-if that he and scho  
 Wolde leden al her lif in chastité).  
 I graunt it wel, I have noon envye,  
 Though maidenhede preferre bygamyë;  
 It liketh hem to be clene in body and gost;  
 Of myn estate I nyl make no bost.  
 For wel ye wot, a lord in his household  
 He nath not every vessel ful of gold;  
 Som ben of tre, and don her lord servise.  
 God clepeth folk to him in sondry wise,  
 And every hath of God a propre yifte,  
 Som this, som that, as him likith to schifte.  
 Virginité is gret perfeccioun,  
 And continens eek with gret devocioun;  
 But Christ, that of perfeccioun is welle,  
 Bad nought every wight schulde go and selle  
 Al that he had, and yive it to the pore,  
 And in such wise folwe him and his fore.  
 He spak to hem that wolde lyve parfytly,  
 But, lordyngs, by your leve, that am not I;  
 I wol bystowe the flour of myn age  
 In the actes and in the fruytes of mariage.  
 Tel me also, to what conclusioun  
 Were membres maad of generacioun,  
 And *of so parfit wise, and why* y-wrought?  
 Trustith right wel, they were nought maad for  
 nought.  
 Glose who-so wol, and say bothe up and doun,  
 That thay were made for purgacioun  
*Of* uryn, and oure bothe thinges smale  
 Were eek to knowe a femel fro a male;  
 And for non other cause:—say ye no?

The experiens wot wel it is not so.  
 So that these clerkes ben not with me wrothe,  
 I say this, that thay makid ben for bothe,  
 That is to saye, for office and for ease  
 Of engendrure, ther we God nought displease.  
 Why schulde men elles in her bokes sette,  
 That man schal yelde to his wif his dette? 130  
 Now wherwith schuld he make his payement,  
 If he ne used his sely instrument?  
 Than were thay maad upon a creature  
 To purge uryñ, and eek for engendrure.  
 But I say not that every wight is holde,  
 That hath such harneys as I to you tolde,  
 To gon and usen hem in engendrure;  
 Than schulde men take of chastité no cure.  
 Crist was a mayde, and schapen as a man,  
 And many a seynt, sin that the world bygan, 140  
 Yet lyvede thay ever in parfyt chastité.  
 I nyl envye no virginité.  
 Let hem be bred of pured whete seed,  
 And let us wyves eten barly breed.  
 And yet with barly bred, men telle can,  
 Oure Lord Jhesu refreisschide many a man.  
 In such astaat as God hath cleped ous  
 I wil persever, I am not precious;  
 In wyfhode I wil use myñ instrument  
 Als frely as my maker hath me it sent. 150  
 If I be daungerous, God yive me sorwe,  
 Myn housbond schal han it at eve and at morwe,  
 Whan that him list com forth and pay his dette.  
 An housbond wol I have, I wol not lette,  
 Which schal be bothe my dettour and my thral,  
 And have his tribulacioun withal

Upon his fleissch, whil that I am his wyf.  
 I have the power duryng al my lif  
 Upon his propre body, and not he;  
 Right thus thapostil told it unto me. 160  
 And bad oure housbondes for to love us wel;  
 Al this sentence me likith every del.'

Up starte the pardoner, and that anoon;  
 'Now, dame,' quod he, 'by God and by seint Jon,  
 Ye ben a noble prechour in this caas.  
 I was aboute to wedde a wif, allaas!  
 What? schal I buy it on my fleisch so deere?  
 Yit had I lever wedde no wyf to yere!'  
 'Abyd,' quod sche, 'my tale is not bygonne.  
 Nay, thou schalt drinke of another tonne 170  
 Er that I go, schal savere wors than ale.  
 And whan that I have told the forth my tale  
 Of tribulacioun in mariage,  
 Of which I am expert in al myn age,  
 This is to saye, myself hath ben the whippe,  
 Than might thou chese whethir thou wilt sippe  
 Of thilke tonne, that I schal abroche.  
 Be war of it, er thou to neigh approche.  
 For I schal telle ensamples mo than ten:  
 Who-so that nyl be war by other men 180  
 By him schal other men corrected be.  
 The same wordes writeth Ptholomé,  
 Rede in his Almagest, and tak it there.'  
 'Dame, I wolde praye you, if that youre wille were,'  
 Sayde this pardoner, 'as ye bigan,  
 Tel forth youre tale, and sparith for no man,  
 Teche us yonge men of youre practike.'  
 'Gladly,' quod sche, 'syns it may yow like.  
 But that I pray to al this companye,

If that I speke after my fantasie, 190  
As taketh nought agreef of that I saye,  
For myn entente is nought but to playe.

‘ Now, sires, now wol I telle forth my tale.  
As ever mote I drinke wyn or ale,  
I schal saye soth of housbondes that I hadde,  
As thre of hem were goode, and tuo were badde.  
Tuo of hem were goode, riche, and olde ;  
Unnethes mighte thay the statute holde,  
In which that thay were bounden unto me ;  
Ye wot wel what I mene of this pardé ! 200  
As help me God, I laugh whan that I thinke,  
How pitously on night I made hem swynke,  
But, by my fay ! I told of it no stoor ;  
Thay hadde me yive her lond and her tresor,  
Me nedith not no lenger doon diligence  
To wynne her love or doon hem reverence.  
They lovede me so wel, by God above !  
That I tolde no deynte of her love.  
A wys womman wol bysi hir ever in oon  
To gete hir love, there sche hath noon. 210  
But synnes I had hem holly in myn hond,  
And synnes thay hadde me yeven al her lond,  
What schuld I take keep hem for to please,  
But it were for my profyt, or myn ease ?  
I sette hem so on werke, by my fay !  
That many a night they songen weylaway.  
The bacoun was nought fet for hem, I trowe,  
That som men feeche in Essex at Donnowe.  
I governed hem so wel after my lawe,  
That ech of hem ful blisful was and fawe 220  
To bringe me gaye thinges fro the faire.  
Thay were ful glad whan I spak to hem faire ;

For, God it woot, I chidde hem spitously.  
 Now herkeneth how I bar me proprely.  
 Ye wise wyves, that can understonde,  
 Thus scholde ye speke, and bere hem wrong on  
     honde ;

For half so boldely can ther no man  
 Swere and lye as a womman can.  
 (I say not by wyves that ben wise,  
 But-if it be whan thay ben mysavise.) 230  
 I-wis a wif, if that sche can hir good,  
 Schal beren him on hond the cow is wood,  
 And take witnes on hir oughne mayde  
 Of hire assent ; but herkenith how I sayde.  
 Sec, olde caynard, is this thin array ?  
 Why is my neghebores wif so gay ?  
 Sche is honoured overal ther sche goth ;  
 I sitte at hom, I have no thrifty cloth.  
 What dostow at my neighebores hous ?  
 Is sche so fair ? what, artow amorous ? 240  
 What rounce ye with hir maydenes ? *benedicite*,  
 Sir olde leechour, let thi japes be.  
 And if I have a gossib, or a frend  
 Withouten gilt, thou chidest as a fend,  
 If that I walk or play unto his hous.  
 Thou comest hom as dronken as a mous.  
 And prechist on thy bench, with evel preef,  
 Thou saist to me, it is a gret meschief  
 To wedde a pover womman, for costage ;  
 And if that sche be riche and of parage, 250  
 Thanne saist thou, that it is a tormentrie  
 To suffre hir pride and hir malencolie.  
 And if that sche be fair, thou verray knave,  
 Thou saist that every holour wol hir have ;

Sehe may no while in chastité abyde,  
That is assayled thus on eche syde.  
Thou saist that som folk desire us for riches,  
Som for our schap, and som for our fairnes,  
And some, for that sche can synge and daunce,  
And some for gentillesse or daliaunce, 260  
Som for hir handes and hir armes smale :  
Thus goth al to the devel by thi tale.  
Thou saist, men may nought kepe a castel wal,  
It may so be biseged over al.  
And if sche be foul, thanne thou saist, that sche  
Coveitith every man that sche may se ;  
For, as a spaynel, sche wol on him lepe,  
Til that sche fynde som man hire to chepe.  
Ne noon so gray a goos goth in the lake,  
As sayest thou, wol be withouten make. 270  
And saist, it is an hard thing for to wolde  
Thing that no man wol, his willes, holde.  
Thus seistow, lorel, whan thou gost to bedde,  
And that no wys man nedith for to wedde,  
Ne no man that entendith unto hevене.  
With wilde thunder dynt and fuyry leve  
Mote thi wickede neeke be to-broke !  
Thou saist, that droppying hous, and eek smoke,  
And chydyng wyves maken men to fle  
Out of here oughne hous ; a, *benedicite*, 280  
What eylith such an old man for to chyde ?  
Thou seist, we wyves woln oure viecs hide,  
Til we ben weddid, and than we wil hem schewe.  
Wel may that be a proverbe of a schrewe.  
Thou saist, that assen, oxen, and houndes,  
Thay ben assayed at divers stoundes,  
Basyns, lavours eek, er men hem bye,

Spones, stooles, and al such housbondrie,  
 Also pottes, clothes, and array ;  
 But folk of wyves maken non assay, 290  
 Til thay ben weddid, olde dotard schrewe !  
 And thanne, saistow, we woln oure vices schewe.  
 Thou saist also, that it displesith me  
 But-if that thou wilt praysen my beauté,  
 And but thou pore alway in my face,  
 And clepe me faire dame in every place ;  
 And but thou make a fest on thilke day  
 That I was born, and make me freisch and gay ;  
 And but thou do my norice honoure,  
 And to my chamberer withinne *my* boure, 300  
 And to my fadres folk, and myn allies :  
 Thus saistow, olde barel ful of lies !  
 And yit of oure apprentys Jankyn,  
 For his crisp her, schynyng as gold so fyn,  
 And for he squiereth me up and down,  
 Yet hastow caught a fals suspeccioun ;  
 I nyl him nought, though thou were deed to morwe.  
 But tel me wherfor hydestow with sorwe  
 The keyes of thy chist away fro me ?  
 It is my good as wel as thin, pardé. 310

‘ What! wenest thou make an ydiot of oure  
 dame ?

Now by that lord that cleped is seint Jame,  
 Thow schalt not bothe, though thou were wood,  
 Be maister of my body and of my good ;  
 That oon thou schalt forgo maugré thin yen !  
 What helpeth it on me tenqueren or espien ?  
 I trowe thou woldest lokke me in thy chest.  
 Thou scholdist say, ‘ wif, go wher the lest ;  
 Take youre disport ; I nyl lieve no talis ;



I know yow for a trewe wif, dame Alis.' 320  
We loveth no man, that takith keep or charge  
Wher that we goon; we love to be at large.

‘Of alle men i-blessed most he be  
The wise astrologe daun Ptholomé,  
That saith this proverbe in his Almagest :  
Of alle men his wisdom is highest,  
That rekkith not who hath the world in honde.  
By this proverbe thou schalt understonde,  
Have thou ynough, what thar the reech or care  
How merily that other folkes fare? 330

For certes, olde dotard, with your leve,  
Ye schul have queynte right ynough at eve.  
He is to gret a nygard that wol werne  
A man to light a candel at his lanterne;  
He schal have never the lasse light, pardé.  
Have thou ynough, the thar not pleyne the.

‘Thou saist also, that if we make us gay  
With clothing and with precious array,  
That it is peril of our chastité.  
And yit, with sorwe, thou most enforce the, 340  
And saye these wordes in thapostles name :  
In abytt maad with chastité and schame  
Ye wommen schuld apparayle yow, quod he,  
And nought with tressed her, and gay perré.  
As perles, ne with golde, ne clothis riche.  
After thy text, ne after thin rubriche,  
I wol nought wirche as moche as a gnat.  
Thow saist thus that I was lik a cat;  
For who-so wolde senge the eattes skyn,  
Than wolde the catte duellen in his in; 350  
And if the eattes skyn be slyk and gay,  
Sche wol not duelle in house half a day,

But forth sche wil, er eny day be dawet,  
 To schewe hir skyn, and goon a caterwrawet.  
 This is to say, if I be gay, sir schrewe,  
 I wol renne aboute, my borel for to schewe.  
 Sir olde fool, what helpith the to aspien ?  
 Though thou praydest Argus with his hundrid yen  
 To be my wardecorps, as he can best,  
 In faith he schulde not kepe me but-if me lest ; 360  
 Yit couthe I make his berd, though queynte he be.  
 Thou saydest eek, that ther ben thinges thre,  
 The whiche thinges troublen al this erthe,  
 And that no wight may endure the ferthe.  
 O leve sire schrewe, Jhesu schorte thy lif !  
 Yit prechestow, and saist, an hateful wif  
 I-rekened is for oon of these meschaunees.  
 Ben ther noon other of thy resemblaunees  
 That ye may liken youre parables unto,  
 But-if a cely wyf be oon of tho ? 370  
 Thow likenest wommannes love to helle,  
 To bareyn lond, ther water may not duelle.  
 Thou likenest it also to wilde fuyr ;  
 The more it brenneth, the more it hath desir  
 To consume every thing, that brent wol be.  
 Thou saist, right as wormes schenden a tre,  
 Right so a wif schendith hir housebonde ;  
 This knowen tho that ben to wyves bonde.

Lordynges, right thus, as ye han understonde,  
 Bar I styf myn housebondes on honde, 380  
 That thus thay sayde in her dronkenesse ;  
 And al was fals, but that I took witnesse  
 On Jankyn, and upon my nece also.  
 O Lord, the peyne I dede hem, and the wo,  
 Ful gulteles, by Goddes swete pyne ;

For as an hors, I couthe bothe bite and whyne ;  
I couthe pleyne, and yet I was in the gilt,  
Or elles I hadde often tyme be spilt.  
Who-so first cometh to the mylle, first grynt ;  
I ploynede first, so was oure werre stynt. 390  
Thay were ful glad to excuse hem ful blyve  
Of thing, that thay never agilt in her lyve.  
And wenches wold I beren hem on honde,  
Whan that for-seek thay mighte unnethes stonde,  
Yit tykeled I his herte for that he  
Wende I had of him so gret chiereté.  
I swor that al my walkyng out a nyghte  
Was for to asprie wenches that he dighte.  
Under that colour had I many a mirthe.  
For al such witte is yeven us of birthe ; 400  
Deceipt wepyng, spynnyng, God hath give  
To wymmen kyndely whil *that* thay may lyve.  
And thus of o thing I avaunte me,  
*At* thende I hadde the best in ech degré,  
By sleight or fors, or of som maner thing,  
As by continuel murmur or chidyng,  
Namly on bedde, hadden thay meschaunce,  
Ther wolde I chide, and do hem no plesaunce ;  
I wold no lenger in the bed abyde,  
If that I felt his arm over my syde, 410  
Til he hadde maad his raunsoun unto me,  
Than wold I suffre him doon his nycteté.  
And therfor every man this tale telle,  
Wynne who-so may, for al is for to selle ;  
With empty hond men may noon haukes lure,  
For wynnyng wold I al his lust endure,  
And make me a feyned appetyt,  
And yit in bacoun had I never delyt ;

That made me that ever I wold hem chyde.  
 For though the pope hadde seten hem bisyde, 420  
 I nolde not spare hem at her oughne bord,  
 For, by my trouthe, I quyt hem word for word.  
 Als help me verray God omnipotent,  
 Though I right now schulde make my testament,  
 I owe hem nought a word, that it nys quitte,  
 I brought it so aboute by my witte,  
 That they moste yeve it up, as for the best,  
 Or ellis hadde we never ben in rest.  
 For though he loked as a grym lyoun,  
 Yit schuld he fayle of his conclusioun. 430  
 Than wold I saye, ' now, goode leefe, tak keep,  
 How mekly lokith Wilkyn our scheep !  
 Com ner, my spouse, let me ba thy cheke.  
 Ye schulde be al pacient and meke,  
 And have a swete spiced consciens,  
 Siththen ye preche so of Jopes paciens.  
 Suffreth alway, syns ye so wel can preche,  
 And but ye do, eerteyn we schul yow teche  
 That it is fair to have a wyf in pees.  
 On of us tuo mot bowe douteles ; 440  
 And, siththen man is more resonable  
 Than womman is, ye moste be suffrable.  
 What aylith yow thus for to grucche and grone ?  
 Is it for ye wold have my queynt allone ?  
 Why, tak it al ; lo, have it every del.  
 Peter ! I schrewe yow but ye love it wel.  
 For if I wolde selle my *bele chose*,  
 I couthe walk as freisch as eny rose, '  
 But I wol kepe it for youre owne toth.  
 Ye ben to blame, by God, I say yow soth !' 450  
 Such maner wordes hadde we on honde.

Now wol I speke of my fourth housbonde.  
 My fourthe housbond was a revelour,  
 This is to say, he had a paramour,  
*And* I was yong, and ful of ragerie,  
 Stiborn and strong, and joly as a pye.  
*Lord!* how couthe I daunee to an harpe smale,  
 And synge y-wys as eny nightyngale,  
 Whan I hadde dronke a draught of swete wyn.  
 Metillius, the foule cherl, the swyn, 460  
 That with a staf byraft his wyf hir lyf  
 For seche drank wyn, though I hadde ben his wif,  
 Ne schuld he nought have daunted me fro drinke;  
 And after wyn on Venus most I thinke,  
 For al-so siker as cold engendrith hayl,  
 A likorous mouth most have a licorous tail.  
 In wymmen vinolent is no defens,  
 This knowen leechours by experiens.  
 But, lord Crist, whan that it remembrith me  
 Upon my youthe, and on my jolité, 470  
 It tikelith me aboute myn herte-roote!  
 Unto this day it doth myn herte boote,  
 That I have had my world as in my tyme.  
 But age, alas! that al wol envenyme,  
 Hath me bireft my beauté and my pith;  
 Let go, farwel, the devyl go therwith.  
 The flour is goon, ther nis no more to telle,  
 The bran, as I best can, now mot I selle.  
 But yit to be mery wol I fonde.

Now wol I telle of my fourth housbonde. 480  
 I say, I had in herte gret despyt,  
 That he of eny other hadde delit;  
 But he was quit, by God, and by seint Joece;  
 I made him of the same woode a croce,

Nought of my body in no foul manere,  
 But certeynly I made folk such chere,  
 That in his owne grees I made him frie  
 For anger, and for *verraie* jalousie.  
 By God, in erthe I was his purgatory,  
 For which I hope his soule be in glory. 490

For, God it wot, he sat ful stille and song,  
 Whan that his scho ful bitterly him wrong.  
 Ther was no wight, sauf God and he, that wiste  
 In many wyse how sore I him twiste.

*He dyede* whan I cam fro Jerusalem,  
 And lith i-grave under the roode-bem ;  
 Al is his tombe nought so curious  
 As was the sepulere of him Darius,  
 Which that Appellus wroughte so subtyly.  
 It nys but wast to burie him preciously. 500  
 Let him farwel, God yive his soule rest,  
 He is now in his grave and in his chest.

‘ Now of my fifte housbond wol I telle ;  
 God let his soule never come in helle !  
 And yet was he to me the moste schrewe,  
 That fele I on my ribbes alle on rewe,  
 And ever schal, unto myn endyng day.  
 But in oure bed he was so freisch and gay,  
 And therwithal so wel he couthe me glose,  
 When that he wolde have my *bele chose*, 510  
 That, though he hadde me bete on every boon,  
 He couthe wynne my love right anoon.  
 I trowe, I loved him beste, for that he  
 Was of his love daungerous to me.  
 We wymmen han, if that I schal nought lye,  
 In this matier a queynte fantasie.  
 Wayte, what thyng we maye not lightly have,

Therafter wol we sonnest erie and crave.  
 Forbeed us thing, and that desire we ;  
 Pres on us fast, and thanne wol we fle. 520  
 With daunger outen alle we oure ware ;  
 Greet pres at market makith deer chaffare,  
 And to greet chep is holden at litel pris ;  
 This knowith every womman that is wys.  
 My fyfte housbond, God his soule blesse,  
 Which that I took for love and no richesse,  
 He som tyme was a clerk of Oxenford,  
 And hadde left scole, and went at hoom to borde  
 With my gossib, duellyng in our toun :  
 God have hir soule, hir name was Alisoun. 530  
 Sche knew myn herte and my privityte  
 Bet than oure parisch prest, so mot I the.  
 To hir bywreyed I my counseil al ;  
 For hadde myn housbond pissed on a wal,  
 Or don a thing that schuld have cost his lif,  
 To hir, and to another worthy wyf,  
 And to my neece, which I lovede wel,  
 I wold have told his counseil every del.  
 And so I dide ful ofte, God it woot,  
 That made his face ofte reed and hoot 540  
 For verry schame, and blamyd himself, that he  
 Hadde told to me so gret a priveté.  
 And so byfel that oones in a Lente,  
 (So ofte tyme to my gossib I wente,  
 For ever yit I lovede to be gay,  
 And for to walk in March, Averil, and May  
 From hous to hous, to here sondry talis)  
 That Jankyn clerk, and my gossib dame Alis,  
 And I myself, into the felde wente.  
 Myn housbond was at Londone al that Lente ; 550



I hadde the bettir leysir for to pleye,  
 And for to see, and eek for to be seye  
 Of lusty folk ; what wist I wher my grace  
 Was schapen for to be, or in what place ?  
 Therefore I made my visitaciouns  
 To vigiles, and to processiouns,  
 To prechings eek, and to this pilgrimages,  
 To pleyes of miracles, and mariages,  
 And wered upon my gay scarlet gytes.  
 These wormes, these moughtes, ne these mytes,  
 Upon my perel fretith hem never a deel, 561  
 And wostow why ? for thay were used wel.  
 Now wol I telle forth what happide me :—  
 I say, that in the feldes walkide we,  
 Til trewely we hadde such daliaunce  
 This clerk and I, that of my purvyaunce  
 I spak to him, and sayde how that he,  
 If I were wydow, schulde wedde me.  
 For certeynly, I say for no bobaunce,  
 Yit was I never withouten purveyaunce 570  
 Of mariage, ne of no thinges ceke ;  
 I hold a mouses hert not worth a leek,  
 That hath but oon hole to sterte to,  
 And if that faile, than is al i-do.  
*I bare him on honde he hadde enchauntede me ;*  
*(My dame taughte me that subtylté)*  
*And eke I sayde, I mete of him alle nyght,*  
*He wolde have slayne me, as I laye uprighte,*  
*And alle my bedde was fulle of vereye blode ;*  
*Butte yette I hope that ye shalle do me gode ;* 580  
*For blode betokenethe golde, as me was taughte ;*  
*And alle was false, I dremede of hitt righte naughte,*  
*Butte as I followede ay my dames lore,*

*As welle of that as of other thinges more.*

But now, sir, let me se, what I schal sayn ;

A ha ! by God, I have my tale agayn.

‘ Whan that my fourthe housbond<sup>o</sup> was on bere,  
I wept algate and made a sory cheere,

As wyves mooten, for it is usage ;

And with my kerechief coverede my visage ; 590

But, for that I was purveyed of a make,

I wepte but smal, and that I undertake.

To ehirche was myn housbond brought on morwe

With neighebers that for him made sorwe,

And Jankyn oure elerk was oon of tho.

As help me God, whan that I saugh him go

After the beere, me thought he had a paire

Of legges and of feet so elene and faire,

That al myn hert I yaf unto his hold.

He was, I trowe, twenty wynter old, 600

And I was fourty, if I schal say the sothe,

But yit I had alway a eoltis tothe.

Gattothid I was, and that bycom me wel,

I hadde the prynte of seynt Venus sel.

*As helpe me God, I was a lusti one.*

*And faire, and riche, and yong, and wel begone ;*

*And trewly, as myn hosbonde tolde me,*

*I hadde the beste quoniam that myghte be.*

*For certis I am al fulli venerian*

*In felyng, and myn herte alle marcian :* 610

*Venus me yaf my lust and licorousnesse.*

*And Mars yaf me my sturdi hardynesse.*

Myn ascent was Taur, and Mars therinne ;

Allas, alas, that ever love was synne !

I folwed ay myn inclinacioun

By vertu of my constillacioun :

That made me that I couthe nought withdrawe .  
My chambre of Venus from a good felawe.

*Yet have I a marke of Mars uppon my face,  
And also in another pryvé place.* 620

*For God so wisse be my salvacion,  
I loryde never bi non discrecion,  
But evyr folewed myn owne appetite,  
Alle were he schort, long, blak, or white ;*

*I toke no kepe, so that he liked me,  
How pore he was, ne eke of what degre.*

What schuld I say ? but at the monthis ende  
This joly clerk Jankyn, that was so heende,  
Hath weddid me with gret solempnitee,  
And to him yaf I al the londe and fee 630  
That ever was mo yive therbifore.

But aftir-ward repentede me ful sore.

He nolde suffre nothing of my list.

By God, he smot me oones with his fist,  
For I rent oones out of his book a lef,  
That of that strok myn eere wax al deaf.

Styborn I was, as is a leones,  
And of my tonge a verray jangleres,  
And walk I wold, as I hadde don biforn,  
Fro hous to hous, although he had it sworn ; 640

For which he ofte tymes wolde preche,  
And me of olde Romain gestes teche.

How he Simplicius Gallus left his wyf,  
And hir forsok for terme of al his lyf,  
Nought but for open heedid he hir say  
Lokying out at his dore upon a day.

Another Romain told he me by name,  
That, for his wyf was at a somer game  
Without his wityng, he forsok hir eeke.

And thanne wold he upon his book seeke 650  
That ilke proverbe of Ecclesiaste,  
Wher he comaundith, and forbedith faste,  
Man schal not suffre his wyf go roule aboute.  
Than wold he saye right thus withouten doute :  
' Who that buyldith his hous al of salwes,  
And priketh his blynde hors over the falwes,  
And suffrith his wyf to go seken halwes,  
Is worthy to ben honged on the galwes.'  
But al for nought ; I sette nought an hawe  
Of his proverbe, ne of his olde sawe ; 660  
Ne I wolde not of him corretted be.  
I hate him that my vices tellith me,  
And so doon mo, God it wot, than I.  
This made him with me wood al outerly ;  
I nolde not forbere him in no cas.  
Now wol I saye yow soth, by seint *Thomas*,  
Why that I rent out of the book a leef,  
For which he smot me, that I was al def.  
He had a book, that gladly night and day  
For his desport he wolde rede alway ; 670  
He clepyd it *Valerye* and *Theofrast*,  
At which book he lough alway ful fast.  
And eek thay say her was som tyme a clerk at Rome,  
A cardynal, that heet seint *Jerome*,  
That made a book ayens *Jovynyan*.  
In which book eek ther was *Tertulyan*,  
*Crisippus*, *Tortula*, and eek *Helewys*,  
That was abbas not fer fro *Paris* ;  
And eek the parablis of *Salamon*,  
Ovydes *Art*, and bourdes many oon ; 680  
And alle these were bounde in oo volume.  
And every night and day was his custume,  
Whan he hadde leysir and vacacioun

From other *worldely* occupacioun,  
 To reden in this book of wikked wyves.  
 He knew of hem mo legendes and lyves,  
 Than ben of goode wyves in the Bible.  
 For trustith wel, it is an impossible,  
 That any clerk schal speke good of wyves,  
 But-if it be of holy seintes lyves, 690  
 Ne of noon other wyfes never the mo.  
 Who peyntide the leoun, tel me, who?  
 By God, if wommen hadde writen stories,  
 As clerkes have withinne her oratories,  
 Thay wold have write of men more wickidnes,  
 Than al the mark of Adam may redres.  
 These children of Mercury and of Venus  
 Ben in her werkyng ful contrarious.  
 Mercury lovith wisdom and science,  
 And Venus loveth ryot and dispense. 700  
 And for her divers disposicioun,  
 Ech fallith in otheres exaltacioun.  
 And thus, God wot, Mercury is desolate  
 In Pisces, wher Venus is exaltate,  
 And Venus faylith wher Mercury is reysed.  
 Therfor no womman of clerkes is preised.  
 The clerk whan he is old, and may nought do  
 Of Venus werkis, is not worth a scho ;  
 Than sit he down, and writ in his dotage,  
 That wommen can nought kepe here mariage. 710  
 But now to purpos, why I tolde the,  
 That I was beten for a leef, pardé.  
 Upon a night Jankyn, that was oure sire,  
 Rad on his book, as he sat by the fyre,  
 Of Eva first, that for hir wikkidnes,  
 Was al mankynde brought to wrecchednes,  
*For whiche that Jhesu Crist himselve was slayne,*

*That boughte us with his herte-blood agayne.*  
*Lo here expresse of wommen may ye fynde,*  
*That woman was the loose of alle mankynde.* 720  
Tho rad he me how Sampson lest his heris  
Slepyng, his lemman kut it with hir seheris,  
Thurgh which tresoun lost he bothe his yen.  
Tho rad he me, if that I sehal not lyen,  
Of Ereules, and of his Dejanyre,  
That caused him to sette himself on fuyre.  
No thing foryat he the eare and wo  
That Soerates hadde with his wyves tuo ;  
How Exantipa easte pisse upon his heed.  
This seely man sat stille, as he were deed, 730  
He wyped his heed, no more durst he sayn,  
But ‘ Er thunder stynte ther eometh rayn.’  
Of Phasipha, that was the queen of Creete,  
For sehrewednes him thoughte the tale sweete.  
Fy ! spek no more, it is a grisly thing,  
Of her horribil lust and her likyng.  
Of Clydemystra for hir leecherie  
That falsly made hir housbond for to dye,  
He rad it with ful good devocioun.  
He tolde me eek, for what oeeasioun 740  
Amphiores at Thebes lest his lif ;  
Myn housbond had a legend of his wyf  
Exiphilem, that for an ouche of gold  
Hath prively unto the Grekes told  
Wher that hir housbond hyd him in a place,  
For whieh he had at Thebes sory graee.  
Of Lyma told he me, and of Lucye ;  
Thay bothe made her housbondes for to dye,  
That oon for love, that other was for hate.  
Lyma hir housbond on an even late 750

Empoysond hath, for that sche was his fo ;  
 Lucia licorous loved hir housbond so,  
 For that he schuld alway upon hir thinke,  
 Sche yaf him such a maner love-drinke,  
 That he was deed er it was by the morwe ;  
 And thus algates housbondes hadde sorwe.  
 Than told he me, how oon Latumyus  
 Compleigned unto his felaw Arrius,  
 That in his gardyn growede such a tre,  
 On which he sayde how that his wyves thre 760  
 Honged hemselfe for herte despitous.  
 ‘ O leve brother,’ quod this Arrious,  
 ‘ Yif me a plont of thilke blessid tre,  
 And in my gardyn sehal it plantid be.’  
 Of latter date of wyves hath he red  
 That some han slayn her housbondes in her bed,  
 And let her leechour dighten al the night,  
 Whil that the corps lay in the flor upright ;  
 And som han dryven nayles in her brayn,  
 Whiles thay sleepe, and thus they han hem slayn ;  
 Som have hem yive poyssoun in her drinke ; 771  
 He spak more harm than herte may bythynke.  
 And therwithal he knew mo proverbes  
 Than in this world ther growen gres or herbes.  
 Better is, quod he, thyn habitacioun  
 Be with a leoun, or a foul dragoun,  
 Than with a womman using for to chyde.  
 Better is, quod he, hihe in the roof abyde,  
 Than with an *angry* womman down in a hous ;  
 Thay ben so wicked and so contrarious, 780  
 Thay haten that her housbondes loven ay.  
 He sayd, a womman cast hir sebame away,  
 Whan sche cast of hir smok ; and forthermo,



A fair womman, but sche be chast also,  
Is lyk a gold ryng in a sowes nose.  
Who wolde wene, or who wolde suppose  
The wo that in myn herte was and pyne?  
And whan I saugh he nolde never fyne  
To reden on this cursed book al night,  
Al sodeinly thre leves have I plight 790  
Out of this booke that he had, and eeke  
I with my fist so took him on the cheeke,  
That in oure fuyr he fel bak-ward adoun.  
And he upstert, as doth a wood leoun,  
And with his fist he smot me on the hed,  
That in the floor I lay as I were deed.  
And whan he saugh so stille that I lay,  
He was agast, and wold have fled away.  
Til atte last out of my swown I brayde.  
'O, hastow slayn me, false thef?' I sayde, 800  
'And for my lond thus hastow mourdrid me?  
Er I be deed, yit wol I kisse the.'  
And ner he cam, and knelith faire adoun,  
And sayde, 'Deere suster Alisoun,  
As help me God, I schal the never smyte;  
That I have doon it is thiself to wite;  
Foryive it me, and that I the biseke.'  
And yet eftsones I hyt him on the cheke,  
And sayde, 'Thef, thus mekil I me wreke.  
Now wol I dye, I may no lenger speke.' 810  
But atte last, with moehil care and wo,  
We fyl accordid by ourselven tuo;  
He yaf me al the bridil in myn hand  
To have the governaunce of hous and land,  
And of his tonge, and of his hond also,  
And made him brenne his book anon right tho.

And whan I hadde geten unto me  
 By maistry al the sovereynote,  
 And that he sayde, 'Myn owne trewe wyf,  
 Do as the list in term of al thy lyf, 820  
 Kepe thyn honour, and kep eek my myn estat;'  
 And after that day we never hadde debat.  
 God help me so, I was to him as kynde  
 As eny wyf fro Denmark unto Inde,  
 And al-so trewe was he unto me.  
 I pray to God that sitte in magesté  
 So blesse his soule, for his mercy deere.  
 Now wol I say my tale, if ye wol heere.'

The Frere lough when he had herd al this :  
 'Now, dame,' quod he, 'so have I joye and blis,  
 This a long preambel of a tale.' 831  
 And whan the Sompnour herd the Frere gale,  
 'Lo!' quod this Sompnour, 'for Goddes armes tuo,  
 A frer wol entremet him evermo.  
 Lo, goode men, a flie and eek a frere  
 Woln falle in every dissche and matiere.  
 What spekst thou of perambulacioun ?  
 What? ambil, or trot; or pees, or go sit down :  
 Thou lettest oure disport in this matere.'  
 'Ye, woltow so, sir sompnour!' quod the Frere :  
 'Now, by my fay, I schal, er that I go, 841  
 Telle of a sompnour such a tale or tuo,  
 That alle the folk schuln laughen in this place.'  
 'Now, ellis, frere, I byschrew thy face,'  
 Quod this Sompnour, 'and I byschrewe me,  
 But-if I telle tales tuo or thre  
 Of freres, er I come to Sydingborne,  
 That I schal make thin herte for to morne,  
 For wel I wot thy paciens is goon.'



And saith his matyns and his holy thinges 20  
As he goth in his lymytatioun.

Wommen may *now* go sauflly up and down ;  
In every busch, or under every tre,  
Ther is non other incubus but he,  
And he ne wol doon hem *no* dishonour.

And so bifel it, that this king Arthour  
Had in his hous a lusty bacheler,  
That on a day com rydyng fro ryver ;  
And happed, al alone as sche was born,  
He saugh a mayde walkyng him byforn, 30  
Of which mayden anoon, maugré hir heed,  
By verray fors byraft hir maydenhed.

For which oppressioun was such clamour,  
And such pursuyte unto kyng Arthour,  
That dampned was the knight and schulde be ded  
By cours of lawe, and schuld have lost his heed,  
(Paraventure such was the statut tho,)

But that the queen and other ladys mo  
So longe preyeden thay the kyng of grace,  
Til he his lif hath graunted in the place, 40  
And yaf him to the queen, al at hir wille  
To chese wethir sche wolde him save or spille.

The queen thankede the kyng with al hir might ;

And after thus sche spak unto the knight,

Whan that sche saugh hir tyme upon a day :

‘Thow stondest yet,’ quod sche, ‘in such array,

That of thy lyf hastow no sewerté ;

I graunte thy lif, if thou canst telle me,

What thing is it that wommen most desiren ;

Be war, and keep thy nek-bon fro the iren. 50

And if thou canst not tellen it anoon,

Yet wol I give the leve for to goon

A twelfmonth and a day, it for to lere  
An answer suffisaunt in this matiere.  
And seurté wol I have, er that thou paece,  
Thy body for to yelden in this placee.  
Wo was this knight, and sorwfully he sikede;  
But what? he may not doon al as him likede,  
And atte last he ehes him for to wende,  
And cam ayein right at the yeres ende 60  
With swieh answer as God him wolde purveye;  
And takith his leve, and wendith forth his weye.  
He sekith every hous and every place  
Wher-so he hopith for to fynde graee,  
To lerne what thing wommen loven most;  
But he ne couthe arryven in no eost,  
Wher as he mighte fynde in this mattiere  
*Two creatures* aecordyng in fere.  
Some sayden, wommen loven best richesse,  
Some sayde honour, and some sayde jolynesse, 70  
Some riche array, some sayden lust on bedde,  
And ofte tyme to be wydow and wedde.  
Some sayden owre herte is most i-eased  
Whan we ben y-flaterid and y-pleased  
He goth ful neigh the soth, I wil not lye;  
A man schal wynne us best with flaterye;  
And with attendaunee, and with busynesse  
Ben we y-limid both more and lesse.  
And some sayen, that we loven best  
For to be fre, and to doon as us lest, 80  
And that no man repreve us of oure vice,  
But say that we ben wys, and no thing nyce.  
For trewely ther is noon of us alle,  
If eny wight wolde claw us on the galle,  
That we nyl like, for he saith us soth;

Assay, and he schal fynd it, that so doth.  
For be we never so vicious withinne,  
We schuln be holde wys and clene of synne.  
And somme sayn, that gret delit han we  
For to be holden stabil and secre, 90  
And in oon purpos stedfastly to duelle,  
And nought bywreye thing that men us telle.  
But that tale is not worth a rakes stele.  
Pardy, we wymmen can right no thing hele,  
Witnes on Myda; wil ye here the tale?  
Ovyd, among his other thinges smale,  
Sayde Myda had under his lange heris  
Growyng upon his heed tuo asses eeris;  
The whiche vice he hid, as he best mighte,  
Ful subtilly fro every mannes sighte, 100  
That, save his wyf, ther wist of that nomo;  
He loved hir most, and trusted hir also;  
He prayed hir, that to no creature  
Sche schulde tellen of his disfigure.  
Sche swor him, nay, for al this world to wynne,  
Sche nolde do that vilonye or synne  
To make hir housbond have so foul a name;  
Sche wolde not tel it for hir oughne schame.  
But natheles hir thoughte that sche dyde,  
That sche so longe a counseil scholde hyde; 110  
Hir thought it swal so sore about hir herte,  
That needely som word hir most asterte;  
And sins sche dorste not tel it unto man,  
Doun to a marreys faste by sche ran,  
Til sche cam ther, hir herte was on fuyre;  
And as a bytoure bumblith in the myre,  
Sche layde hir mouth unto the water doun.  
' Bywrey me not, thou watir, with thi soun.'

Quod sche, 'to the I telle it, and nomo,  
 Myn housbond hath long asse eeris tuo. 120  
 Now is myn hert al hool, now is it oute,  
 I mighte no lenger kepe it out of doute.'  
 Her may ye se, theigh we a tyme abyde,  
 Yet out it moot, we can no counseil hyde.  
 The remenaunt of the tale, if ye wil here,  
 Redith Ovid, and ther ye mow it leere.

This knight, of which my tale is speecially,  
 Whan that he saugh he mighte nought come therby,  
 This is to saye, that wommen loven most,  
 Withinne his brest ful sorwful was the gost. 130  
 But hom he goth, he mighte not lenger sojourne,  
 The day was come, that hom-ward most he torne.  
 And in his way, it hapnyd him to ride  
 In al his care, under a forest side,  
 Wher as he saugh upon a daunce go  
 Of ladys four and twenty, and yit mo.  
 Toward this ilke daunce he drough ful yerne,  
 In hope that *he* som wisdom schuld i-lerne;  
 But certynly, er he com fully there,  
 Vanysshid was this daunce, he nyste where; 140  
 No creature saugh he that bar lif,  
 Sauf on the greene he saugh sittying a wyf,  
 A fouler wight ther may no man devyse.  
 Ayens the knight this olde wyf gan ryse,  
 And sayde, 'Sir knight, heer forth lith no way;  
 Tel me what ye seekyn, by your fay  
 Paraventure it may the better be:  
 Thise olde folk can moechil thing,' quod sche,  
 'My lieve modir,' quod this knight, 'certayn  
 I am but ded but-if that I can sayn 150  
 What thing is it that wommen most desire;



Couthe yo me wisse, I wolde wel quyte your huyre.'  
' Plight me thy trouth her in myn hond,' quod sche,  
' The nexte thing that I require the,  
Thou schalt it doo, if it be in thy might,  
And I wol telle it the, er it be night.'  
' Have her my trouthe,' quod the knight, 'I graunte.'  
' Thanne,' quod sche, 'I dar me wel avaunte,  
Thy lif is sauf, for I wol stonde therby,  
Upon my lif the queen wol say as I ; 160  
Let se, which is the proudest of hem alle,  
That werith on a coverchief or a calle,  
That dar saye nay of thing I schal the teche.  
Let us go forth withouten more speche.'  
Tho rownede sche a pistil in his eere,  
And bad him to be glad, and have no fere.  
Whan they ben comen to the court, this knight  
Sayd he had holde *his* day, *as* he *hadde* hight,  
Al redy was his answer, as he sayde.  
Ful many a noble wyf, and many a mayde, 170  
And many a wydow, for that they ben wyse,  
The queen hirself sittying as a justise,  
Assemblid ben, his answer for to hiere ;  
And after-ward this knight was bode appiere,  
To every wight comaundid was silence,  
And that the knight schulde telle in audience  
What thing that worldly wommen loven best.

This knight ne stood not stille, as doth a best,  
But to the questioun anoon answerde,  
With manly voys, that al the court it herde ; 180  
' My liege lady, generally,' quod he,  
' Wommen, desiren to have soveraynté  
As wel over hir housbond as over hir love,  
And for to be in maystry him above.

'This is the most desir, though ye me kille;  
Doth as yow list, I am heer at your wille.'  
In al the court ne was ther wyf, ne mayde,  
Ne wydow, that eontrarieð that he sayde;  
But sayden, he was worthy have his lif.  
And with that word upstarte that olde wif, 190  
Which that the knight saugh sittying on the grene.  
'Mercy,' quod sche, 'my soveraign lady queene,  
Er that your eourt departe, doth me right.  
I taughte this answer unto the knight;  
For which he plighte me his trouthe there,  
The firste thing that I wold him requere,  
He wold it do, if it lay in his might.  
Before this court then pray I the, sir knight,'  
Quod sche, 'that thou me take unto thy wif,  
For wel thou wost, that I have kept thy lif; 200  
If I say fals, sey nay, upon thy fey.'  
This knight answerd, 'Allas and waylawey!  
I wot right wel that sueh was my byhest.  
For Goddes love, as chese a new request;  
Tak al my good, and let my body go.'  
'Nay,' quod she than, 'I sehrew us bothe tuo.  
For though that I be foule, old, and poure,  
I nolde for al the metal ne for the oure  
That under erthe is grave, or lith above,  
But I thy wife were and eek thy love.' 210  
'My love?' quod he, 'nay, nay, my dampnaeioun.  
Allas! that eny of my naeioun  
Schuld ever so foule disparagid be!'  
But al for nought; the ende is this, that he  
Constreigned was, he needes most hir wedde,  
And takith his wyf, and goth with hir to bedde.  
Now wolden som men say paradventure,

That for my neeglence I do no cure  
To telle yow the joye and tharray  
That at that fest was maad that ilke day. 220  
To which thing schortly answeren I schal,  
And say ther nas feste ne joy at al,  
Ther nas but hevynes and mochil sorwe ;  
For prively he weddyd hir in a morwe,  
And alday hudde him as doth an oule,  
So wo was him, his wyf lokede so foule.  
Gret was the wo the knight had in his thought  
Whan he was with his wyf on bedde brought,  
He walwith, and he torneth to and fro.  
His olde wyf lay smylyng ever mo, 230  
And sayd, ‘ O deere housbond, *benedicite*,  
Fareth every knight with his wyf as ye !  
Is this the lawe of king Arthures hous ?  
Is every knight of his thus daungerous ?  
I am your oughne love, and eek your wyf,  
I am sche that hath savyd your lyf,  
And certes ne dede I yow never unright.  
Why fare ye thus with me the firste night ?  
Ye fare lik a man that hadde lest his wit.  
What is my gult ? for Godes love, tel me it, 240  
And it schal be amendid, if that I may.’  
‘ Amendid !’ quod this knight, ‘ allas ! nay, nay,  
It wol nought ben amendid, never mo ;  
Thow art so lothly, and so old also,  
And therto comen of so lowh a kynde,  
That litil wonder is though I walwe and wynde ;  
So wolde God, myn herte wolde breste !’  
‘ Is this,’ quod sche, ‘ the cause of your unreste ?’  
‘ Ye, certeynly,’ quod he, ‘ no wonder is !’  
‘ Now, sire,’ quod sche, ‘ I couthe amende al this,

If that me list, er it were dayes thre, 251  
So wel ye mighte bere yow to me.  
But for ye speken of such gentillesse  
As is descendit out of old richesse,  
Therfor schulde ye ben holden gentil men ;  
Such arrogaunce is not worth an hen.  
Lok who that is most vertuous alway,  
Privé and pert, and most entendith ay  
To do the gentil dedes that he can,  
Tak him for the grettest gentil man. 260  
Crist wol we clayme of him oure gentillesse,  
Nought of oure eldres for *her olde* richesse.  
For though they yive us al her heritage,  
For which we clayme to be of high parage,  
Yit may thay not biquethe, for no thing  
To noon of us, so vertuous lyvyng,  
That made hem gentil men y-callid be,  
And bad us folwe hem in such degré.  
Wel can the wyse poet of Florence,  
That hatte Daunt, speke of this sentence ; 270  
Lo, in such maner of rym is Dauntes tale ;  
Ful seeld uprisith by his braunchis smale  
Prowes of man, for God of his prowessse  
Wol that we clayme of him our gentillesse ;  
For of our auncestres we no thing clayme  
But temporal thing, that men may hurt and  
mayme.  
Ek every wight wot this as wel as I,  
If gentiles were plaunted naturelly  
Unto a certayn lignage down the line,  
Privé ne apert, they wolde never fine 280  
To don of gentillesce tho fair office,  
Thay mighte nought doon no vileny or vice.

Take fuyr and ber it in the derkest hous  
Bitwixe this and the mount Caukasous,  
And let men shitte the dores, and go thenne,  
Yit wol the fuyr as fair and lighte brenne  
As twenty thousand men might it biholde ;  
His office naturel ay wol it holde,  
Up peril on my lif, til that it dye.  
Her may ye se wel, how that genterye 290  
Is nought annexid to possessioun,  
Sithins folk ne doon her operacioun  
Alway, as doth the fuyr, lo, in his kynde  
For God it wot, men may ful often fynde  
A lordes sone do schame and vilonye.  
And he that wol have pris of his gentrie,  
For he was boren of a gentil hous,  
And had his eldres noble and vertuous,  
And nyl himselve doo no gentil dedis,  
Ne folw his gentil aunceter, that deed is, 300  
He is nought gentil, be he duk or erl ;  
For vileyn synful deedes maketh a cherl,  
For gentilnesse nys but renomé  
Of thin auncestres, for her heigh bounté,  
Which is a straunge thing to thy persone ;  
Thy gentilesce cometh fro God alloone.  
Than comth oure verray gentilesse of grace,  
It was no thing biquethe us with oure place.  
Thinketh how nobil, as saith Valerius,  
Was thilke Tullius Hostilius, 310  
That out of povert ros to high noblesse.  
Redith Senek, and redith eek Boece,  
Ther schuln ye se expresse, that no dred is,  
That he is gentil that doth gentil dedis.  
And therfor, lieve housbond, I conclude,

Al were it that myn auncetres wer rude,  
 Yit may the highe God, and so hope I,  
 Graunte me grace to lyve vertuously ;  
 'Than am I gentil, whan that I bygynne  
 To lyve vertuously, and weyven synne. 320  
 And ther as ye of povert me repreve,  
 The heighe God, on whom that we bilieve,  
 In wilful povert ehese to *lede* his lif ;  
 And eertes, every man, mayden, or wyf.  
 May understonde that Jhesus, heven king,  
 Ne wolde not ehese a vicious lyvyng.  
 Glad povert is an honest thing eertayn ;  
 This wol Senek and other clerkes sayn.  
 Who that holt him payd of his povert,  
 I hold him rieche, al had he nought a schert. 330  
 He that coveitith is a pore wight,  
 For he wold have that is not in his might.  
 But he that nought hath, ne coveyteth nought to  
 have,  
 Is rieche, although ye hold him but a knave ;  
 Verray povert is synne proprely.

' Juvenal saith of povert merily,  
 The pore man whan he goth by the waye  
 Bifore the theves he may synge and playe.  
 Povert is hatel *good*, and, as I gesse,  
 A ful gret brynger out of busynesse ; 340  
 A gret amender eek of sapiens  
 To him that takith it in paeiens.  
 Povert is this, although it seme elenge,  
 Possessioun that no wight wil ehalenge.  
 Povert, ful often, whan a man is lowe,  
 Makith him his God and eek himself to knowe.  
 Povert a spectacle is, as thinkith me,

Thurgh which he may his verray frendes se ;  
And therfor, sir, syth that I yow nought greve,  
Of my povert no more ye me repreve. 350

‘ Now, sir, of elde ye repreve me ;  
And certes, sir, though noon auctorité  
Were in no book, ye gentils of honour  
Sayn that men schuld an old wight doon favour,  
And clepe him fader, for your gentillesse ;  
And *auctours* I schal fynden, as I gesse.

‘ Now ther that ye sayn I am foul and old,  
Than drede you nought to ben a cokewold.  
For filthe and elde, al-so mot I the,  
Ben grete wardeyns upon chastité. 360  
But natheles, sith I knowe your delyt,  
I schal fulfille youre worldly appetyt.  
Chese, now,’ quod sche, ‘oon of these thinges tweye,  
To have me foul and old til that I deye,  
And be to yow a trewe *and* humble wyf,  
And never yow displease in al my lyf ;  
Or elles ye wol have me yong and fair,  
And take your aventure of the repair  
That schal be to your hous bycause of me,  
Or in som other place *it* may wel be. 370

Now chese yourselven whethir that yow liketh.’  
This knight avysith him, and sore sikith,  
But atte last he sayd in this manere :

‘ My lady and my love, and wyf so deere,  
I putte me in your wyse governaunce,  
Chesith yourself which may be most pleasaunce  
And most honour to yow and me also,  
I do no fors the whether of the tuo,  
For as yow likith, it suffisith me.’  
‘ Than have I gete of yow the maystry,’ quod sche,



‘ Sith I may govern and chese as me list ?’ 351  
‘ Ye certis, wyf,’ quod he, ‘ I hold it best.’  
‘ Kys me,’ quod sche, ‘ we ben no lenger wrothe,  
For, by my trouthe, I wol be to yow bothe,  
That is to saye, ye, bothe fair and good.  
I pray to God that I mot sterve wood ;  
But I be to yow al-so good and trewe  
As ever was wyf, siththen the world was newe ;  
And but I be to morow as fair to seen  
As eny lady, emperesse, or queen, 390  
That is bitwixe thest and eek the west,  
Doth by my lyf right even as you lest.  
Cast up the cortyns, and look what this is.’

And whan the knyght saugh verrayly al this,  
That sche so fair was, and so yong therto,  
For joye he hent hir in his armes tuo ;  
His herte bathid in a bath of blisse,  
A thousand tyme on rowe he gan hir kisse.  
And sche obeyed him in every thing  
That mighte doon him pleisauns or likyng. 400  
And thus thay lyve unto her lyves end  
In parfyt joye ; and Jhesu Crist us sende  
Housbondes meke, yonge, and freissche on bedde,  
And grace to overbyde hem that we wedde.  
And eek I pray to Jhesus schort her lyves,  
That wil nought be governed after her wyves.  
And old and angry nygardes of despense,  
God send hem sone verray pestilence !

## THE PROLOGE OF THE FRERE.

**H**IS worthy lymytour, this noble Frere,  
 He made alway a *maner* lourynge cheere  
 Upon the Sompnour, but for honesté  
 No vileyns worde yit to him spak he.

But atte last he sayd unto the wyf,  
 ‘ Dame,’ quod he, ‘ God yive yow good lyf!  
 Ye han her touchid, al-so mot I the,  
 In scole matier gret difficulté.  
 Ye han sayd mochel thing right wel, I say;  
 But dame, right as we ryden by the way, 10  
 Us needeth nought but for to speke of game,  
 And lete auctorites, in Goddes name,  
 To preching and to scoles of clergie.  
 But if it like to this companye,  
 I wil yow of a sompnour telle a game;  
 Pardé, ye may wel knowe by the name,  
 That of a sompnour may no good be sayd;  
 I pray that noon of yow be evel apayd;  
 A sompnour is a renner up and doun  
 With maundementz for fornicacioun, 20  
 And is y-bete at every tounes eende.’

Our oste spak, ‘ A! sir, ye scholde been heende  
 And curteys, as a man of your estaat,  
 In company we wol have no debaat;  
 Telleth your tale, and let the Sompnour be.’  
 ‘ Nay,’ quoth the Sompnour, ‘ let him saye to me  
 What so him list; whan it cometh to my lot,  
 By God! I schal him quyten every grot.

I schal him telle which a gret honour  
 Is to ben a fals flateryng lymytour. 30  
 And his offis I schal him telle i-wis.  
 Our host answerde, '*Pees, no more of this.*'  
 And after this he sayd unto the Frere,  
 'Telleth forth your tale, my *leve* maister deere.'

## THE FRERES TALE.

**W**HILOM there was dwellyng in my countré  
 An erchedeken, a man of gret degré,  
 That boldely did execucioun,  
 In punyschyng of fornicacioun,  
 Of wicchecraft, and eek of bauderye,  
 Of diffamacioun, and avoutrie,  
 Of chirche-reves, and of testamentes,  
 Of contractes, and of lak of sacraments,  
 And eek of many another *maner* cryme,  
 Which needith not to reherse at this tyme ; 10  
 Of usur, and of symony also ;  
 But certes lecchours did he grettest woo ;  
 Thay schulde synge, if that they were hent ;  
 And smalo tythers thay were foully schent,  
 If eny persoun wold upon hem pleyne,  
 Ther might astert him no pecunial peyne.  
 For smale tythes and for smal offrynge,  
 He made the poeple pitously to synge.  
 For er the bisschop caught hem in his hook,  
 They weren in the archedeknes book : 20  
 And hadde thurgh his jurediccioun

Power to have of hem correccioun.  
He had a sompnour redy to his hond,  
A slyer boy was noon in Engelond;  
Ful prively he had his espiaile,  
That taughte him wher he might avayle.  
He couthe sparo of leechours oon or tuo,  
To techen him to four and twenty mo.  
For though this sompnour wood were as an hare,  
To telle his harlotry I wol not spare; 30  
For we ben out of here correccioun,  
They have of us no jurediccioun,  
Ne never schul to terme of alle her lyves.  
'Peter! so been the wommen of the styves.'  
*Quod this Sompnour*, 'i-put out of oure cures.'  
'Pees! with meschaunce and with mesaventures,'  
Thus sayd our host, 'and let him telle his tale.  
Now telleth forth, although the Sompnour gale,  
Ne spareth nought, myn owne maister deere.'  
This false thief, the sompnour, quoth the frere,  
Had alway bawdes redy to his hond, 41  
As eny hawk to lure in Engelond,  
That told him al the secré that they knewe,  
For here acquaintance was not come of newe;  
Thay were his approwours prively.  
He took himself a gret profyt therby;  
His maister knew nat alway what he wan.  
Withoute maundement, a lewed man  
He couthe sompne, up peyne of Cristes curs,  
And thay were glad to fille wel his purs, 50  
And make him grete festis atte nale.  
And right as Judas hadde purses smale  
And was a thief, right such a thief was he,  
His maister hadde not half his dueté;

He was (if I schal yive him his laude)  
A theef, a sompnour, and eek a baude.  
And he hadde wenches at his retenue,  
That whethir that sir Robert or sir Hughe,  
Or Jak, or Rauf, or who-so that it were,  
That lay by hem, thay told it in his cere. 60  
Thus was the wenche and he of oon assent.  
And he wolde fecche a feyned maundement,  
And sompne hem to chapitre bothe tuo,  
And pyle the man, and let the wenche go.  
Than wold he sayn, 'I schal, frend, for thy sake,  
Don strike the out of oure lettres blake ;  
The thar no more as in this cas travayle ;  
I am thy frend ther I the may avayle.'  
Certeynly he knew of bribours mo  
Than possible is to telle in yeres tuo ; 70  
For in this world nys dogge for the bowe,  
That can an hurt deer from an hol y-knowe,  
Bet than this sompnour knew a leecheour,  
Or avoutier, or ellis a paramour ;  
And for that was the fruyt of al his rent,  
Therefore, theron he set al his entent.

And so bifel, that oones on a day  
This sompnour, ever wayting on his pray,  
Rod forth to sompne a widew, an old ribibe,  
Feynyng a cause, for he wolde *han* a bribe. 80  
And happede that he say bifore him ryde  
A gay yeman under a forest syde ;  
A bow he bar, and arwes bright and kene,  
Ho had upon a courtepy of grene,  
An hat upon his heed, with frenges blake.  
'Sir,' quod this sompnour, 'heyl and wel overtake !'  
'Wolcome,' quod he, 'and every good felawe ;

Whider ridestow under this grene schawe?  
 Sayde this yiman, 'Wiltow fer to day?'  
 This sompnour answerd, and sayde, 'Nay 90  
 Her faste by,' quod he, 'is myn entent  
 To ryden, for to reysen up a rent  
 That longith to my lordes dueté.'  
 'Artow than a bayely?' 'Ye,' quod he.  
 He durste not for verray filth and schame  
 Sayn that he was a sompnour, for the name.

'*De par dieux!*' quod the yeman, 'lieve brother,  
 Thou art a bayly and I am another.  
 I am unknowen, as in this contré;  
 Of thin acquaintance I wol praye the, 100  
 And eek of brotherheed, *if* it yow lest.  
 I have gold and silver in my chest;  
 If that the happe come into oure schire,  
 Al schal be thin, right as thou wolt desire.'  
 'Graunt mercy,' quod this sompnour, 'by my faith!  
 Everich in otheres hond his trouthe laith,  
 For to be sworne bretheren til thay deyen.  
 In daliaunce forth thay ride and pleyen.

This sompnour, which that was as ful of jangles,  
 As ful of venym ben these veryangles, 110  
 And ever enquering upon every thing,  
 'Brother,' quod he, 'wher now is your dwellyng,  
 Another day if that I schulde yow seeche?'  
 This yiman him answered in softe speche:  
 'Brother,' quod he, 'fer in the north contré  
 Wheras I hope somtyme I schal the se.  
 Er we depart I schal the so wel wisse,  
 That of myn hous ne schaltow never misse.'  
 'Now, brother,' quod this sompnour, 'I yow pray,  
 Teche me, whil that we ryden by the way, 120

Syn that ye ben a baily as am I,  
Som subtilté as tel me faithfully 120  
In myn office how that I may wynne.  
And spare not for consciens or for synne,  
But, as my brother, tel me how do ye.'

'Now, by my trouthe, brothir myn,' sayd he,  
'As I schal telle the a faithful tale.  
My wages ben ful streyt and eek ful smale;  
My lord to me is *hard* and daungerous,  
And myn office is ful laborous; 130  
And therfor by extorcious I lyve,  
Forsoth I take al that men wil me yive,  
Algate by sleighte or by violence  
Fro yer to yer I wynne my despenne;  
I can no better telle faithfully.'

'Now certes,' quod this sompneur, 'so fare I;  
I spare not to take, God it woot,  
But-if it be to hevy or to hoot.  
What I may gete in counseil prively,  
No more consciens of that have I. 140  
Nere myn extorcions, I mighte not lyven,  
Ne of such japes I wil not be schriven.  
Stomak ne conscience know I noon;  
I schrew thes schrifte-fadres everychoon.  
Wel be we met, by God and by seint Jame!  
But, leve brother, telle me thy name,  
Quod this sompneur. In this mene-while  
This yeman gan a litel for to smyle.  
'Brothir,' quod he, 'woltow that I the telle?  
I am a feend, my dwellyng is in helle, 150  
And her I ryde about my purchasyng,  
To wito wher men wol yive me eny thing.  
My purchas is theffect of al my rent.



Loke how thou ridest for the same entent  
To wynne good, thou rekkist never how,  
Right so fare I, for ryde I wolde now  
Unto the worldes ende for a pray.'

'A!' quod the sompnour, '*benedicite*, what ye say?

I wende ye were a yeman trewely.

Ye han a mannes schap as wel as I, 160

Have ye a figure than determinate

In helle, ther ye ben in your estate?'

'Nay, certeynly,' quod he, 'ther have we non,

But whan us likith we can take us on,

Or ellis make yow seme that we ben schape

Som tyme like a man, or like an ape;

Or lik *an* aungel ean I ryde or go;

It is no wonder thing though it be so

A lousy jogelour ean deeyve the,

And, parfay, yit can I more craft than he.' 170

'Why,' quod this sompnour, 'ryde ye than or goon

In sondry wyse, and nought alway in oon?'

'For,' quod he, 'we wol us in such forme make,

As most abil is oure pray to take.'

'What makith yow to have al this labour?'

'Ful many a cause, lieve sir sompnour,'

Sayde this feend. 'But al thing hath a tyme;

The day is schort, and it is passed prime,

And yit ne wan I nothing in this day;

I wol entent to wynnyng, if I may, 180

And not entende oure thinges to deelare;

For, brother myn, thy wit is al to bare

To understand, although I told hem the.

For but thou axid whi laboure we;

For som tyme we ben Goddis instrumentes

And menes to don his comaundementes,

Whan that him list, upon his ereatures,  
 In divers aet and in divers figures.  
 Withouten him we have no might certeyn,  
 If that him liste stonde ther ageyn. 190  
 And som tyme at our prayer have we leeve,  
 Only the body, and not the soule greve;  
 Witnes on Jope, whom we dide ful wo.  
 And som tyme have we might of bothe tuo,  
 This is to say of body and soule ecke.  
 And som tyme be we suffred for to seeke  
 Upon a man, and doon his soule unrest  
 And not his body, and al is for the best.  
 Whan he withstondith oure temptaeioun,  
 It is a cause of his savaeioun, 200  
 Al be it so it was nought oure entente  
 He schulde be sauf, but that we wold him hente.  
 And som tyme we ben servaunt unto man,  
 As to therchebissehop seynt Dunstan,  
 And to thapostolis, servaunt was I.'

'Yit tel me,' quod the sompnour, 'faithfully,  
 Make ye yow newe bodies alway  
 Of elementz?' The fend answerde, 'Nay;  
 Som tyme we feyne, and som tyme we ryse  
 With dede bodies, in ful wonder wyse, 210  
 And speke renably, and as fair and wel  
 As to the Phitonissa dede Samuel;  
 And yit wol somme say, it was not he.  
 I do no fors of your divinité.  
 But oon thing warne I the, I wol not jape,  
 Thou wilt algates wite how we ben schape:  
 Thou schalt herafter-ward, my brother deere,  
 Com, wher the nedith nothing for to leere,  
 For thou schalt by thin oughn experiencee

Conne in a chayer reden of this sentence 220  
Bet than Virgile, whils he was on lyve,  
Or Daunt also. Now let us ryde blyve,  
For I wol holde company with the,  
Til it be so that thou forsake me.'

'Nay,' quod the sompnour, 'that schal nought betyde.

I am a yiman that knowen is ful wyde ;

My trouthe wol I holde, as in this caas.

For though thou be the devyl Sathanas,

My trouthe wol I holde to the, my brother,

As I am swore, and ech of us to other, 230

For to be trewe bretheren in this caas ;

For bothe we goon abouten oure purchas.

Tak thou thi part, and that men wil the yyven,

And I schal myn, thus may we bothe lyven.

And if eny of us have more than other,

Let him be trewe, and part it with his brother.'

'I graunte,' quod the devel, 'by my fay !'

And with that word thay riden forth her way ;

And right at the tryng of a townes ende,

To which this sompnour schope him for to wende,

Thay seigh a cart, that chargid was with hay, 241

Which that a carter drof forth in his way.

Deep was the way, for which the carte stood ;

This carter smoot, and cryde as he wer wood,

'Hayt, brok ; hayt, scot ; what spare ye for the  
stoones ?

The fend,' quod he, 'yow fech body and bones,

As ferforthly as ever wer ye folid !

So moche wo as I have with yow tholid !

The devyl have al, both cart and hors and hay !'

This sompnour sayde, 'Her schal we se play.' 250

And ner the feend he drough, as nought ne were,

Ful prively, and rouned in his eere,  
‘Herke, my brother, herke, by thi faith!  
Ne herest nought thou what the earter saith?  
Hent it anoon, for he hath given it the,  
Bothe hay and caples, and eek his cart, pardé!’

‘Nay,’ quod the devyl, ‘God wot, never a del,  
It is nought his entente, trustith wel,  
Ask it thiself, if thou not trowist me,  
Or ellis stint a while and thou schalt se.’ 200

This carter thakketh his hors upon the eroupe,  
And thay bygonne to drawen and to stowpe.  
‘Hayt now,’ quod he, ‘ther Jhesu Crist yow blesse,  
And al his hondwerk, bothe more and lesse!  
That was wel twight, myn oughne lyard boy,  
I pray God save thy body and seint Loy!  
Now is my cart out of the sloo pardé!’

‘Lo! brother,’ quod the feend, ‘what told I the?  
Her may ye seen, myn owne deere brother,  
The earter spak oon thing, and thought another. 270  
Let us go forth abouten our viage;  
Hier wyne I nothing upon cariage.’

Whan that thay comen somewhat out of toune,  
This sompnour to his brothir gan to rounce;  
‘Brothir,’ quod he, ‘her wonyth an old rebekke,  
That had almost as lief to leese hir nekke,  
As for to yive a peny of hir good.  
I wol han twelf pens though that sehe go wood,  
Or I wol somone hir to oure office;  
And yit, God wot, I know of hir no vice. 280  
But for thou eanst not, as in this eontré,  
Wynne thy cost, tak her ensample of me.’  
This sompnour elapped at the widowes gate;  
‘Com out,’ quod he, ‘thou olde viritrate;

I trowe thou hast som frere or prest with the.'  
'Who clappith ther?' sayde this widow, '*benedicite*  
God save yow, sir! what is your swete wille?'  
'I have,' quod he, 'a somonaunce of a bille,  
Up payne of eursyng, loke that thou be  
To morwe biforn our erehedeknes kne, 290  
To answe're to the court of certeyn thinges.'  
'Now,' quod sche, 'Jhesu Crist, and king of kinges,  
So wisly helpe me, as I ne may.  
I have ben seek, and that ful many a day.  
I may not goon so fer;' quod sche, 'ne ryde,  
But I be deed, so prikith it in my syde.  
May I nat aske a lybel, sir sompnour,  
And answer ther by my proeuratour  
To suche thing as men wol oppose me?'  
'Yis,' quod this sompnour, 'pay anoon, let se, 300  
Twelf pens to me, and I the wil acquite.  
I schal no profyt have therby but lite;  
My mayster hath the profyt and not I.  
Com of, and let me ryden hastily;  
Yif me my twelf pens, I may no lenger tarye.'  
'Twelf pens?' quod sche, 'now lady scinte Marye  
So wisly help me out of care and synne,  
This wyde world though that I schulde wynne,  
Ne have I not twelf pens withinne myn hold.  
Ye knowen wel that I am pore and old; 310  
Kithe youre almes on me pore wrecche.'  
'Nay than,' quod he, 'the foule fend me fecche!  
If I thexcuse, though thou sehalt be spilt.'  
'Allas!' quod sche, 'God wot, I have no gilt.'  
'Pay me,' quod he, 'or by the swete seint Anne  
As I wol bere away thy newe panne  
For dette, which thou owest me of old,

Whan that thou madest thin housbond cokewold,  
I payd at hom for thy correccioun.'

'Thou lixt,' quod sche, 'by my savacioun, 320

Ne was I never er now, wydow ne wyf,

Somound unto your court in al my lyf;

Ne never I was but of my body trewe.

Unto the devel rough and blak of hiewe

Yive I thy body and the panne also!'

And whan the devyl herd hir curse so

Upon hir' knees, he sayd in this manere:

'Now, Mabely, myn owne modir decre,

Is this your wil in ernest that ye seye?'

'The devel,' quod sche, 'fecche him er he deye,  
And panne and al, but he wol him repente!' 331

'Nay, olde stot, that is not myn entente,'

Quod this sompnour, 'for to repente me

For eny thing that I have had of the;

I wold I had thy smok and every cloth.'

'Now brothir,' quod the devyl, 'be not wroth;

Thy body and this panne is myn by right.

Thou schalt with me to helle yit to night,

Wher thou schalt knowen of our priveté

More than a maister of divinité.' 340

And with that word the foule fend him hente;

Body and soule, he with the devyl wente,

Wher as the sompnours han her heritage;

And God that maketh after his ymage

Mankynde, save and gyde us alle and some,

And leene this sompnour good man to bycome.

'Lordyngs, I couth han told yow,' quod the frere,

'Had I had leysir for this sompnour here,

After the text of Crist, and Powel, and Jon,

And of *oure* other doctours many oon, 350

Such peynes that our herte might agrise,  
Al be it so, no tonge may devyse,  
Thou that I might a thousand wynter telle,  
The peyn of thilke cursed hous of helle.  
But for to kepe us from that cursed place,  
Wakith, and prayeth Jhesu for his grace,  
So kepe us fro the temptour Sathanas.  
Herknith this word, beth war as in this eas.  
The lyoun syt in his awayt alway  
To slen the innocent, if that he may. 260  
Disposith youre hertes to withstonde  
The fend, that wolde make yow thral and bonde ;  
He may not tempte yow over your might,  
For Crist wol be your champioun and knight ;  
And prayeth, that oure Sompnour him repente  
Of his mysdede, er that the fend him hente.'





## THE SOMPNOURES PROLOGE.



HIS Sompnour in his styrop up he stood,  
 Upon the Frere his herte was so wood,  
 That lyk an aspen leef he quok for ire.  
 ‘Lordyngs,’ quod he, ‘but oon thing I  
 desire;

I yow biseke, that of your curtesye,  
 Syn ye han herd this false Frere lye,  
 As suffrith me I may my tale telle.  
 This Frere bosteth that he knowith helle,  
 And, God it wot, that is litil wonder,  
 Freres and feendes been but litel asonder. 10

For, pardy, ye han often tyme herd telle,  
 How that a frere ravyscht was to helle  
 In spirit ones by a visioun,  
 And as an aungel lad him up and down,  
 To schewen him the peynes that ther were,  
 In al the place saugh he not a frere,  
 Of other folk he saugh y-nowe in wo.

Unto this aungel spak this frere tho :

“Now, sire,” quod he, “han freres such a grace,  
 That noon of hem schal comen in this place?” 20

“Yis,” quod this aungil, “many a mylioun.”

And unto Sathanas he lad him down.


“And now hath Sathanas,” saith he, “a tayl  
 Broder than of a carrik is the sayl.”

“Hold up thy tayl, thou Sathanas,” quod he,

“Schew forth thyn ars, and let the frere se  
 Wher is the nest of freres in this place.”

And er than half a forlong way of space,  
 Right so as bees swarmen out of an hyve,  
 Out of the develes ers thay gonne dryve, 30  
 Twenty thousand freres on a route,  
 And thoroughout helle swarmed al aboute,  
 And comen *ayeine*, as fast as thay maye goon,  
 And in his ers thay crepen everichoon.  
 He clappid his tayl agayn, and lay ful stille.  
 This frere, whan he loked had his fille  
 Upon the torment of this sory place,  
 His spirit God restored of his grace  
 Unto his body agayn, and he awook ;  
 But natheles for fere yit he quook, 40  
 So was the develes ers yit in his mynde,  
 That is his heritage of verray kynde.  
 God save yow alle, save this cursed Frere ;  
 My proloug wol I ende in this manere.'

## THE SOMPNOURES TALE.


 ORDYNGS, ther is in Engelond, I gesse,  
 A mersschly lond called Holdernesse,  
 In which ther went a lymytour aboute  
 To preche, and eek to begge, it is no  
 doubte.

And so bifel it on a day this frere  
 Hadde preched at a chirch in his manere,  
 And specially aboven every thing  
 Excited he the poepul in his preching  
 To trentals, and to yive for Goddis sake,

Wherwith men mighten holy houses make, 10  
 Ther as divine servys is honoured,  
 Nought ther as it is wasted and devoured;  
 Neither it needeth not for to be yive,  
 As to possessioneres, that mow lyve,  
 Thanked be God, in wele and abundaunee.  
 'Trentals,' sayd he, 'delyvereth fro penaunee  
 Her frendes soules, as wel eld. as yonge,  
 Ye, whanne that thay hastily ben songe,  
 Nought for to hold a prest jolif and gay,  
 He syngith not but oon masse in a day. 20  
 Delyverith out *anon*,' quod he, 'the soules.  
 Ful hard it is, with fleisehhok or with oules  
 To ben y-clawed, or brend, or i-bake;  
 Now speed yow hastily for Cristes sake.'

And whan this frere hadde sayd al his entente,  
 With *qui cum patre*, forth *his way* he wente.  
 Whan folk in chireh had yive him what hem leste,  
 He went his way, no lenger wold he reste,  
 With scrip and pyked staf, y-touked hyc;  
 In every hous *he* gan to pore and pry, 30  
 And beggyde mele or chese, or ellis eorn.  
 His felaw had a staf typped with horn,  
 A payr of tablis al of yvory,  
 And a poyntel y-poliseht fetisly,  
 And wroot the names alway as he stood  
 Of alle folk that yaf him eny good,  
 Ascaunee that he wolde for hem preye.  
 'Yif us a busschel whet, or malt, or reye,  
 A Goddes kiehil, or a trip of ehese,  
 Or elles what yow list, we may not ehese; 40  
 A Goddes halpeny, or a masse peny;  
 Or yif us of youre braune, if ye have eny,

A dagoun of your blanket, leeve dame,  
Oure suster deer,—lo! her I write your name—  
Bacoun or beef, or such thing as we fynde.'

A stourdy harlot ay went hem byhynde,  
That was her hostis man, and bar a sak,  
And what men yaf hem, layd it on his bak.  
And whan that he was out atte dore, anoon  
He planed out the names everychoon, 50  
That he biforn hadde writen in his tablis;  
He served hem with nyfles and with fablis.

'Nay, ther thou lixt, thou Sompnour,' sayde the  
Frere.

'Pees,' quod our host, 'for Cristes moder deere,  
Tel forth thy tale, and spare it not at al.'

'So thrive I,' quod the Sompnour, 'so I schal!'

So long he wente hous by hous, til he  
Cam til an hous, ther he was wont to be  
Refresshid mor than in an hundrid placis.  
Syk lay the housbond man, whos that the place is, 60  
Bedred upon a couche lowe he lay.

'*Deus hic*,' quod he, 'O Thomas, frend, good day!  
Sayde this frere al curteysly and softe.

'O Thomas, God yeld it yow, ful ofte  
Have I upon this bench i-fare ful wel,  
Her have I eten many a mery mel.'  
And fro the bench he drof away the cat,  
And layd adoun his potent and his hat,  
And eek his scrip, and set him soft adoun;  
His felaw was go walkid in the toun 70  
Forth with his knave, into the ostelrye,  
Wher as he schop him thilke night to lye.

'O deere maister,' quod the seeke man,  
'How have yo fare siththe March bygan?

I saygh yow nought this fourtenight or more.'

'God wot,' quod he, 'labord have I ful sore;  
And specially for thy salvacioun  
Have I sayd many a precious orisoun,  
And for myn other frendes, God hem blesse.  
I have to day ben at your chirche at messe, 80  
And sayd a sermoun after my simple wit,  
Nought al after the text of holy wryt.  
For it is hard for yow, as I suppose,  
And therfor wil I teche yow ay the glose.  
Glosyng is a ful glorious thing certayn,  
For letter sleth, so as we clerkes sayn.  
Ther have I taught hem to be chariteable,  
And spend her good ther it is reasonable;  
And there I seigh our dame, wher is she?'  
'Yond in the yerd I trowe that sche be,' 90  
Sayde this man, 'and sche wil come anon.'

'Ey, mayster, welcome be ye, by seint Johan!'  
Sayde this wyf, 'how fare ye hertily?'

The frere ariseth up ful curteysly,  
And her embracith in his armes narwe,  
And kist hir swete, and chirkith as a sparwe  
With his lippes: 'Dame,' quod he, 'right wel,  
As he that is your servaunt everydel.  
Thankyd be God, that yow yaf soule and lif,  
Yit saugh I not this day so fair a wyf 100  
In al the chirche, God so save me.'

'Ye, God amend defautes, sir,' quod sche,  
'Algates welcome be ye, by my fay.'  
'Graunt mercy, dame; this have I found alway.  
But of your grete goodnes, by youre leve,  
I wolde pray yow that ye yow not greeve,  
I wil with Thomas speke a litel throwe;

These curates ben ful negligent and slowe  
 To grope tendurly a conscience.  
 In schrift and preching is my diligence, 110  
*And* study in Petres wordes and in Poules,  
 I walk and fische Cristen mennes soules,  
 'To yelde Jhesu Crist his propre rent ;  
 'To spreden his word is al myn entent.'

' Now, by your leve, o deere sir,' quod sche,  
 ' Chyd him right wel for seinte Trinite.  
 He is as angry as a pissemyre,  
 Though that he have al that he can desire,  
 Though I him wrye on night, and make him warm,  
 And over him lay my leg other myn arm, 120  
 He groneth lik our boor, that lith in sty.  
 Othir disport of him right noon have I,  
 I may please him in no maner caas.'

' O Thomas, *jeo vous dy*, Thomas, Thomas,  
 'This makth the feend, this moste ben amendid.  
 Ire is a thing that highe God defendid,  
 And therof wold I speke a word or tuo.'

' Now, maister,' quod the wyf, ' er that I go,  
 What wil ye dine? I will go theraboutte.'  
 ' Now, dame,' quod he, '*jeo vous dy saunz doute*, 130  
 Have I not of a capoun but the lyvere,  
 And of your softe brede but a schivere,  
 And after that a rostyd pigges heed,  
 (But that I wolde for me no best were deed)  
 Than had I with yow homly suffisaunce.  
 I am a man of litel sustinaunce.

My spirit hath his fostryng on the Bible.  
 The body is ay so redy and so penyble  
 To wake, that my stomak is destroyed.  
 I pray yow, dame, that ye be not anoyed, 140

For I so frendly yow my counseil schewe ;  
By *God!* I nolde not telle it but a fewe.'

' Now, sir,' quod sche, ' but o word er I go.  
My child is deed withinne thise wykes tuo,  
Soon after that ye went out of this toun.'

' His deth saugh I by revelacioun,'  
Sayde this frere, ' at hoom in oure dortour.  
I dar wel sayn, er that half an hour  
After his deth, I seigh him born to blisse  
In myn avysioun, so God me wisse.

150

So did our sextein, and our fermerere,  
That han ben trewe freres many a yere ;  
Thay may now, God be thanked of his lone,  
Maken her jubilé, and walk alloone.

But up I roos, and al our eovent eeke,  
With many a teere trilling on my cheeke,  
*Te Deum* was our song, and nothing ellis,  
Withouten noys or clateryng of bellis,  
Save that to Crist I sayd an orisoun,  
Thankyng him of my revelacioun.

160

For, sire and dame, trustith me right wel,  
Our orisouns ben more effectuel,  
And more we se of Goddis seeré thinges,  
Than borel folk, although that thay ben kinges.  
We lyve in povert and in abstinenece,  
And borel folk in riches and dispence  
Of mete and drink, and in her ful delyt.  
We han this worldes *lust* al in despyt.  
Lazar and Dives lyveden diversely.

And divers guerdoun hadde thay thereby.

Who-so wol praye, *he muste* faste, and be clene,  
And fatte his soule, and make his body lene.  
We faren, as saith thapostil; eloth and food

170



Sufficeth us, though that thay ben not goode.  
The clenness and the fastyng of us freres  
Makith that Crist acceptith oure prayeres.  
Lo, Moyses fourty dayes and fourty night  
Fasted, er that the highe God of might  
Spak with him in the mount of Synay;  
With empty wombe fastyng many a day, 180  
Receyved he the lawe, that was writen  
With Goddis fynger; and *Eli*, wel ye *witen*,  
In mount Oreb, or he had any speche  
With highe God, that is oure lyves leche,  
He fastid, and was in contemplacioun.  
Aron, that hadde the temple in governacioun,  
And eek the other prestes everychoon,  
Into the temple whan thay schulden goon  
To preye for the poeple, and doon servise,  
Thay nolden drinken in no maner wise 190  
No drynke, which that dronke might hem make,  
But ther in abstinence prey and wake,  
Lest that they diden; tak heed what I saye—  
But thay ben sobre that for the pepul praye—  
War that I say—no mor; for it suffisith.  
Oure Lord Jhesu, as oure lore devysith,  
Yaf us ensampil of fastyng and prayeres;  
Therfore we mendivantz, we sely freres,  
Ben wedded to povert and to continence,  
To charité, humblesse, and abstinence, 200  
To persecucioun for rightwisnesse,  
To wepyng, misericord, and clenness.  
And therfor may ye seen that oure prayeres  
(I speke of us, we mendeaunts, we freres)  
Ben to the hihe God more acceptable  
Than youres, with your festis at your table.

Fro Paradis first, if I schal not lye,  
Was man out chaced for his glotonye,  
And chast was man in Paradis certeyn.  
But now herk, Thomas, what I schal the seyn, 210  
I ne have no tixt of it, as I suppose,  
But I schal fynd it in a maner glose ;  
That specially our swete Lord Jhesus  
Spak this by freres, whan he sayde thus,  
Blessed be thay that pover in spirit ben.  
And so forth in the gospel ye maye seen,  
Whether it be likir oure professioun,  
Or heris that swymmen in possessioun.  
Fy on her pomp, and on her glotenye,  
And on her lewydnesse ! I hem defye. 220  
Me thinkith thay ben lik Jovynian,  
Fat as a whal, and walken as a swan ;  
Al vinolent as botel in the spence.  
Her prayer is of ful gret reverence ;  
Whan thay for soules sayn the Psalm of David,  
Lo, boef thay say, *Cor meum eructavit*.  
Who folwith Cristes gospel and his lore  
But we, that humble ben, and chast, and pore,  
Workers of Goddes word, not auditours ?  
Therfor right as an hawk upon a sours 230  
Upspringeth into thaer, right so prayeres  
Of charitabil and chaste busy freres  
Maken our sours to Goddis keres tuo.  
Thomas, Thomas, so mote I ryde or go,  
And by that Lord that clepid is seint Ive,  
Ner thou oure brother, schuldestow never thrive.  
In oure chapitre pray we day and night  
To Crist, that he the sende hele and might  
Thy body for to welden hastily.'

‘God wot,’ quod he, ‘therof nought feele I, 240  
As help me Crist, as I in fewe yeeres  
Have spendid upon many diveris freres  
Ful many a pound, yet fare I never the bet;  
Certeyn my good have I almost byset.  
Farwel my gold, for it is almost ago.’  
The frere answerd, ‘O Thomas, dostow so?  
What needith yow dyverse freres seeche?  
What needith him that hath a parfyt leche  
To seechen othir leeches in the toun?  
Youre inconstanee is youre confusioun. 250  
Holde ye than me, or elles oure covent,  
To praye for yow insuffieient?  
Thomas, that jape is not worth a myte;  
Youre malady is for we have to lite.  
A! yive that covent half a quarter otes;  
A! yive that covent four and twenty grotes;  
A! yive that frere a peny, and let him go;  
Nay, nay, Thomas, it may nought be so.  
What is a ferthing worth depart in tuelve?  
Lo, eeh thing that is ooned in himselve 260  
Is more strong than whan it is to-skatrid.  
Thomas, of me thou schalt not ben y-flatrid,  
Thow woldist have our labour al for nought.  
The hihe God, that al this world hath wrought  
Saith, that a werkman is worthy his hyre.  
Thomas, nought of your tresor I desire  
As for myself, but for that oure covent  
To praye for yow is ay so diligent;  
And for to buylden Cristes holy chirehe.  
Thomas, if ye wil lerne for to wirehe, 270  
Of buyldyng up of chirehes may ye fynde  
If it be good, in Thomas lyf of Ynde.

Ye lye her ful of anger and of ire,  
With which the devel set your hert on fuyre,  
And chyden her the holy innoeent  
Your wyf, that is so meke and pacient.  
And therfor trow me, Thomas, if thou list,  
Ne stryve nought with thy wyf, as for thi best  
And ber this word away now by thy faith,  
Touchinge such thing, lo, the wise man saith, 280  
Withinne thin hous be thou no lyoun;  
To thy subjects do noon oppressioun;  
Ne make thyn acqueyntis fro the fle.  
And yit, Thomas, eftsons I charge the,  
Be war for ire that in thy bosom slepith,  
War for the serpent, that so *slely* crepith  
Under the gras, and styngith prively;  
Be war, my sone, and werk paciently,  
For twenty thousand men han lost her lyves  
For stryvyng with her lemmans and her wyves. 290  
Now syns ye han so holy and meeke a wif,  
What nedith yow, Thomas, to make strif?  
Ther nys, i-wis, no serpent so cruel,  
When men trede on his tail, ne half so fel,  
As womman is, when sche hath caught an ire:  
Vengeans is thanne al that thay desire.  
Schortly may no man, by rym and vers,  
Tellen her thoughtes, thay ben so dyvers.  
Ire is a *sinne*, oon the grete of sevene,  
Abhominable to the God of hevene, 300  
And to himself it is destruceioun.  
This every lewed vicory or parsoun  
Can say, how ire engendriþ homicide;  
Ire is in soth exceutour of pride.  
I couthe of ire seyn so moeche sorwe,

My tale schulde laste til to morwe.  
Ire is the grate of synne, as saith the wise,  
To fle therfro ech man schuld him devyse.  
And therfor pray I God bothe day and night,  
An irous man God send him litil might. 310  
It is greet harm, and also great pité,  
To set an irous man in high degré.

‘ Whilom ther was an irous potestate,  
As seith Senek, that duryng his estaat  
Upon a day out riden knightes tuo ;  
And, as fortune wolde right as it were so,  
That oon of hem eam home, that other nought.  
Anoon the knight bifore the juge is brought,  
That sayde thus, Thou hast thy felaw slayn,  
For which I deme the to deth certayn 320  
And to anothir knight eemaundid he,  
Go, lede him to the deth, I charge the.  
And happed, as thay wente by the weye  
Toward the place ther he schulde deye,  
The knight eom, which men wend hadde be deed.  
Than thoughten thay it were the beste reed  
To lede hem bothe to the juge agayn.  
Thay sayden, Lord, the knight hath not slayn  
His felaw ; lo, heer he stont hool on lyve.  
Ye schal be deed, quod he, so mote I thrive ! 330  
That is to sayn, bothe oon, tuo, and thre.  
And to the firste knyght right thus spak he ;  
I deme the, thou most algate be deed.  
Than thoughte thay it were the beste rede,  
To lede him forth into a fair mede.  
And, quod the juge, also thou most lese thin heed,  
For thou art cause why thy felaw deyth.  
And to the thridde felaw thus he seith ;

Thou hast nought doon that I comaundid the.  
And thus let don sle hem alle thre. 340  
Irous Cambises was eek dronkelewe,  
And ay delited him to ben a schrewe ;  
And so bifel, a lord of his meigné,  
That loved vertues, and eek moralité,  
Sayd on a day bitwix hem tuo right thus,  
A lord is lost, if he be vicious ;  
An irous man is lik a frentik best,  
In which ther is of wisdom noon arrest ;  
And dronkenes is eek a foul record  
Of any man, and namly of a lord. 550  
Ther is ful many an cyghe and many an cere  
Awaytand on a lord, and he not where.  
For Goddes love, drynk more attemperelly :  
Wyn makith man to lese wrecchedly  
His mynde, and eek his lymes everichoon.  
The revers schaltow seen quod he, anoon,  
And prove it by thin owne experience,  
That wyn ne doth to folk non such offence.  
Ther is no won byreveth me my wight  
Of hond, of foot, ne of myn eyghe sight. 360  
And for despyt he dronke moche more  
An hundrid part than he hadde doon byfore ;  
And right anoon, this irous cursid wrecche  
Let this knightes sone anoon biforn him fecche.  
Comaundyng hem thay schulde biforn him stonde ;  
And sodeinly he took his bowe on honde,  
And up the streng he pullede to his cere,  
And with an arwe he slough the child right there.  
Now whethir have I a sikur hond or noon ?  
Quod he, Is al my mynde and might agoon ? 370  
Hath wyn byrevyd me myn eye sight ?

What schuld I telle the answer of the knight ?  
His sone was slayn, ther is no more to saye.  
Be war therfor with lordes how ye playe,  
Syngith *Placebo*, and I schal if I can.  
But-if it be unto a pore man ;  
To a pore man men schuld his vices telle,  
But not to a lord, they he schulde go to helle.  
Lo, irous Cirus thilke Percien,  
How he destruyede the ryver of Gysen, 380  
For that an hors of his was dreynt therinne,  
Whan that he wente Babiloyne to wyne :  
He made that the ryver was so smal,  
That wommen mighte wade it overal.  
Lo, what sayde he, that so wel teeche can ?  
Ne be no felaw to an irous man,  
Ne with no wood man walke by the waye,  
Lest the repent. I wel no lenger saye.  
Now, Thomas, leve brother, leve thin ire,  
Thow schalt me fynde as just as is a squire ; 390  
Thyn anger doth the al to sore smerte,  
Hald not the develes knyf *ay* at thyn herte,  
But schewe to me al thy confessioun.'

'Nay,' quod this syke man, 'by seynt Symoun,  
I have ben schriven this day of my curate :  
I have him told holly al myn estate.  
Nedith no more to speken of it, saith he,  
But if me list of myn humilité.'

'Yif me than of thy good to make our cloyster,'  
Quod he, 'for many a muscle and many an oyster  
Hath ben oure foode, our cloyster to arreyse, 401  
Whan other men han ben ful wel at eyse ;  
And yit, God wot, unnethe the foundement  
Parformed is, ne of oure pavyment



Is nought a tyle yit withinne our wones ;  
 By God, we owe yit fourty pound for stones.  
 Now help, Thomas, for him that harewed helle,  
 Or elles moote we oure bookes selle ;  
 And yif yow lakke oure predicacioun,  
 Thanne goth the world al to destruccioun. 410  
 For who-so wold us fro the world byreve,  
 So God me save, Thomas, by youre leve,  
 He wolde byreve out of this world the sonne.  
 For who can teche and werken as we conne ?  
 And this is not of litel tyme,' quod he,  
 ' But siththen Elye was her, or Elisee,  
 Han freres ben, fynde I of record,  
 In charite, i-thanked be cure Lord.  
 Now, Thomas, help for seynte Charité.'  
 Adoun he sette him anoon on his kne. 420

This sike man wex wel neigh wood for ire,  
 He wolde that the frere had ben on fuyre  
 With his fals dissimulacioun.  
 ' Such thing as is in my possessioun,'  
 Quod he, ' that may I yeve yow and noon other ;  
 Ye sayn me thus, how that I am your brother.'  
 ' Ye certes,' quod the frere, ' trusteth wel ;  
 I took our dame the letter, under our sel.'  
 ' Now wel,' quod he, ' and somewhat schal I yive  
 Unto your holy convent whils that I lyve ; 430  
 And in thyn hond thou schalt it have anoon,  
 On this condicioun, and other noon,  
 That thou depart it so, my deere brother,  
 That every frere have as moche as other,  
 Thys schaltow swere on thy professioun,  
 Withouten fraude or cavillacioun.'  
 ' I swere it,' quod this frere, ' upon my faith.'

And therwith his hond in his he laith ;  
 ‘ Lo her myn hond, in me schal be no lak.’  
 ‘ Now thanne, put thyn hond down at my bak,’ 440  
 Sayde this man, ‘ and grop wel byhynde,  
 Bynethe my buttok, there schaltow fynde  
 A thing, that I have hud in priveté.’  
 ‘ A ! thought this frere, ‘ that schal go with me.’  
 And doun his hond he launehede to the clifte,  
 In hope for to fynde ther a yifte.

And whan this syke man felte this frere  
 Aboute his tuel grope ther and heere,  
 Amyd his hond he leet the freere a fart ;  
 Ther is no eapul drawyng in a eart 450  
 That might have let a fart of such a soun.  
 The frere upstart, as doth a wood lyoun :  
 ‘ A ! false eherl,’ quod he, ‘ for Goddes bones !  
 This hastow in despit don for the noones ;  
 Thou schalt abyte this fart, if that I may.’

His meyné, which that herd of this affray,  
 Com lepan and in, and ehased out the frere.  
 And forth he goth with a foul angry cheere,  
 And fat his felaw, there as lay his stoor ;  
 He lokid as it were a wylde boor, 460  
 And grynte with his teeth, so was he wroth.  
 A stordy paas doun to the court he goth,  
 Wher as ther wonyd a man of gret honour,  
 To whom that he was alway confessour ;  
 This worthy man was lord of that village.  
 This frere com, as he were in a rage,  
 Wher that this lord sat etyng at his bord :  
 Unnethe mighte the frere speke a word,  
 Til atte last he sayde, ‘ God yow se !’  
 This lord gan loke, and sayde, *Benedicite !* 470

What, frere Johan ! what maner world is this ?  
 I se *right* wel that som thing is amys ;  
 Ye loke as though the woode were ful of thevys.  
 Sit doun anoon, and tel me what your gref is,  
 And it schal ben amendit, if that I may.'

' I have,' quod he, ' had a despit to day,  
 God yelde yow; adoun in youre vilage,  
 That in this world is noon so pore a page,  
 That he nold have abhominacioun  
 Of that I have receyved in youre toun ; 490  
 And yet ne grevith me no thing so sore,  
 As that this elde cherl, with lokkes hore,  
 Blasphemed hath our holy covent eeke.'  
 ' Now, maister,' quod this lord, ' I yow biseke.'  
 ' No maister, sir,' quod he, ' but servitour,  
 Though I have had in scole such honour.  
 God likith not that Raby men us calle,  
 Neither in market, neyther in your large halle.'  
 ' No fors,' quod he, ' tellith me al your greef.'  
 This frere sayde, ' Sire, an odious meschief 490  
 This day bytid is to myn ordre and to me,  
 And so *par consequens* to ech degré  
 Of holy chirche, God amend it soone !'  
 ' Sir,' quod the lord, ' ye wot what is to doone ;  
 Distempre yow nought, ye ben my confessour,  
 Ye ben the salt of therthe, and savyour :  
 For Goddes love, youre paciencce ye holde ;  
 Tel me your greef.' And he anoon him tolde  
 As ye han herd bifore, ye wot wel what.

The lady of that hous ay stille sat, 500  
 Til she had herd what the frere sayde.  
 ' Ey Goddes moodir !' quod she, ' blisful mayde !  
 Is ther ought elles ? tel me faithfully.'

‘Madame,’ quod he, ‘how thynke yow therby?’  
‘How that me thynkith?’ quod she; ‘so God me  
speede!’

I say, a cherl hath doon a cherles deede.  
What schuld I say? God let him never the!  
His syke heed is full of vanyté.  
I hold him in a maner frenesye.’

‘Madame,’ quod he, ‘I-wis I schal not lye, 510  
But I in othir wise may be a wreke,  
I schal defame him overal wher I speke;  
The false blasfememour, that chargide me  
To parten that wil not departed be,  
To every man y-liche, with meschaunce!’

The lord sat stille, as he were in a traunce,  
And in his hert he rollid up and down,  
‘How hadde this cherl ymaginacioun  
To schewe such a probleme to the frere?  
Never erst er now herd I of such matiere; 520  
I trowe tho devel put it in his mynde.

In arsmetrik schal ther no man fynde  
Biforn this day of such a questioun.  
Who schulde make a demonstracioun,  
That every man schuld have alyk his part  
As of a soun or savour of a fart?

O nyce proude cherl, I schrew his face!  
Lo, sires,’ quod the lord, with harde grace,  
‘Who ever herde of such a thing er now?  
To every man y-like? tel me how. 530

It is impossible, it may not be.  
Ey, nyce cherl, God let him never the!  
The romblyng of a fart, and every soun,  
Nis but *of* aier reverberacioun,  
And ever it wastith lyte and lyt away;

Ther nys no man can deme, by my fay,  
 If that it were departed equally.  
 What, lo, my cherl, what, lo, how schrewedly  
 Unto my confessour to day he spak!  
 I hold him certainly demoniak.

540

Now etith your mete, and let the cherl go play,  
 Let him go honge himself on devel way !'

Now stood the lordes squier at the bord,  
 That carf his mete, and herde word by word  
 Of al this thing, which that I of have sayd.  
 ' My lord,' quod he, ' be ye nought evel payd,  
 I couthe telle for a gowne-cloth

To yow, sir frere, so that ye be not wroth,  
 How that this fart even departed schulde be  
 Among your covent, if I comaunded be.

550

' Tel,' quod the lord, ' and thou schalt have anon  
 A gowne-cloth, by God, and by Seint Johan !'

' My lord,' quod he, ' whan that the wedir is fair,  
 Withoute wynd, or pertourbyng of ayr,  
 Let bring a carte whel her into this halle,  
 But *loke* that it have his spokes alle ;  
 Twelf spokes hath a cart whel comunly ;  
 And bring me twelve freres, wit ye why ?

For threttene is a covent as I gesse ;  
 Your noble confessour, her God him blesse,  
 Schal parfourn up the nombre of this covent.  
 Thanne schal they knele down by oon assent,

260


And to every spokes ende in this manere  
 Ful sadly lay his nose schal *ech* a frere ;  
 Your noble confessour ther, God him save,  
 Schal hold his nose upright under the nave.  
 Than schal this churl, with bely stif and tought  
 As eny tabor, hider ben y-brought ;

And sette him on the whele of this cart  
Upon the nave, and make him lete a fart, 570  
And ye schul seen, up peril of my lif,  
By verray proof that is demonstratif,  
That equally the soun of it wol wende,  
And eek the styng, unto the spokes ende ;  
Save that this worthy man, your confessor,  
(Bycause he is a man of gret honour)  
Schal have the firste fruyt, as resoun is.  
The noble usage of freres is this,  
The worthy men of hem first schal be served.  
And certeynly he hath it wel deserved ; 580  
He hath to day taught us so mochil good,  
With preching in the pulpit ther he stood,  
That I may vouchesauf, I say for me,  
He hadde the firste smel of fartes thre ;  
And so wold al his covent hardily,  
He berith him so fair and holily.'

The lord, the lady, and ech man, sauf the frere,  
Sayde *that* Jankyn spak in this matiere  
As wel as Euclide, or elles Phtolomé.  
Touchand the cherl, thay sayde that subtilté 590  
And high wyt made him speken as he spak ;  
He nas no fool, ne no demoniak.  
And Jankyn hath i-wonne a newe gounce ;  
My tale is don, we ben almost at toun.

THE CLERK OF OXENFORDES PROLOGE.

**S**IR Clerk of Oxenford,' our hoste sayde,  
' Ye ryde as stille and eoy as doth a  
mayde,

 Were newespoused, sittying at the bord;

This day ne herd I of your mouth a word.

I trowe ye study aboute som sophime;

But Salomon saith, every thing hath tyme.

For Goddis sake ! as beth of better cheere,

It is no tyme for to stodye hie.

Tel us som mery tale, by your fay ;

For what man is entred unto play,

10

He moot nedes unto that play assente.

But preeth not, as freres don in Lente,

To make us for our olde synnes wepe,

Ne that thy tale make us for to slepe.

Tel us som mery thing of adventures.

Yours termes, your colours, and your figures,

Keep hem in stoor, til so be that ye endito

High style, as whan that men to kynges write.

Spekith so playn at this tyme, we yow praye,

'That we may understonde that ye saye.'

20

This worthy Clerk benignely answerde ;

‘ Sir host,’ quod he, ‘ I am under your yerde,

Ye have of us as now the governaunce,

And therfor wol I do yow obeissaunce,

As fer as resoun askith hardily.

I wil yow telle a tale, which that I

Lerned at Padowe of a worthy clerk,



As provyd by his wordes and his werk.  
 He is now deed, and nayled in his ehest,  
 Now God yive his soule wel good rest ! 30  
 Fraunces Petrark, the laureat poete,  
 Highto this elerk, whos rethorique swete  
 Enlumynd al Ytail of poetrie,  
 As Linian did of philosophie,  
 Or lawue, or other art particulere ;  
 But deth, that wol not suffre us duellen heere,  
 But as it were a twyneling of an ye,  
 Hem bothe hath slayn, and alle schul *we* dye.  
 But forth to telle of this worthy man,  
 That taughte me this tale, as I first bigan, 40  
 I say that he first with heigh stile enditith  
 (Er he the body of his tale writith)  
 A proheme, in the which deserivith he  
*Piemounde*, and of *Saluces* the contre,  
 And spekith of *Appenyne* the hulles hye,  
 That ben the boundes of al west *Lombardye* ;  
 And of mount *Vesulus* in speeial,  
 Wher as the Poo out of a welle smal  
 Takith his firste springyng and his sours,  
 That est-ward ay enereseeth in his eours 50  
 To *Emyl-ward*, to *Ferare*, and to *Venise*,  
 The which a long thing were to devyse.  
 And trewely, as to my juggement,  
 Me thinketh it a thing impertinent,  
 Save that he wolde conveyen his matiere ;  
 But this is the tale which that ye schuln heere.'

## THE CLERKES TALE.

**H**ER is at the west ende of Ytaile,  
 Doun at the root of Vesulus the colde,  
 A lusty playn, abundaunt of vitaile,  
 Wher many a tour and toun thou maist  
 byholde,

That foundid were in tyme of fadres olde,  
 And many anothir delitable sight,  
 And Saluces this noble contray hight.

A marquys whilom duellid in that lond,  
 As were his worthy eldris him bifore,  
 And obeisaunt ay redy to his hond, 10  
 Were alle his liegis, bothe lesse and more.  
 Thus in delyt he lyveth and hath don yore,  
 Biloved and drad, thurgh favour of fortune,  
 Bothe of his lordes and of his comune.

Therwith he was, as to speke of lynage,  
 The gentileste born of Lumbardye,  
 A fair persone, and strong, and yong of age,  
 And ful of honour and of curtesie;  
 Diseret y-nough his contré for to gye,  
 Savynge in som thing he was to blame; 20  
 And Wautier was this yonge lordes name.

I blame him thus, that he considerede nought  
 In tyme comyng what mighte bityde,  
 But on his lust present was al his thought,  
 As for to hauke and hunte on every syde;  
 Wel neigh al othir eures let he slyde,  
 And eek he nolde (that was the worst of alle)

Wedde no wyf for no thing that mighte bifalle.

Only that poynt his poeple bar so sore,  
That flokmel on a day to him thay wente, 30  
And oon of hem, that wisest was of lore,  
(Or elles that the lord wolde best assente  
That he schuld tello him what his poeple mente,  
Or ellis couthe he schewe wel such matiere)  
He to the marquys sayd as ye schuln hiere.

‘ O noble marquys, youre humanité.  
Assureth us and yiveth us hardynesse,  
As ofte as tyme is of necessité,  
That we to yow may telle oure hevynesse ;  
Acceptith, lord, now of your *gentillesse*, 40  
That we with pitous hert unto yow playne,  
And let your ceris not my vois disdeyne.

‘ And have I nought to doon in this matere  
More than another man hath in this place,  
Yit for as moche as ye, my lord so deere,  
Han alway schewed me favour and grace,  
I dar the better ask of yow a space  
Of audience, to *schewen* oure request,  
And ye, my lord, to doon right as yow lest.

‘ For certes, lord, so wel us likith yow 50  
And al your werk, and ever han doon, that we  
Ne couthen not ourselve devysen how  
We mighte lyve more in felicité ;  
Save oon thing, lord, if that your wille be,  
That for to be weddid man yow list  
Than were your pepel in sovereign hertes rest.

‘ Bowith your neck undir that blisful yok  
Of sovereigneté, nought of servise,  
Which that men clepe spousail or wedlok ;  
And thenkith, lord, among your thoughtes wise, 60

How that our dayes passe in sondry wyse ;  
For though we slepe, or wake, or rome, *or ryde*,  
Ay fleth the tyme, it wil no man abyde.

‘ And though your grene youthe floure as yit,  
In crespith age alway as stille as stoon,  
And deth manasith every age, and smyt  
In ech estat, for ther aseapith noon.  
And as certeyn, as we knowe everychon  
That we schuln deye, as uncerteyn we alle  
Ben of that day that deth schal on us falle. 70

“ Acceptith thanne of us the trewe entente,  
That never yit refuside youre hest,  
And we wil, lord, if that ye wil assente,  
Chese yow a wyf, in schort tyme atte lest,  
Born of the gentilest and the heighest  
Of al this lond, so that it oughte seme  
Honour to God and yow, as we can deme.

‘ Deliver us out of al this busy drede  
And tak a wyf, for hihe Goddes sake.  
For if it so bifel, as God forbede, 80  
That thurgh your deth your lignage schuld aslake,  
And that a straunge successour schulde take  
Your heritage, O ! wo were us on lyve !  
Wherfor we praye yow hastily to wyve.’

Her meeke prayer and her pitous chere  
Made the marquys for to han pité.  
‘ Ye wolde,’ quod he, ‘ myn owne poeple deere,  
To that I never erst thought constreigne me.  
I me rejoysid of my liberté,  
That selden tyme is founde in mariage ; 90  
Ther I was fre, I mot ben in servage.

‘ But natheles I se of you the trewe entente,  
And trust upon your witt, and have doon ay ;

Wherfor of my fre wil I wil assente  
To wedde me, as soon as ever I may.  
But ther as ye have profred me to day  
To chese me a wyf, I wol relese  
That choys, and pray yow of that profre cesse.

‘ For God it woot, that childer ofte been  
Unlik her worthy eldris hem bifore ; 100  
Bounté cometh al of God, nought of the streen  
Of which thay ben engendrid and i-bore.  
I trust in Goddis bounté, and therfore  
My mariage, and myn estat and rest,  
I him bytake, he may doon as him lest.

‘ Let me aloon in chesyng of my wif,  
That charge upon my bak I wil endure.  
But I yow pray, and charge upon your lyf,  
That *what* wyf that I take, ye me assure  
To worschippe whil that hir lif may endure, 110  
In word and werk, bothe heer and every where,  
As sehe an emperoures doughter were.

‘ And forthermor thus schul ye swere, that ye  
Ayeins my chois schuln never grueche ne stryve,  
For sins I schal forgo my libérté  
At your request, as ever mot I thrive,  
Ther as myn hert is set, ther wil I wyve.  
And but ye wil assent in such manere,  
I pray yow spek no more of this matiere.’

With hertly wil thay sworn and assentyn 120  
To al this thing, ther sayde no wight nay,  
Byseehyng him of grace, er that thay wentyn,  
That he wolde graunten hem a certeyn day  
Of his spousail, as soone as ever he may ;  
For yit alway the peple som what dredde  
Lest that the marquys wolde no wyf wedde.

He graunted hem a day, such as him leste,  
 On which he wolde be weddid sieurly ;  
 And sayd he dedo al this at her requeste.  
 And thay with humble hert ful buxomly, 130  
 Knelyng upon her knees ful reverently,  
 Him thanken alle, and thus thay have an ende  
 Of her entent, and hom ayein they wende.

And herupon he to his officeris  
 Comaundith for the feste to purveye,  
 And to his privé knightes and squyeres  
*Suche* echarge yaf as him list on hem leye :  
 And thay to his comaundement obeye,  
 And eeh of hem doth his diligence  
 To doon unto the feste reverence. 140

## PARS SECUNDA.

**N**UGHT fer fro thilke palys honorable,  
 Wher as this marquys sehophis mariage,  
 Ther stood a throp, of sighte delitable,  
 In which that pore folk of that vilage  
 Hadden her bestes and her herburgage,  
 And after her labour took her sustienauce,  
 After the erthe yaf hem abundaunce.

Among this pore folk there duelt a man,  
 Whieh that was holden porest of hem alle ;  
 But heighe God som tyme sende can 10  
 His grace unto a litel oxe stalle.  
 Janieula men of that throop him calle.  
 A doughter had he, fair y-nough to sight,  
 And Grisildes this yonge *mayden* hight.

But for to speke of hir vertuous beauté,  
 Than was sche oon the fayrest under the sonne ;  
 For porely i-fostered up was sche,  
 No licorous lust was in *hir* body ronno ;  
 Wel ofter of the welle than of the tonne  
 She dronk, and for sche wolde vertu please, 29  
 Sche knew wel labour, but noon ydel ease.

But though this mayden tender were of age,  
 Yet in the brest of her virginité  
 Ther was enclosed rype and sad corrage ;  
 And in gret reverence and charité  
 Hir olde pore fader fostered sche ;  
 A fewe scheep spynnyng on the feld sche kepte,  
 Sche nolde not ben ydel til sche slepte.

And when sche hom-ward com sche wolde brynge  
 Wortis or other herbis tymes ofte, 30  
 The which sche schred and seth for her lyvyng,  
 And made hir bed ful hard, and nothing soft.  
 And ay sche kept hir fadres lif on lofte,  
 With every obeissance and diligence,  
 That child may do to fadres reverence.

Upon Grisildes, the pore creature,  
 Ful ofte sithes this marquys set is ye,  
 As he on huntynge rood par aventure.  
 And whan it fel he mighte hir espye,  
 He not with wantoun lokyng of folye 40  
 His eyghen cast upon hir, but in sad wyse  
 Upon hir cheer he wold him oft avise,

Comendyng in his hert hir wommanhede,  
 And eek hir vertu, passyng any other wight  
 Of so yong age, as wel in cheer as dede.  
 For though the poeple have no gret insight  
 In vertu, he considereth aright



Hir bounté, and desposede that he wolde  
Wedde hir oonly, if ever he wedde scholde.

The day of weddyng eam, but no wight ean 50  
Telle what womman it schulde be ;

For which mervayle wondrith many a man,  
And sayden, whan they were in privité,  
' Wol nought our lord yit leve his vanité ?  
Wol he not wedde ? allas the while !

Why wol he thus himself and us bigyle ?

But natheles this marquys hath doon make  
Of gemmes, set in gold and in asure,  
Broches and rynges, for Grisildes sake,  
And of hir clothing took he the mesure, 60  
By a mayde y-lik to hir of stature,  
And eek of other ornamentes alle  
That unto such a weddyng schulde falle.

The tyme of undern of the same day  
Approchith, that this weddyng schulde be,  
And al the palyz put was in array,  
Bothe halle and chambur, y-lik here degré,  
Houses of office stuffid with plenté ;  
Ther maystow se of deyntevous vitayle,  
That may be founde, as fer as lastith Itaile. 70

This real marquys, really arrayd,  
Lordes and ladyes in this compaignye,  
The which unto the feste were prayed,  
And of his retenu the bachelerie.  
With many a soun of sondry melodye,  
Unto the vilage, of which I tolde,  
In this array the right way han they holde.

Grysild of this (God wot) ful innocent,  
That for hir sehapen was al this array,  
To fecche water at a welle is went, 80

And cometh hom as soone as *ever* sche may,  
 For wel sche had herd saye, that ilke day  
 The marquys schulde wedde, and, if sche mighte,  
 Sche wold have seyen somewhat of that sighte.

Sche sayd, ‘ I wol with other maydenes stonde,  
 That ben my felawes, in oure dore, and see  
 The marquysesse, and therfore wol I fonde  
 To don at hom, as soone as it may be,  
 The labour which that longeth unto me,  
 And thanne may I at leysir hir byholde, 90  
 And sche the way into the castel holde.’

And as sche wold over the threisshfold goon,  
 The marquys cam and gan hir for to ealle.  
 And sche set down her water-pot anoon  
 Bisides the threischfold of this oxe stalle,  
 And down upon hir knees sche gan to falle,  
 And with sad countenaunce *sche* knelith stille,  
 Til sche had herd what was the lordes wille.

This thoughtful marquys spak unto this mayde  
 Ful soberly, and sayd in this manere: 100  
 ‘ Wher is your fader, Grisildes?’ he sayde.  
 And sche with reverence and humble cheere  
*Answerde*, ‘ Lord, he is al redy heere.’  
 And in sche goth withouten lenger let,  
 And to the marquys sche hir fader fet.

He by the hond than takith this olde man,  
 And sayde thus, whan he him had on syde:  
 ‘ Janicula, I neither may ne can  
 Lenger the plesauns of myn herte hyde;  
 If that ye vouchesauf, what so betyde, 110  
 Thy doughter wil ~ take er that I wende  
 As for my wyf, unto hir lyves ende.

‘ Thow lovest me, I wot it wel certeyn,

And art my faithful liege-man i-bore,  
 And al that likith me, I dar wel sayn,  
 It likith the, and specially therfore  
 Tel me that poynt, as ye have herd bifore,  
 If that thow wolt unto that purpos drawe,  
 To take me as for thy sone-in-lawe.'

The sodeyn caas the man astoneyde tho, 120  
 That reed he wax, abaischt, and al quakyng  
 He stood, unnethe sayd he wordes mo,  
 But oonly this: 'Lord,' quod he, 'my willyng  
 Is as ye wol, ayenst youre likyng  
 I wol no thing, ye be my lord so deere;  
 Right as yow list, governith this matiere.'

'Yit wol I,' quod this markys softly,  
 'That in thy chambre, I and thou and sche  
 Have a collacioun, and wostow why?  
 For I wol aske if *that* it hir wille be 130  
 To be my wyf, and reule hir after me;  
 And al this schal be doon in thy presence,  
 I wol nought speke out of thyn audience.'

And in the ehamber, whil thay were aboute  
 Her tretys, which as ye schul after hiere,  
 The poeple eam unto the hous withoute,  
 And wondrid hem, in how honest manere  
 And tendurly sche kept hir fader deere;  
 But outerly Grisildes wonder mighte,  
 For never erst ne saugh sche such a sighte. 140

No wonder is though that sche were astoned,  
 To seen so gret a gest come into that place;  
 Sche never was to suche gestes woned,  
 For which sche lokede with ful pale face.  
 But schortly this matiere forth to chace,  
 These arn the wordes that the marquys sayde

To this benigne, verray, faithful mayde.

‘Grisyld,’ he sayde, ‘ye schul wel understonde,  
It liketh to your fader and to me,  
That I yow wedde, and eek it may so stonde, 150  
As I suppose ye wile that it so be;  
But these demaundes aske I first,’ quod he,  
‘That sith it schal be doon in hasty wyse,  
Wol ye assent, or elles yow avyse?’

‘I say this, be ye redy with good herte  
To al my lust, and that I frely may  
As me best liste do yow laughe or smerte,  
And never ye to gruch it, night ne day;  
And eek whan I say ye, ye say not nay,  
Neyther by word, ne frownyng countenaunce? 160  
Swer this, and here swer I our alliaunce.’

Wondryng upon this word, quakyng for drede,  
Sehe sayde: ‘Lord, undigne and unworthy  
I am to thilk honour that ye me bede;  
But as ye wile your self, right so wol I;  
And here I swere, that never wityngly  
In werk, ne thought, I nyl now disobeye  
For to be deed, though me were loth to deye.’

‘This is ynough, Grisilde myn,’ quod he.  
And forth goth he with a ful sobre chere, 170  
Out at the dore, and after that cam sehe,  
And to the pepul he sayd in this manere:  
‘This is my wyf,’ quod he, ‘that stondith heere.  
Honoureth hir, and loveth hir, I yow praye,  
Who so me loveth; ther is no more to saye.’

And for that no thing of hir olde gere  
Sehe schulde brynge unto his hous, he bad  
That wommen schulde despoilen hir right thare,  
Of which these ladyes were nought ful glad

To handle hir clothes wherin sche was clad; 180  
Tut natheles this mayde bright of hew  
Fro foot to heed thay schredde han al newe.

Hir heeres han thay kempt, that lay untressed  
Ful rudely, and with hire fyngres smale  
A coroun on hir heed thay han i-dressed,  
And set hir ful of nowches gret and smale.  
Of hir array what schuld I make a tale?  
Unnethe the poeple hir knew for hir fairnesse,  
Whan sche translated was in such richesse.

This marquis hath hir spoused with a ryng 190  
Brought for the same cause, and than hir sette  
Upon an hors snow-whyte, and wel amblyng,  
And to his palys, er he lenger lette,  
(With joyful poeple, that hir ladde and mette)  
Conveyed hire, and thus the day they spende  
In revel, til the sonne gan descende.

And shortly forth this tale for to chace,  
I say, that to this newe marquisesse  
God hath *such* favour sent hir of his grace,  
That it ne semyde not by likynesse 200  
That sche was born and fed in rudenesse,  
As in a cote, or in an oxe stalle,  
But norischt in an emperoures halle.

To every wight sche waxen is so deere  
And worschipful, that folk ther sche was born,  
And from hir burthe knew hir yer by yere,  
Unnethe trowede thay, but dorst han sworn,  
That to Janicle, of which I spak biforn,  
Sche doughter were, for as by conjecture  
Hem thoughte sche was another creature. 210

For though that ever vertuous was sche,  
Sche was encreased in such excellence

Of thewes goode, i-set in high bounte,  
 And so discret, and fair of eloquence,  
 So benigne, and so digne of reverence,  
 And couthe so the poeples hert embrace,  
 That ech hir loveth that lokith in hir face.

Nought oonly of Saluce in the toun  
 Pupliched was the bounté of hir name,  
 But eek byside in many a regioun, 220  
 If oon sayde wel, another sayde the same.  
 So sprad of hire heigh bounté the fame,  
 That men and wommen, as wel yong as olde,  
 Gon to Saluce upon hir to byholde.

This Walter louly, nay but really,  
 Weddid with fortunat honesteté,  
 In Goddes pees lyveth ful esily  
 At home, and outward grace ynough hath he;  
 And for he saugh that under low degre  
 Was ofte vertu y-hid, the poeple him helde 230  
 A prudent man, and that is *seen* ful selde.

Nought oonly this Grisildes thurgh hir witte  
 Couthe al the feet of wifly *homlynesse*,  
 But eek whan that the tyme required it,  
 The comun profyt couthe sche redresse;  
 Ther nas discord, rancour, ne hevynesse  
 In al that lond, that sche ne couthe appese,  
 And wisly bryng hem alle in rest and ese.

Though that hir housbond absent were anoon,  
 If gentilmen, or other of hir contré, 240  
 Were wroth, sche wolde brynge hem at oon,  
 So wyse and rype wordes hadde sche,  
 And juggement of so gret equité,  
 That sche from heven sent was, as men wende,  
 Poeple to save, and every wrong to amende.

Nought longe tyme after that this Grisilde  
 Was wedded, sche a doughter hath i-bore ;  
 Al had hir lever han had a knave childe,  
 Glad was this marquis and the folk therfore,  
 For though a mayden child come al byfore, 250  
 Sche may unto a knave child atteigne  
 By liklihed, and sche nys not bareigne.

### INCIPIT TERTIA PARS.



HER fel, as fallith many tymes mo,  
 Whan that this child hath souked but  
 a throwe,  
 This marquys in his herte longith so  
 Tempte his wyf, hir sadnesse for to knowe,  
 That he ne might out of his herte throwe  
 This mervaylous desir his wyf tassaye ;  
*Nedeles*, God wot, he thought hir to affraye.

He had assayed hir ynough bifore,  
 And fond hir ever good, what needith it  
 Hire to tempte, and alway more and more ? 10  
 Though som men prayse it for a subtil wit,  
 But as for me, I say that evel it sit  
 Tassay a wyf whan that it is no neede,  
 And putte hir in anguysch and in dreede.

For which this marquis wrought in this manere ;  
 He com aloone a-night ther as sche lay  
 With sterne face, and with ful trouble cheere,  
 And sayde thus, 'Grislid,' quod he, 'that day  
 That I yow took out of your pore array,  
 And putte yow in estat of heigh noblesse, 20



Ye have not that forgeten, as I gesse.

‘I say, Grisild, this present dignité  
In which that I have put yow, as I trowe,  
Makith yow not foryetful for to be  
That I yow took in pore estat ful lowe,  
For eny wele ye moot your selve knowe.  
Tak heed of every word that I yow saye,  
Ther is no wight that herith it but we twaye.

‘Ye wot your self how *that* ye comen heere  
Into this hous, it is nought long ago; 39  
And though to me that ye be leef and deere,  
Unto my gentils ye be no thing so.  
Thay seyn, to hem it is gret schame and wo  
For to ben subject and ben in servage  
To the, that born art of a smal village.

‘And namely syn thy doughter was i-bore,  
These wordes han thay spoken douteles.  
But I desire, as I have doon byfore,  
To lyve my lif with hem in rest and pees;  
I may not in this caas be reccheles; 40  
I moot do with thy doughter for the beste,  
Not as I wolde, but as my pepul leste.

‘And yit, God wot, this is ful loth to me.  
But natheles withoute youre witynge  
Wol I not doon; but this wold I,’ quod he,  
‘That ye to me assent as in this thing.  
Schew now your paciens in your wirching.  
That thou me hightest and swor in yon village,  
That day that maked was oure mariage.’

Whan sche had herd al this sche nought ameevyd  
Neyther in word, in cheer, or countenaunce, 51  
(For, as it semede, sche was nought agreed);  
She sayde, ‘Lord, al lith in your plesaunce;

My ehild and I, with hertly obeisaunee,  
Ben youres al, and ye may save or spille  
Your oughne thing; werkith after your wille.

‘Ther may no thing, so God my soule save,  
Likened to yow, that may displesen me;  
Ne I desire no thing for to have,  
Ne drede for to lese, save oonly ye.  
This wil is in myn hert, and ay schal be,  
No length of tyme or deth may this deface,  
Ne ehaunge my eorrage to other place.’

60

Glad was this marquis of hir answeyng,  
But yit he feyned as he were not so.  
Al dreery was his eheer and his lokyng,  
Whan that he sehold out of the ehambre go.  
Soon after this, a forlong way or tuo,  
He prively hath told al his entente  
Unto a man, and unto his wyf him sente.

70

A maner sergeant was this privé man,  
The which that faithful oft he founden hadde  
In thinges grete, and eek sueh folk wel can  
Don exeeucioun in thinges badde;  
The lord knew wel that he him loved and dradde.  
And whan this sergeant wist his lordes wille,  
Into the chamber he stalked him ful stille.

‘Madame,’ he sayde, ‘ye moste foryive it me,  
Though I do thing to which I am constreynit;  
Ye ben so wys, that ful wel knowe ye,  
That lordes hestes mowe not ben i-feynit.  
Thay mowe wel biwayl it or eompleyn it;  
But men moot neede unto her lust obeye,  
And so wol I, there is no more to seye.’

80

‘This ehild I am eomaundid for to take.’  
And spak no more, but out the ehild he hente

Dispitously, and gan a chiere make,  
As though he wold han slayn it, er he wente.  
Grisild moot al suffer and al consente;  
And as a lamb sche sitteth meeke and stille, 90  
And let this cruel sergeant doon his wille.

Suspecious was the defame of this man,  
Suspect his face, suspect his word also,  
Suspect the tyme in which he this bigan.  
Allas! hir doughter, that she lovede so,  
Sehe wende he wold han slayen it right tho;  
But natheles sche neyther weep ne sikedede,  
Conformyng hir to that the marquis likede.

But atte laste speke sche bigan,  
And mekely sche to the sergeant preyde, 100  
So as he was a worthy gentilman,  
That she moste kisse hir child, er that it deyde.  
And on hir arm this litel child sche leyde,  
With ful sad face, and gan the child to blesse,  
And lullyd it, and after gan it kesse.

And thus sche sayd in hir benigne vois:  
'Farwel, my child, I schal the never see;  
But sith I the have marked with the croys,  
Of thilke fader blessed mot thou be,  
That for us deyde upon a cros of tre; 110  
Thy soule, litel child, I him bytake,  
For this night schaltow deyen for my sake.'

I trowe that to a norice in this caas  
It hadde ben hard this rewthe for to see;  
Wel might a moder than have cryed allas,  
But natheles so sad stedefast was sche,  
That she endured al adversité,  
And to the sergeant mekely sche sayde,  
'Have her agayn your litel yonge mayde.

‘Goth now,’ quod sehe, ‘and doth my lordes heste;  
But o thing wil I praye yow of your grace, 121  
That but my lord forbede yow atte leste,  
Burieth this litel body in som place,  
That bestes ne no briddes it to-raee.’

But he no word wil to the purpos saye,  
But took the childe and went upon his waye.

This sergeant com unto this lord agayn,  
And of Grisildes wordes and hir cheere  
He tolde poynt for poynt, in sehort and playn,  
And him presentith with his doughter deere. 130  
Somwhat this lord hath rewthe in his manere,  
But natheles his purpos huld he stille,  
As lordes doon, whan thay woln have her wille;

And bad the sergeaunt that he prively  
Scholde this childe softe wynde and wrappe,  
With alle circumstaunces tendurly,  
And cary it in a cofre, or in his lappe;  
Upon peyne his heed of for to swappe  
That no man schulde knowe of this entente,  
Ne whens he com, ne whider that he wente; 140

But at Boloyne, to his suster deere,  
That thilke tyme of Panik was countesse,  
He schuld it take, and schewe hir this matiere,  
Byseching her to doon hir busynesse  
This childe to fostre in alle gentillesse,  
And whos childe that it was he bad hir hyde  
From every wight, for ought that mighte bytyde.

The sergeant goth, and hath fulfild this thing.  
But to this marquys now retourne we;  
For now goth he ful fast ymaginyng, 150  
If by his wyves eher he mighte se,  
Or by hir word apparcyeve, that sche

Were chaunged, but he hir never couthe fynde,  
But ever in oon y-like sad and kynde.

As glad, as humble, as busy in servise  
And eek in love, as sche was wont to be,  
Was sche to him, in every maner wyse ;  
Ne of hir doughter nought o word spak sche ;  
Non accident for noon adversité  
Was seyn in hir, ne never hir doughter name 160  
Ne nempnyd sche, in earnest ne in game.

## INCIPIT QUARTA PARS.



N this' estaat ther passed ben foure yer  
Er sche with childe was, but, as God  
wolde,

A knave child sche bar by this Waltier,  
Ful gracious, and fair for to biholde ;  
And whan that folk it to his fader tolde,  
Nought only he, but al his contré, merye  
Was for this child, and God thay thank and herie.

When it was tuo yer old, and fro the brest  
Departed fro his noris, upon a day  
This markys caughte yit another lest 10  
To tempt his wif yit after, if he may.

O ! needles was sche tempted in assay ;  
But weddid men ne knowen no mesure,  
Whan that thay fynde a pacient creature.

‘ Wyf,’ quod this marquys, ‘ ye han herd er this  
My peple sekly berith oure mariage,  
And namly syn my sone y-boren is,  
Now is it wors than ever in al our age ;  
The murmur sleth myn hert and my corrage,

For to myn eeris cometh the vois so smerte, 20  
That it wel neigh destroyed hath myn herte.

‘Now saye thay thus, Whan Wauter is agoon,  
Than schal the blood of Janicula succede,  
And ben our lord, for other have we noon.  
Suche wordes saith my poeple, out of drede.  
Wel ought I of such murmur taken heede,  
For certeynly I drede such sentence,  
Though thay not pleynly speke in myn audience.

‘I wolde lyve in pees, if that I mighte ;  
Wherfor I am disposid outrely, 30  
As I his suster servede by nighte,  
Right so thynk I to serve him prively.  
This warn I you, that ye not sodeinly  
Out of your self for no woo schuld outraye :  
Beth pacient, and therof I yow praye.’

‘I have,’ quod sche, ‘sayd thus and ever schal,  
I wol no thing, ne nil no thing certayn,  
But as yow list ; nought greveth me at al,  
Though that my doughter and my sone be slayn  
At your comaundement ; this is to sayne, 40  
I have not had no part of children twayne,  
But first syknes, and after wo and payne.

‘Ye ben oure lord, doth with your owne thing  
Right as yow list, axith no red of me ;  
For as I left at hom al my clothing,  
Whan I first com to yow, right so,’ quod sche,  
‘Left I my wille and my liberté,  
And took your clothing ; wherfor I yow preye,  
Doth youre plesaunce, I wil youre lust obeye.

‘And certes, if I hadde preseience 50  
Your wil to knowe, er ye youre lust me tolde,  
I wold it doon withoute negligence.

But now I wot your lust, and what ye wolde,  
Al your plesaunce ferm and stable I holde,  
For wist I that my deth wolde doon yow ease,  
Right gladly wold I deye, yow to pleasa

‘Deth may make no comparisoun  
Unto your love.’ And whan this marquys say  
The constance of his wyf, he cast adoun  
His eyghen tuo, and wondrith that sche may 60  
In pacience suffre al this array;  
And forth he goth with drery countenaunce,  
But to his hert it was ful gret plesaunce.

This ugly sergeaunt in the same wise  
That he hir doughter fette, right so he,  
Or worse, if men worse can devyse,  
Hath hent hir sone, that ful was of beauté.  
And ever in oon so pacient was sche,  
That sche no cheere made of hevynesse,  
But kist hir sone, and after gan him blesse. 70

Save this sche prayed him, if that he mighte,  
Her litel sone he wold in eorthe grave,  
His tendre lymes, delicate to sight,  
From foules and from bestes him to save.  
But sche noon answer of him mighte have.  
He went his way, as him no thing ne roughete,  
But to Boloyne he tenderly it broughte.

This marquis wondreth ever the lenger the more  
Upon hir pacience, and if that he  
Ne hadde sothly knowen therbifore, 80  
That parfytly hir children lovede sche,  
He wold have wend that of some subtilté  
And of malice, or of cruel corrage,  
That sche hadde suffred this with sad visage.

But wel he knew, that, next himself, certayn



Sche loved hir children best in every wise.  
But now of wommen wold I aske fayn,  
If these assayes mighten not suffice?  
What couthe a stourdy housebonde more devyse  
To prove hir wyfhode and her stedefastnesse, 90  
And he contynuyng ever in stourdynesse?

But ther ben folk of such condicioun,  
That, whan thay have a certeyn purpos take,  
Thay can nought stynt of her entencioun,  
But, right as thay were bounden to a stake,  
Thay wil not of her firste purpos slake;  
Right so this marquys fullich hath purposed  
To tempt his wyf, as he was first disposed.

He wayteth, if by word or countenaunce  
That sche to him was chaunged of corage. 100  
But never couthe he fynde variaunce,  
Sche was ay oon in hert and in visage;  
And ay the ferther that sche was in age,  
The more trewe, if that it were possible,  
Sche was to him, and more penyble.

For which it semyde this, that of hem tuo  
Ther nas but oo wil; for as Walter leste,  
The same plesaunce was hir lust also;  
And, God be thanked, al fel for the beste.  
Sche schewede wel, for no worldly unrest 110  
A wyf, as of hir self, no thing ne scholde  
Wylne in effect, but as hir housbond wolde.

The selaunder of Walter ofte and wyde spradde,  
That of a cruel hert he wikkedly,  
For he a pore womman weddid hadde,  
Hath morthrid bothe his children prively;  
Such murmur was among hem comunly.  
No wonder is; for to the peples cere

Ther com no word, but that thay morthered were.

For which, wher as his peple therbyfore 120  
Hadde loved him wel, the selaunder of his diffame  
Made hem that thay him hatede therfore ;  
To ben a morderer is an hateful name.

But natheles, for earnest or for game,  
He of his cruel purpos nolde stente,  
To tempt his wyf was set al his entente.

Whan that his doughter twelf yer was of age,  
He to the court of Rome, in suche wise  
Enformed of his wille, sent his message,  
Comaundyng hem, such bulles to devyse, 130  
As to his cruel purpos may suffise,  
How that the pope, as for his peples reste,  
Bad him to wedde another, if him leste.

I say, he bad, thay schulde countrefete  
The popes bulles, makyng menceioun  
That he hath leve his firste wyf to lete,  
As by the popes dispensacioun,  
To stynte rancour and discencioun  
Bitwix his peple and him ; thus sayde the bulle,  
The which thay han publisshid atte fulle. 140

The rude poepel, as it no wonder is,  
Wende ful wel that it hadde be right so.  
But whan these tydynges come to Grisildis,  
I deeme that hir herte was ful wo ;  
But sche y-like sad for evermo  
Disposid was, this humble creature,  
Thadversité of fortun al tendure ;

Abydyng ever his lust and his plesaunce,  
To whom that sche was yive, hert and al,  
As to hir verray worldly suffisaunce. 150  
But schortly if I this story telle schal,

This marquys writen hath in special  
 A letter, in which he sehewith his entente.  
 And seerely he to Boloyne it sente.

To therl of Panyk, which that hadde tho  
 Weddid his suster, prayd he specially  
 To brynge hom ayein his children tuo  
 In honorable estaat al openly.  
 But oon thing he him prayde outerly,  
 That he to no wight, though men wold enquere,  
 Schulde not tellen whos children thay were, 161

But saye the mayde schuld i-weddid be  
 Unto the markys of Salucee anoon.  
 And as this eorl was prayd, so dede he,  
 For at day set, he on his way is goon  
 Toward Salucee, and lordes many oon  
 In riehe array, this mayden for to guyde,  
 Hir yonge brother rydyng by hir syde.

Arrayed was toward hir mariage  
 This freisshe may al ful of gemmes elere ; 170  
 Hir brother, which that seven yer was of age,  
 Arrayed eek ful freissh in his manere ;  
 And thus in gret noblesse and with glad chere  
 Toward Salucees sehapyng her journey,  
 Fro day to day thay ryden in her way.

### INCIPIT PARS QUINTA.



AMONG al this, after his wikked usage,  
 This marquis yit his wif to tempte more  
 To the uttrest proef of hir eorrage,  
 Fully to han experiens and lore,  
 If that sehe were as stedefast as byfore,

He on a day in open audience  
Ful boystously hath sayd hir this sentence.

‘ Certes, Grisildes, I had y-nough plesaunce  
To have yow to my wif, for your goodnesse,  
And for youre trouthe, and for your obeissaunce,  
Nought for your lignage, ne for your richesse ; 11  
But now know I in verray sothfastnesse,  
That in gret lordschip, if I wel avyse,  
Ther is gret servitude in sondry wyse ;

I may not do, as every ploughman may ;  
My poeple me constreignith for to take  
Another wyf, and *crien* day by day ;  
And eek the pope, rancour for to slake,  
Consentith it, that dar I undertake ;  
And trewely, thus moche I wol yow saye, 20  
My newe wif is comyng by the waye.

‘ Be strong of hert, and voyde anoon hir place,  
And thilke dower that ye broughten me  
Tak it agayn, I graunt it of my grace.  
Retourneth to your fadres hous,’ quod he,  
‘ No man may alway have prosperité.  
With even hert I rede yow endure  
The strok of fortune or of adventure.’

And sche agayn answerd in pacience :  
‘ My lord,’ quod sche, ‘ I wot, and wist alway, 30  
How that bitwixe your magnificence  
And my poverté no wight can ne may  
Make comparisoun, it is no nay ;  
I ne held me neuer digne in no manere  
To ben your wyf, ne yit your chamberere.

‘ And in this hous, ther ye me lady made,  
(The highe God take I for my witnesse,  
And al-so wisly he my soule glade)

I never huld me lady ne maistresse,  
But humble servaunt to your worthinesse,  
And ever sehal, whil that my lyf may dure,  
Aboven every worldly creature.

40

‘That ye so longe of your benignité  
Han holden me in honour and nobleye,  
Wher as I was not worthy for to be,  
That thonk I God and yow, to whom I preye  
For-yeld it yow, ther is *no* more to seye.  
Unto my fader gladly wil I wende,  
And with him duelle unto my lyves ende.

‘Ther I was fostred as a child ful smal,  
Til I be deed my lyf ther wil I lede,  
A widow elene in body, hert, and al;  
For sith I yaf to yow my maydenhede,  
And am your trewe wyf, it is no drede,  
God sehilde such a lordes wyf to take  
Another man to housbond or to make.

50

‘And of your newe wif, God of his grace  
So graunte yow wele and prosperité;  
For I wol gladly yelden hir my plaee,  
In which that I was blisful wont to be.  
For sith it liketh yow, my lord,’ quod sche,  
‘That whilom were al myn hertes reste,  
That I schal gon, I wil go whan yow leste.

60

‘But ther as ye profre me such dowayre  
As I ferst brought, it is wel in my mynde,  
It were my wreechid clothes, no thing faire,  
The whiche to me were hard now for to fynde.  
O goode God! how gentil and how kynde  
Ye semede by your speche and your visage,  
That day that maked was our mariage!

70

‘But soth is sayd, algate I fynd it trewe,

For in effect it proved is on me,  
 Love is nought old as whan that it is newe.  
 But certes, lord, for noon adversité  
 To deyen in the caas, it schal not be  
 That ever in word or werk I schal repente  
 That I yow yaf myn hert in hol entente.

‘ My lord, ye wot that in my fadres place  
 Ye dede me strippe out of my pore wede,  
 And richely me cladden of your grace ;  
 To yow brought I nought elles out of drede,  
 But faith, and *nakednesse*, and maydenhede ;  
 And her agayn my clothyng I restore,  
 And eek my weddyng ryng for evermore.

80

‘ The remenant of your jewels redy be  
 Within your chambur dore dar I sauflly sayn.  
 Naked out of my fadres hous,’ quod sche,  
 ‘ I com, and naked moot I torne agayn.  
 Al your pleisauns wold I fulfille fayn ;  
 But yit I hope it be not youre entente,  
 That I smoeles out of your *paleys* wente.

90

‘ Ye couthe not doon so dishonest a thing,  
 That thilke wombe, in which your children leye,  
 Schulde byforn the poeple, in my walkyng,  
 Be seye al bare : wherfore I yow praye  
 Let me not lik a worm go by the waye ;  
 Remembre yow, myn oughne lord so deere,  
 I was your wyf, though I unworthy were.

‘ Wherfor, in guerdoun of my maydenhede,  
 Which that I brought and nought agayn I bere, 100  
 As vouchethsauf as yeve me to my meede  
 But such a smok as I was wont to were,  
 That I therwith may wrye the wombe of here  
 That was your wif ; and here take I my leve

Of yow, myn oughne lord, lest I yow greve.'

'The smok,' quod he, 'that thou hast on thy bak,  
Let it be stille, and ber it forth with the.'

But wel unnethes thilke word he spak,  
But went his way for routhe and for pité.

Byforn the folk hirselves strippith sche, 110  
And in hir smok, with heed and foot al bare,  
Toward hir fader house forth is sche fare.

The folk hir folwen wepyng in hir weye,  
And fortune ay thay cursen as thay goon;  
But sche fro wepyng kept hir eyen dreye,  
Ne in this tyme word ne spak sche noon.  
Hir fader, that this tyding herd anoon,  
Cursede the day and tyme, that nature  
Schoop him to ben a lyves creature.

For oute of doute this olde pore man 120  
Was ever in suspect of hir mariage;  
For ever he deemede, sith that it bigan,  
That whan the lord fulfilled had his corrage,  
Him wolde thinke that it were disparage  
To his estate, so lowe for to lighte,  
And voyden hire as sone as ever he mighte.

Agayns his doughter hastily *goth* he;  
For he by noyse of folk knew hir comyng;  
And with hir olde cote, as it might be,  
He covered hir ful sorwfully wepynge; 130  
But on hir body might he it nought bringe,  
For rude was the cloth, and mor of age  
By dayes fele than *at* hir mariage.

Thus with hir fader for a certeyn space  
Dwellith this flour of wifly pacience,  
That neyther by her wordes ne by hir face,  
Byforn the folk, nor eek in her absence,



Ne schewed seche that hir was doon offence,  
 Ne of hir highe astaat no remembraunce  
 Ne hadde seche, as by hir countenaunce. 140

No wonder is, for in hir gret estate  
 Hir gost was ever in playn humilité;  
 Ne tender mouth, noon herte delicate,  
 Ne pompe, ne semblant of realté;  
 But ful of pacient benignité,  
 Discrete, and prideles, ay honourable,  
 And to hir housbond ever meke and stable.

Men speke of Job, and most for his humblesse,  
 As clerkes, whan hem lust, can wel endite,  
 Namely of men, but as in sothfastnesse, 150  
 Though clerkes prayse wommen but a lite,  
 There can no man in humblesse him acquyte  
 As wommen can, ne can be half so trewe  
 As wommen ben, but it be falle of newe.

### PARS SEXTA.

**F**RO Boloyn is this erl of Panik y-come,  
 Of which the fame up-sprong to more  
 and lasse,  
 And to the poeples eeres alle and some  
 Was couth eek, that a newe marquisesse  
 He with him brought, in such pomp and richesse,  
 That never was ther seyn with mannes ye  
 So noble array in al West Lombardye.

The marquys, which that schoop and knew al  
 this,

Er this erl was come, sent his message  
After thilke cely pore Grisildis ;  
And sche with humble hert and *glad* visage,  
Not with so swollen hert in hir corrage,  
Cam at his hest, and on hir knees hir sette,  
And reverently and wyfly sche him grette.

10

‘Grisild,’ quod he, ‘my wil is outrely,  
This mayden, that schal weddid be to me,  
Receyved be to morwe as really  
As it possible is in myn hous to be ;  
And eek that every wight in his degré  
Have his estaat in sitting and servyse,  
In high plesaunce, as I can devyse.

20

‘I have no womman suffisant certeyne  
The chambres for tarray in ordinance  
After my lust, and therfor wold I feyne,  
That thin were al such maner governaunce ;  
Thow knowest eek of al my plesaunce ;  
Though thyn array be badde, and ille byseye,  
Do thou thy dever atte leste weye.’

‘Nought oonly, lord, that I am glad,’ quod sche,  
‘To don your lust, but I desire also  
Yow for to serve and plese in my degré,  
Without feynting, and schal evermo ;  
Ne never for no wele, ne for no wo,  
Ne schal the gost withinne myn herte stente  
To love yow best with al my trewe entente.’

30

And with that word sche gan the hous to dighte,  
And tables for to sette, and beddes make,  
And peyned hir to doon al that sche mighte,  
Preying the chamberers for Goddes sake  
To hasten hem, and faste swepe and schake,  
And sche the moste servisable of alle

40

Hath every chamber arrayed, and his halle.

Abouten undern gan this lord alighte,  
That with him broughte these noble children tweye;  
For which the peple ran to se that sighte  
Of her array, so richely biseye.

And than at erst amonges hem thay seye,  
That Walter was no *fool*, though that him leste  
To chaunge his wyf; for it was for the beste.

For sche is fairer, as thay demen alle, 50  
Than is Grisild, and more tender of age,  
And fairer fruyt bitwen hem schulde falle,  
And more plesaunt for hir high lynage,  
Hir brother eek so fair was of visage,  
That hem to seen the peple hath caught plesaunce,  
Comending now the marquys governaunce.

O stormy poeple, unsad and ever untrewe,  
And undiscret, and chaunging as a fane,  
*Delytyng* ever in rombel that is newe,  
For lik the moone ay waxe ye and wane; 60  
Ay ful of clappyng, dere y-nough a jane,  
Youre doom is fals, your constaunce yvel previth,  
A ful gret fool is he that on yow leevith.

Thus sayde saad folke in that citee,  
Whan that the poeple gased up and down;  
For thay were glad right for the novelté,  
To have a newe lady of her toun.  
No more of this now make I mencoun,  
But to Grisildes agayn wol I me dresse,  
And telle hir constance, and hir busynesse. 70

Ful busy was Grisild in every thing,  
That to the feste was appertinent;  
Right nought was sche abaisht of hir clothing,  
Though it were ruyde, and som del eek to-rent,

But with glad cheer to the yate is sche went,  
With other folk, to griete the marquisesse,  
And after that doth forth hir busynesse.

With so glad chier his gestic sche receyveth,  
And so connyngly everich in his degre,  
That no defaute no man aparceyveth, 80  
But ay thay wondren what sche mighte be,  
That in so pover array was for to se,  
And couthe such honour and reverence,  
And worthily thay prayse hir prudence.

In al this mene-while sche ne stente  
This mayde and eek hir brother to comende  
With al hir hert in ful buxom entente,  
So wel, that no man couthe hir pris amende ;  
But atte last whan that these lordes wende 90  
To sitte down to mete, he gan to calle  
Grisild, as sche was busy in his halle.

‘Grisyld,’ quod he, as it were in his play,  
‘How likith the my wif and hir beauté?’  
‘Right wel, my lord,’ quod sche, ‘for in good fay,  
A fairer saugh I never noon than sche.  
I pray to God yive hir prosperité;  
And so hope I, that he wol to yow sende  
Plesaunce ynough unto your lyves ende.

‘On thing warn I yow and biseke also,  
That ye ne prike with no tormentynge 100  
This tendre mayden, as ye have do mo ;  
For sche is fostrid in hir norischinge  
More tendrely, and to my supposynge  
Sche couthe not adversité endure,  
As couthe a pore fostrid creature.’

And whan this Walter saugh hir pacience,  
Hir glade cheer, and no malice at al,

And he so oft hadde doon to hir offence,  
And sche ay sad and constant as a wal,  
Continuynge ever hir innocence overal, 110  
This sturdy marquys gan his herte dresse  
To rewen upon hir wyfly stedefastnesse.

‘This is ynough, Grisilde myn,’ quod he,  
‘Be now no more agast, ne yvel apayed.  
I have thy faith and thy benignité,  
As wel as ever womman was, assayed  
In gret estate, and propreliche arrayed ;  
Now knowe I, dere wyf, thy stedefastnesse ;  
And hir in armes took, and gan hir kesse.

And sche for wonder took of it no keepe ; 120  
Sche herde not what thing he to hir sayde,  
Sche ferd as sche hadde stert out of a sleepe,  
Til sche out of hir masidnesse abrayde.  
‘Grisild,’ quod he, ‘by God that for us deyde,  
Thou art my wyf, ne noon other I have,  
Ne never had, as God my soule save.

‘This is my doughter, which thou hast supposed  
To be my wif ; that other faithfully  
Schal be myn heir, as I have ay purposed ;  
Thow bar hem in thy body trewely. 130  
At Boloyne have I kept him prively ;  
Tak hem agayn, for now maistow not seye,  
That thou hast lorn noon of thy children tweye.

‘And folk, that other weyes han seyde of me,  
I warn hem wel, that I have doon this deede  
For no malice, ne for no cruelté,  
But for tassaye in the thy wommanhede ;  
And not to slen my children, (God forbede !)  
But for to kepe hem prively and stille,  
Til I thy purpos knewe and al thy wil.’ 140

Whan sche this herd, aswone doun sche fallith  
 For pitous joy, and after her swownyng  
 Sche bothe hir yonge children to hir callith,  
 And in hir armes pitously wepyng  
 Embraseth hem, and tenderly kissyng,  
 Ful lik a moder with hir salte teris  
 Sche bathide bothe hir visage and hir eeris.

O, such a pitous thing it was to see  
 Her swownyng, and hir humble vois to heere !  
 ‘*Graunt mercy*, lord, God thank it yow,’ quod sche,  
 ‘That ye han *saved me* my childern deere. 151  
 Now rek I never to be deed right here,  
 Sith I stond in your love and in your grace,  
 No fors of deth, ne whan my spirit pace.

‘O tender deere yonge children myne,  
 Youre woful moder wende stedefastly,  
 That cruel houndes or som foul vermyne  
 Had eten yow ; but God of his mercy,  
 And your benigne fader tenderly  
 Hath doon yow kepe.’ And in that same stounde  
 Al sodeinly sche swapped doun to grounde. 161

And in hir swough so sadly holdith sche  
 Hir children tuo, whan sche gan hem tembrace  
 That with gret sleight and gret difficulté  
 The children from her arm they gonne arace.  
 O ! many a teer on many a pitous face  
 Doun ran of hem that stoden hir bisyde,  
 Unnethe aboute hir mighte thay abyde.

Waltier hir gladith, and hir sorwe slakith,  
 Sche rysith up abaissed from hir traunce, 170  
 And every wight hir joy and feste makith,  
 Til sche hath caught agayn hir continuaunce.  
 Wauter hir doth so faithfully plesaunce,

That it was daynté *for* to see the cheere  
Bitwix hem tuo, now thay be met in feere.

These ladys, whan that thay her tyme saye,  
Han taken hir, and into chambre goon,  
And strippen hir out of hir rude arraye,  
And in a cloth of gold that brighte schon,  
With a coroun of many a riche stoon 180  
Upon hir heed, thay into halle hir broughte;  
And ther sche was honoured as hir oughte.

Thus hath this pitous day a blisful ende;  
For every man and womman doth his might  
This day in mirth and revel to despende,  
Til on the welken schon the sterres brighte;  
For more solempne in every mannes sighte  
This feste was, and gretter of costage,  
Than was the revel of hir mariage.

Ful many a yer in heigh prosperité 190  
Lyven these tuo in concord and in rest,  
And richeliche his doughter maried he  
Unto a lord, on of the worthiest  
Of al Ytaile, and thanne in pees and rest  
His wyves fader in his court he kepith,  
Til that the soule out of his body crepith.

His sone succedith in his heritage,  
In rest and pees, after his fader day;  
And fortunat was eek in mariage,  
Al put he not his wyf in gret assay. 200  
This world is not so strong, it is no nay,  
As it hath ben in olde tymes yore,  
And herknith, what this auctor saith therfore.

This story is sayd, nat for that wyves scholde  
Folwe Grisild, as in humilité,  
For it were importable, though they wolde;



But for that every wight in his degré  
Schulde be constant in adversité.

As was Grisild, therfore Petrark writeth  
This story, which with high stile he enditeth. 210

For *sith* a womman was so pacient  
Unto a mortal man, wel more us oughte  
Receyven al in gre that God us sente.  
For grete skilis he proveth that he wroughte,  
But he ne temptith no man that he boughte,  
As saith seint Jame, if ye his pistil rede;  
He provith folk al day, it is no drede;

And suffrith us, as for our exercise,  
With scharpe scourges of adversité  
Ful ofte to be bete in sondry wise; 220  
Nought for to knowe oure wille, for eertes he,  
Er we were born, knew al our frelté;  
And for oure bèst is al his governaunce;  
Leet us thanne lyve in vertuous suffraunce.

But oo word, lordes, herkneth er I go:  
It were ful hard to fynde now a dayes  
As Grisildes in al a toun.thre or tuo;  
For if that thay were put to such assayes,  
The gold of hem hath now so badde alayes  
With bras, that though the coyn be fair at ye,  
It wolde rather brest in tuo than plye. 231

For which heer, for the wyves love of Bathe,—  
Whos lyf and alle of hir secte God meyntene  
In high maistry, and elles were it seathe,—  
I wil with lusty herte freisch and grene,  
Saye yow a song to glade yow, I wene;  
And lat us stynt of earnestful matiere.  
Herknith my song, that saith in this manere.

## L'ENVOYE DE CHAUCER.

**G**RISILD is deed, and eek hir pacience,  
 And bothe at oones buried in Itayle;  
 For whiche I eryl in open audienee,  
 No weddid man so hardy be to assayle  
 His wyves pacience, in hope to fynde  
 Grisildes, for in eerteyn he schal fayle.

O noble wyves, ful of heigh prudenece,  
 Let noon humilité your tonges nayle;  
 Ne lat no clerk have eause or diligenece  
 To write of yow a story of such mervayle, 10  
 As of Grisildes, paeient and kynde,  
 Lest Chichivache yow swolwe in hir entraile.

Folwith ecco, that holdith no silenec,  
 But ever answereth at the countretayle;  
 Beth nought bydaffed for your innocence,  
 But scharply tak on yow the governayle;  
 Empryntith wel this lessoun on your mynde,  
 For comun profyt, sith it may avayle.

Ye archewyves, stondith at defens,  
 Syn ye ben strong, as is a greet ehamayle, 20  
 Ne suffre not that men yow don offens.  
 And sclendre *wives*, felle as in batayle,  
 Beth egre as is a tyger yond in Inde;  
 Ay clappith as a mylle, I yow counsaile.

Ne drede hem not, do hem no reverence,  
 For though thin housbond armed be in mayle,  
 The arwes of thy erabbid eloquence  
 Schal perse his brest, and eek his adventayle:  
 In gelousy I rede eek thou him bynde,

And thou schalt make him couche as doth a quayle.

If thou be fair, ther folk ben in presence 31  
Schew thou thy visage and thin apparaile ;  
If thou be foul, be fre of thy despense,  
To gete the frendes do ay thy travayle ;  
Be ay of chier as light as lef on lynde,  
And let hem care and wepe, and wryng and wayle.



## PROLOGE OF THE MARCHAUNDES TALE

**W**EPYNG and wailynge, care and other  
sorwe

I knowe ynough, bothe on even and on  
morwe ;

Quod the Marchaund, ‘ and so doon other mo,  
That weddid ben ; I trowe that it be so,  
For wel I woot it fareth so with me.

I have a wyf, the worste that may be,  
For though the feend to hir y-coupled were,  
Sche wold him overmacche I dar wel swere.

What schuld I yow reherse in special  
Hir high malice ? sche is a schrewe at al. 10

Ther is a long and a large difference

Betwix Grisildes grete pacience,

And of my wyf the passyng cruelté.

Were I unbounden, al-so mot I the,

I wolde never eft come in the snare.

We weddid men lyve in sorwe and care,

Assay it who-so wil, and he schal fynde

That I say soth, by seint Thomas of Inde,

As for the more part, I say not alle ;

God schilde that it scholde so byfalle. 20

A ! good sir host, I have y-weddid be

This monethes tuo, and more not, pardé ;

And yit I trowe that he, that al his lyve

Wyfles hath ben, though that men wold him rive

Unto the hert, ne couthe in no manere

Tellen so mocho sorwe, as I now heere

Couthe telle of my wyfes cursednesse.'

'Now,' quod our ost, 'Marchaunt, so God yow  
blesse !

Sin ye so moche knowen of that art,

Ful hertily tellith us a part.'

30

'Gladly,' quod he, '*but* of myn oughne sore

For sory hert I telle may na more.'

### THE MARCHAUNDES TALE.



WHILOM ther was dwellyng in Lombardy

A worthy knight, that born was of

Pavy,

In which he lyved in gret prosperité;

And fourty yer a wifles man was he,

And folwed ay his bodily delyt

On wommen, ther *as* was his appetyt,

As doon these fooles that ben seculere.

And whan that he was passed *sixty* yere,

Were it for holyness or for dotage,

I can not say, but such a gret corrage

10

Hadde this knight to ben a weddid man,

That day and night he doth al that he can

Taspye wher that he mighte weddid be;

Praying our Lord to graunte him, that he

Might oones knowen of that blisful lif

That is bitwix an housbond and his wyf,

And for to lyve under that holy bond

With which God first man to womman bond.

‘Noon other lif,’ sayd he, ‘is worth a bene ;  
For wedlok is so holy and so elene, 20  
That in this world it is a paradis.’  
Thus sayde this olde knight, that was so wys.  
And certeinly, as soth as God is king,  
To take a wyf is a glorious thing,  
And namely whan a man is old and hoor,  
Than is a wyf the fruyt of his tresor ;  
Than schuld he take a yong wif and a fair,  
On which he might engendre him an heir,  
And lede his lyf in mirthe and solace,  
Wheras these bachileres synge allas, 30  
Whan that thay fynde eny adversité  
In love, which is but childes vanité.  
And trewely it sit wel to be so,  
That bachilers have ofte peyne and wo ;  
On brutil ground thay bulde, *and* brutelnesse  
Thay fynde, whan thay wene sikernesse ;  
Thay lyve but as a brid other as a best,  
In liberté and under noon arrest ;  
Ther as a weddid man, in his estate,  
Lyvith his lif blisful and ordinate, 40  
Under the yok of mariage i-bounde,  
Wel may his herte in joye and blisse abounde ;  
For who can be so buxom as a wyf ?  
Who is so trewe and eek so ententyf  
To kepe him, seek and hool, as is his make ?  
For wele or woo sehe wol him not forsake.  
Sehe is not wery him to love and serve,  
Theigh that he lay bedred til that he sterve.  
And yet som clerkes seyn it is not so,  
Of whiche Theofrast is oon of tho. 50  
What fors though Theofraste liste lye ?

Ne take no wif, quod he, for housbondrye,  
As for to spare in houshold thy dispense ;  
A trewe servaunt doth more diligence  
Thy good to kepe, than thin oughne wif,  
For sehe wol elayme half part in al hir life.  
And if that thou be seek, so God me save,  
Thyne verray frendes or a trewe knave  
Wol kepe the bet than sche that waytith ay  
After thy good, and hath doon many a day. 60  
And if that thou take a wif, be war  
Of oon peril, which declare I ne dar.

This entent, and an hundrid sithe wors,  
Writith this man, ther God his bones eurs.  
But take no keep of al such vanité ;  
Deffy Theofrast, and herkne me.

A wyf is Goddes yifte verrayly ;  
Al other maner yiftes hardily,  
As landes, rentes, pasture, or comune,  
Or other moebilis, ben yiftes of fortune, 70  
That passen as a schadow on a wal.  
But dred not, if I playnly telle schal,  
A wyf wil last and in thin hous endure,  
Wel lenger than the lust peradventure.

Mariage is a ful gret sacrament ;  
He which hath no wif I hold him sehent ;  
He lyveth helples, and is al desolate  
(I speke of folk in seeuler estate).

And herken why, I say not this for nought,  
That womman is for mannes help i-wrought. 80  
The heighe God, whan he had Adam maked,  
And saugh him *al* aloone body naked,  
God of his grete goodnes sayde thanne,  
Let us now make an helpe to this manne



Lyk to himself; and than he made Eve.  
 Her may ye see, and here may ye preve,  
 That wyf is mannes help and his comfort,  
 His paradis terrestre and his desport.  
 So buxom and so vertuous is sche,  
 Thay mosten neede lyve in unité;  
 O fleisch thay ben, and on blood, as I gesse,  
 Have but oon hert in wele and in distresse:

90

A wyf? a! seinte Mary, *benedicite*,  
 How might a man have eny adversité  
 That hath a wyf? certes I can not saye.  
 The joye that is betwixen hem twaye.  
 Ther may no tonge telle or herte thinke.  
 If he be pore, sche helpith him to swynke;  
 Sche kepith his good, and wastith never a del;  
 And al that her housbond list, sche likith it wel;  
 Sche saith nought oones nay, whan he saith ye;  
 Do this, saith he; al redy, sir, saith sche.

O blisful ordre, o wedlok precious!  
 Thou art so mery, and eek so vertuous,  
 And so comendid, and approved eek,  
 That every man that holt him worth a leck,  
 Upon his bare knees ought al his lyf  
 Thanken his God, that him hath sent a wif,  
 Or praye to God oon him for to sende  
 To be with him unto his lyves ende.  
 For than his lyf is set in sikernesse;  
 He may not be deceyved, as I gesse,  
 So that he worche after his wyfes red;  
 Than may be boldely bere up his heed,  
 Thay ben so trewe, and also so wyse,  
 For whiche, if thou wolt do as the wyse,  
 Do alway so, as womman wol the rede.

110

Lo how that Jacob, as the clerkes rede,  
 By good counseil of his moder Rebecke,  
 Band the kydes skyn aboute his nekke ; 120  
 For which his fader benesoun he wan.

Lo Judith, as the story telle can,  
 By wys counseil seche Goddes poepel kepte,  
 And slough him Oliphernus whil he slepte.

Lo Abygaille, by good counseil how sche  
 Savyd hir housbond *Nabal*, whan that he  
 Schold han ben slayn. And loke, *Hester* also  
 By good counseil delivered out of wo  
 The poeple of God, and made him *Mardoche*  
 Of Assuere enhaunsed for to be. 130

Ther nys no thing in gre superlatif  
 (As saith Senec) above an humble wyf.  
 Suffre thy wyves tonge, as Catoun byt,  
 She schal comaunde, and thou schalt suffre it,  
 And yit sche wil obeye of eurtesy.

A wif is keper of thin housbondrye :  
 Wel may the sike man wayle and wepe,  
 Ther as ther is no wyf the hous to kepe.  
 I warne the, if wisly thou wilt wirehe,  
 Love wel thy wyf, as Crist *loveth* his chirche ; 140  
 If thou lovest thiself, thou lovest thy wyf.  
 No man hatith his fleissch, but in his lif  
 He fostrith it, and therfore warne I the  
 Cherissch thy wyf, or thou schalt never the.  
 Housbond and wif, what so men jape or pleye,  
 Of worldly folk holden the righte weye ;  
 Thay ben so knyht, ther may noon harm bytyde,  
 And nameliche upon the wyves syde.  
 For which this January, of which I tolde,  
 Considered hath inwith his dayes olde 150

The lusty lif, the vertuous quite,  
That is in mariage honey-swete.

And for his frendes on a day he sente  
To tellen hem theeffect of his entente.  
With face sad, he hath hem this tale told ;  
He sayde, ‘ Frendes, I am hoor and old,  
And almost (God woot) at my pittes brinke,  
Upon my soule som-what most I thynke.  
I have my body folily dispendid,  
Blessed be God that it schal be amendid ; 160  
For I wil be certeyn a weddid man,  
And that anoon in al the hast I can,  
Unto som mayde, fair and tender of age.  
I pray yow helpith for my mariage  
Al sodeynly, for I wil not abyde ;  
And I wil fonde tesprien on my syde,  
To whom I may be weddid hastily.  
But for als moche as ye ben mo than I,  
Ye schul rather such a thing asprien  
Than I, and wher me lust best to allien. 170  
But oo thing warne I yow, my frendes deere,  
I wol noon old wyf have in no manere ;  
Sche schal not passe sixtene yer certayn.  
Old fleisch and young fleisch, that wold I have ful fayn.  
Bet is,’ quod he, ‘ a pyk than a pikerel,  
And bet than olde boef is the tendre vel.  
I wil no womman twenty yer of age,  
It nys but bene-straw and gret forage.  
And eek these olde wydewes (God it woot)  
Thay can so moche craft of Wades boot, 180  
So moche broken harm whan that hem list,  
That with hem schuld I never lyven in rest.  
For sondry scolis maken subtil clerkes ;

Womman of many a scole half a clerk is.  
But eerteyn, a yong thing may men gye,  
Right as men may warm wax with houndes plye.  
Wherfor I say yow plenerly in a clause,  
I wil noon old wyf han right for that cause.  
For if so were I hadde so meschaunce,  
That I in hir ne couthe have no plesaunce, 190  
Then schuld I lede my lyf in advoutrie,  
And go streight to the devel whan I dye.  
Ne children schuld I noon upon hir geten ;  
Yet were me lever houndes hadde me eten,  
Than that myn heritage schulde falle  
In straunge hond ; and thus I telle yow alle.  
I doute not, I wot the cause why  
Men scholde wedde ; and forthermor woot I,  
Ther spekith many man of mariage,  
That wot nomore of it than wot my page 200  
For whiche causes man schulde take a wyf.  
If he ne may not chast be by his lif,  
Take him a wif with gret devocioun,  
Bycause of lawful procreacioun  
Of children, to thonour of God above,  
And not oonly for paramour and for love ;  
And for thay schulde leccherye eschiewe,  
And yeld oure dettes whan that it is due ;  
Or for that ilk man schulde helpen other  
In meschief, as a suster schal to the brother, 210  
And lyve in chastité ful hevenly.  
But, sires, by your leve, that am not I,  
For God be thanked, I dar make avaunt,  
I fele my lemys stark and suffisaunt  
To doon al that a man bilongeth unto ;  
I wot my selve best what I may do.

‘ Though I be hoor, I fare as doth a tree,  
That blossomith er that the fruyt i-waxe be,  
A blossemy tre is neither drye ne deed ;  
I fele me no-wher hoor but on myn heed. 220  
Myn herte and *alle* my lymes ben as greene,  
As laurer thurgh the yeer is for to scene.  
And synnes ye han herd al myn entente,  
I pray yow to my wille *that* ye assente.’

Diverse men diversly him tolde  
Of mariage many ensamples olde ;  
Some blamed it, some praised it certayn ;  
But atte laste, schortly for to sayn,  
(As alday fallith altereacioun,  
Bitwixe frendes in despitesoun) 230  
Ther fel a strif bitwen his bretheren tuo,  
Of which that oon was clepid Placebo,  
Justinus sothly cleped was that other.  
Placebo sayde : ‘ O January, brother,  
Ful litel need hadde ye, my lord so deere,  
Counseil to axe of eny that is heere ;  
But that ye ben so ful of sapience,  
That yow ne likith for your heigh prudence  
To wayve fro the word of Salamon.  
This word, said he, unto us everychoon : 240  
Werk al thing by counsail, thus sayd he,  
And thanne schaltow nought repente the.  
But though that Salamon speke such a word,  
Myn owne deere brother and my lord,  
So wisly God bring my soule at ese and rest,  
I holde your oughne counseil is the best.  
For, brother myn, of me tak this motif,  
I have now ben a court-man al my lyf,  
And God wot, though that I unworthy be,

I have standen in ful gret degre 250  
Abouten lordes in ful high estat ;  
Yit had I never with noon of hem debaat,  
I never hem contraried trewely.  
I wot wel that my lord can more than I ;  
What that he saith, I hold it ferm and stable,  
I say the same, or elles thing semblable.  
A ful gret fool is eny counselour,  
That servith any lord of high honour,  
That dar presume, or oones thenken it,  
That his counseil schulde passe his lordes wit. 260  
Nay, lordes ben no fooles by my fay,  
Ye have your self y-spoken heer to day  
So heigh sentens, so holly, and so wel,  
That I consente, and conferme every del  
Your wordes alle, and youre oppinioun.  
By God ther is no man in al this toun  
Ne in Ytaile, couthe better have sayd ;  
Crist holdith him of this ful wel apayd.  
And trewely it is an heigh corrage  
Of any man that stoupen is in age, 270  
To take a yong wyf, by my fader kyn ;  
Your herte hongith on a joly pyn.  
Doth now in this matier right as yow leste,  
For fynally I hold it for the beste.'  
Justinus, that ay stille sat and herde,  
Right in this wise he to Placebo answerde.  
' Now, brother myn, be pacient I yow pray,  
Syns ye have sayd, and herknith what I say :  
Senek amonges other wordes wyse  
Saith, that a man aught him wel avyse. 280  
To whom he yiveth his lond or his eatel.  
And syns I aught avyse me right wel,

To whom I yive my good away fro me,  
Wel more I aught avised for to be  
To whom I yive my body; for alwey  
I warn yow wel it is no childes pley  
To take a wyf withoute avisement.  
Men most enquire (this is myn assent)  
Wher sche be wys, or sobre, or dronkelewe,  
Or proud, or eny other way a schrewe, 290  
A chyder, or a wastour of thy good,  
Or riche or pore, or elles man is wood.  
Al be it so, that no man fynde schal  
Noon in this world, that trottith hool in al,  
Neyther man, ne best, such as men can devyse.  
But natheles it aught y-nough suffise  
With any wyf, if so were that sche hadde  
Mo goode thewes than hir vices badde;  
And al this askith leysur to enquire.  
For God woot, I have weped many a tere 300  
Ful prively, syns I have had a wyf.  
Prayse who so wil a weddid mannes lif,  
Certes I fynd in it but cost, and care,  
And observaunce of alle blisses bare.  
And yit, God woot, myn neighebours aboute,  
And namely of wommen many a route,  
Sayn that I have the moste stedefast wyf,  
And eek the meekest oon that berith lyf;  
But I woot best, wher wryngith me my scho.  
Ye maye for me right as yow liste do. 310  
Avysith yow, ye ben a man of age,  
How that ye entren into mariage;  
And namly with a yong wif and a fair.  
By Him that made water, eorthe, and air,  
The yongest man, that is in al this route,



Is busy ynough to bring it wel aboute  
 To have his wif alloone, trustith me ;  
 Ye schul not please hir fully yeres thre,  
 This is to saye, to doon hir ful plesaunce.  
 A wyf axith ful many an observaunce. 320  
 I pray yow that ye be not evel apayd.  
 ‘ Wel,’ quod this January, ‘ and hastow sayd ?  
 Straw for thy Sence, and for thy proverbis !  
 I *counte* nought a panyer ful of herbes  
 Of scole termes ; wiser men than thow,  
 As I have sayd, assenten her right now  
 Unto my purpose : Placebo, what say ye ?  
 ‘ I say it is a cursed man,’ quod he,  
 ‘ That lettith matrimoigne sieurly.’  
 And with that word thay rysen up sodeinly, 330  
 And ben assented fully, that he scholde  
 Be weddid whan him lust, and wher he wolde.

Tho fantasy and the curious busynesse  
 Fro day to day gan in the soule impresse  
 Of January aboute his mariage.  
 Many a fair sehap, and many a fair visage,  
 Ther passith thorough his herte night by night.  
 As who so took a mirroure polissched bright,  
 And set it in a comun market place,  
 Than schuld he se many a figure pace 340  
 By his mirroure ; and in the same wise  
 Gan January in his thought devyse  
 Of maydens, which that dwellid him bisyde ;  
 He wiste not where that he might abyde.  
 For though that oon have beauté in hir face,  
 Another stant so in the poeples grace  
 For hir sadness and hir benignité,  
 That of the poeple grettest vois hath sche ;

And som were riche and hadde badde name.  
But natheles, bitwix earnest and game, 350  
He atte last appoynted him anoon,  
And let al other fro his herte goon,  
And ches hir of his oughne auctorité,  
For love is blynd al day, and may not se.  
And whan he was into the bedde brought,  
He purtrayed in his hert and in his thought  
Hir freische beauté, and hir age tendre,  
Hir myddel smal, hir armes long and sclendre,  
Hir wise governaunce, hir gentillesse,  
Hir wommanly beryng, and hir sadnesse. 360

And whan that he on hir was condescendid,  
Him thought his choismighte nought ben amendid:  
For whan that he himself concludid hadde,  
Him thought ech other mannes *witte* so badde,  
That impossible it were to repplie  
Agayn his choys: this was his fantasie.  
His frendes sent he to, at his instaunce,  
And prayed hem to doon him that plesaunce,  
That hastily thay wolde to him come;  
He wold abrigge her labour alle and some. 370  
Nedith no more for him to gon ne ryde,  
He was appoynted ther he wold abyde.  
Placebo eam, and cek his frendes soone,  
And althirfirst he bad hem alle a boone,  
That noon of hem noon argumentis make  
Agayn the purpos which that he hadde take;  
Which purpos was plesaunt to God, sayd he,  
And verray ground of his prosperité.

He sayde, ther was a mayden in the toun,  
Which that of beauté hadde gret renoun, 380  
Al were it so, sche were of smal degre,

Suffisith him hir *youth*e and hir beauté;  
Which mayde, he sayd, he wold have to his wyf,  
To lede in ease and holinesse his lyf;  
And thankede God, that he might have hir al,  
That no wight with his blisse parten schal;  
And preyed hem to laboure in this neede,  
And schapen that he faile not to speede.  
For than he sayd, his spirit was at ease;  
'Than is,' quod he, 'no thing may me displease,  
Save oon thing prikkith in my conscience, 391  
The which I wil reherse in your presence.  
I have herd sayd,' quod he, 'ful yore ago,  
Ther may no man have parfyt blisses tuo,  
This is to say, in erthe and eek in hevene.  
For though he kepe him fro the synnes sevene,  
And eek from ylk a braunche of thilke tre,  
Yit is ther so parfyt felicité  
And so gret ease and lust in mariage,  
That ever I am agast now in myn age, 400  
That I schal lede now so mery a lyf,  
So delicat, withoute wo and stryf,  
That I schal have myn heven in erthe heere.  
For sith that verrey heven is bought so deere  
With tribulacioun and gret penaunce,  
How schuld I thanne, that live in such plesaunce  
As alle wedded men doon with her wyves,  
Come to blisse ther Crist eterne on lyve is?  
This is my drede, and ye, my bretheren tweye,  
Assoilith me this questioun, I yow preye.' 410

Justinus, which that hated his folye,  
Answerd anon right in his japerie;  
And for he wold his longe tale abrigge,  
He wolde noon auctorité alegge,

But sayde, ‘ Sir, so ther be noon obstacle  
Other than this, God of his high miracle,  
And of his mercy may so for yow wirche,  
That er ye have your rightes of holy chirche  
Ye may repente of weddid mannes lyf,  
In which ye sayn ther is no wo ne stryf; 420  
And ellis God forbede, but he sente  
A weddid man grace him to repente  
Wel ofte, rather than a sengle man.  
And therfor, sire, the beste reed I can,  
Dispaire yow nought, but have in youre memorie,  
Peradventure she may be your purgatorie ;  
Sche may be Goddes mene and Goddes whippe ;  
Than schal your soule up to heven skippe  
Swyfter than doth an arwe out of a bowe.  
I hope to God herafter ye shuln knowe, 430  
That ther nys noon so gret felicité  
In mariage, ne nevermor schal be,  
That you schal lette of your savacioun,  
So that ye use, as skile is and resoun,  
The lustes of your wyf attemperely,  
And that ye please hir not to amorously ;  
And that ye kepe yow eek from other synne.  
My tale is doon, for my witt is thynne.  
Beth not agast hereof, my brother deere,  
But let us waden out of this matiere. 440  
The wif of Bathe, if ye han understonde,  
Of mariage, which ye han now in honde,  
Declared hath ful wel in litel space ;  
Fareth now wel, God have yow in his grace.’

And with that word this Justinus and his brother  
Han tak her leve, and eek of hem of other.  
And whan they saughe that it moste needis be,

Thay wroughten so by sleight and wys treté,  
That sche this mayden, which that Mayus highte,  
As hastily as ever that sche mighte, 450  
Schal weddid be unto this Januarie.

I trow it were to longe yow to tarie,  
If I yow tolde of every scrit and bond,  
By which that sche was feoffed in his lond ;  
Or for to herken of hir riche array.

But finally y-comen is that day,  
That to the chirche bothe ben thay went,  
For to receyve the holy sacrament.  
Forth comth the preost, with stoole about his necke,  
And bad hir be lik Sarra and Rebecke 460  
In wisdom and in trouth of mariage ;  
And sayd his orisouns, as is usage,  
And crouched hem, and bad God schuld hem blesse  
And made al secur ynowgh with holinesse.

Thus ben thay weddid with solempnité ;  
And atte fest sittith he and sche  
With othir worthy folk upon the deys.  
Al ful of joy and blis is that paleys.  
And ful of instrumentz, and of vitaile,  
The moste deintevous of al Ytaile. 470

Biforn hem stood such instruments of soun,  
That Orpheus, ne of Thebes Amphion,  
Ne maden never such a melodye.

At every cours ther cam loud menstrelaye,  
That never tromped Joab for to heere,  
Ne he Theodomas yit half so eleere  
At Thebes, whan the cite was in doute.

Bachus the wyn hem schenclith al aboute,  
And Venus laughith upon every wight,  
(For January was bycome hir knight, 480

And wolde bothe assayen his corrage  
In liberté and eek in mariage)  
And with hir fuyrbrond in hir hond aboute  
Daunceth bfore the bryde and al the route.  
And certeynly I dar right wel saye this,  
Imeneus, that god of weddyng is,  
Seigh never his lif so mery a weddid man.  
Holde thy pees, thow poete Marcian,  
That writest us that ilke weddyng merye  
Of hir Philologic and *him* Mercurie, 490  
And of the songes that the Muses songe ;  
To smal is bothe thy penne and eek thy tonge  
For to describe of this mariage.  
Whan tender youthe hath weddid stoupyng age,  
Ther is such mirthe that it may not be write ;  
Assaieth it your self, than may ye wyte  
If that I lye or noon in this mateere.  
Mayus, that sit with so benigne a cheere,  
Hir to bihold it semede fayerye ;  
Queen Esther lokede never with such an ye 500  
On Assuere, so meke a look hath sche ;  
I may not yow devyse al hir beauté ;  
But thus moche of hir beauté telle I may,  
That sche was lyk the brighte morw of May,  
Fulfilde of alle beauté and plesaunce.

This January is ravyscht in a traunce,  
At every tyme he lokith in hir face,  
But in his hert he gan hir to manace,  
That he that night in armes wold hir streyne  
Harder than ever Paris did Eleyne. 510  
But natheles yit had he gret pité  
That thilke night offenden hir most he,  
And thought : ‘ Alas ! O tendre creature,

Now wolde God ye mighte wel endure  
Al my corrage, it is so scharp and keene;  
I am agast ye schul it not susteene.  
For God forbede, that I dede al my might.  
Now wolde God that it were woxe night,  
And that the night wolde stonden evermo.  
I wolde that al this poeple were ago.'

520

And fynally he doth al his labour,  
As he best mighte, savyng his honour,  
To hast hem from the mete in subtil wise.

The tyme eam that resoun was to ryse,  
And after that men daunce, and drynke faste,  
And spices al about the hous thay easte,  
And ful of joy and blis is every man,  
Al but a squier, that hight Damyan,  
Which karf to-for the knight ful many a day;  
He was so ravyssht on his lady May,  
That for the verray peyne he was nigh wood:  
Almost he swelt and swowned as he stood;  
So sore hath Venus hurt him with hir brond,  
As that sche bar it daunsyng in hir hond.  
And to his bed he went him hastily;  
No more of him as at this tyme telle I;  
But ther I lete him now his wo compleyne,  
Til freisshe May wol rewen on his peyne.

530

O perilous fuyr, that in the bed-straw bredith!  
O famuler fo, that his service bedith!

540

O servaunt traitour, false homly hewe,  
Lyk to the nedder *sleighe* in bosom untrewe,  
God schild us alle from your aequeintance!  
O January, dronken in plesaunce  
Of mariage, se how thy Damyan,  
Thyn oughne squier and thy borne man,



Entendith for to do the vilonye ;  
God graunte the thin homly fo espye.  
For in this world nys worse pestilence  
Than homly foo, alday in thy presence. 550

Parfourmed hath the sonne his ark diourne,  
No lenger may the body of him sojourne  
On thorisonte, as in *that* latitude ;  
Night with his mantel, that is derk and rude,  
Gan oversprede themesperie aboute ;  
For which departed is the *lusti* route  
Fro January, with thank on every side.  
Hoom to her houses lustily thay ryde,  
Wher as they doon her thinges, as hem leste,  
And whan they seigh her tyme thay goon to reste.  
Soone after that this hasty Januarie 561

Wolde go to bed, he wolde no lenger tarie.  
He drinkith ypocras, clarre, and vernage  
Of spices hote, to encrese his corrage ;  
And many a letuary had he ful fyn,  
Such as the cursed monk daun Constantin  
Hath writen in his book *de Coitu* ;  
To ete hem alle he *wolde* no thing eschieu.  
And to his privé frendes thus sayd he :  
' For Goddes love, as soon as it may be, 570  
Let voyden al this hous in curteys wise.'

And thay han doon right as he wolde devyse.  
Men drinken, and the travers drawe anoon ;  
The bruyd was 'brought abedde as stille as stoon ;  
And whan the bed was with the prest i-blessid,  
Out of the chambre hath every wight him dressed,  
And January hath fast in armes take  
His freisshe May, his paradys, his make.  
He lullith hir, he kissith hir ful ofte ;

With thikke bristlis on his berd unsofte, 580  
 Lik to the skyn of houndfisch, scharp as brere,  
 (For he was schave al newe in his manere)  
 He rubbith hir about hir tendre face,  
 And sayde thus: 'Allas! I mot trespace  
 To yow, my spouse, and yow gretly offende,  
 Or tyme come that I wol doun descende;  
 But natheles considerith this,' quod he,  
 'Ther nys no werkmen, whatsoever he be,  
 That may botlie werke wel and hastily;  
 This wol be doon at loysir parfitly. 590  
 It is no fors how longe that we pleye;  
 In trewe wedlock couplid be we tweye;  
 And blessed be the yok that we ben inne,  
 For in our aetes we mowe do no synne.  
 A man may do no synne with his wif,  
 Ne hurt himselven with his oughne knyf:  
 For we han leve to play us by the lawe.'

Thus laborith he, til that the day gan dawne,  
 And than he takith a sop in fyn clarré,  
 And upright in his bed than sittith he. 600  
 And after that he song ful lowd and cleré,  
 And kissed his wyf, and made wantoun cheere.  
 He was al coltissch, ful of ragerye,  
 And ful of jargoun, as a flekked pye.  
 The slakke skyn about his nekke *schaketh*,  
 Whil that he song, so chaunteth he and craketh.  
 But God wot what that May thought in hir hert,  
 Whan sehe him saugh up sittying in his schert,  
 In his night-cappe, and with his nekke lene;  
 Schie praysith nought his pleying worth a bene.  
 Than sayd he thus: 'My reste wol I take 611  
 Now day is come, I may no lenger wake.'

And down he layd his heed and sleep til prime.  
 And afterward, whan that he saugh his tyme,  
 Up riseth January, but freissehe May  
 Holdith hir chamber unto the fourthe day,  
 As usage is of wyves for the best.  
 For every labour som tyme moot have rest,  
 Or elles longe may he not endure ;  
 This is to saye, no lyves creature,  
 Be it *of* fisch, or brid, or best, or man.

620

Now wol I speke of woful Damyan,  
 That languyssheth for love, as ye sehuln here ;  
 Therefore I speke to him in this manere.  
 I say, ‘O sely Damyan, allas !  
 Answer to my demaunde, as in this caas,  
 How sehaltow to thy lady, freissehe May,  
 Telle thy woo ? Sche wol alway saye nay ;  
 Eek if thou speke, sche wol thy woo bywreye ;  
 God be thin help, I ean no better seye.’

630

This seke Damyan in Venus fuyr  
 So brennith, that he deyeth for desir ;  
 For which he put his lyf in aventure,  
 No lenger might he in this wo endure,  
 But prively a penner gan he borwe,  
 And in a letter wrot he al his sorwe,  
 In maner of a compleynt or of a lay,  
 Unto his faire freissehe lady May.  
 And in a purs of silk, heng on his schert,  
 He hath it put, and layd it at his hert.

640

The moone that at noon was thilke day  
 That January hadde weddid freissehe May  
 In tuo of Taure, was into Canere gliden ;  
 So long hath Mayus in hir chambre abiden,  
 As custum is unto these nobles alle.

A bryde schal not eten in the halle,  
Til dayes foure or thre dayes atte lest  
I-passed ben, than let hir go to the fest.  
The fourthe day complet fro noon to noon,  
Whan that the heighe masse was i-doon, 650  
In halle sitte this January and May,  
As freissch as is the brighte someres day.  
And so bifelle, that this goode man  
Remembrid him upon this Damyan,  
And sayde, 'Seinte Mary ! how may this be,  
That Damyan entendith not to me ?  
Is he ay seek ? or how may this bityde ?'  
His squiers, which that stode ther bisyde,  
Excusid him, bycause of his syknesse,  
Which letted him to doon his busynesse ; 660  
Noon other cause mighte make him tarie.  
'That me for-thinketh,' quod this Januarie ;  
'He is a gentil squyer, by my trouthe,  
If that he deyde, it were harm and routhe.  
He is as wys, discret, and eek seeré,  
As any man I wot of his degré,  
And therto manerly and servysable,  
And for to be a thrifty man right able.  
But after mete, as soon as ever I may,  
I wol myself visit him, and eek May, 670  
To doon him al the confort that I can.'  
And for that word him blessed every man,  
That of his bounté and his gentillesse  
He wolde so comfort in his seekenesse  
His squyer, for it was a gentil deede.  
'Dame,' quod this January, 'tak good heede,  
At after-mete, ye with your wommen alle,  
(Whan ye han ben in chambre out of this halle)

That alle ye goo to se this Damyan ;  
Doth him desport, he is a gentil man, 680  
And tellith him that I wil him visite,  
Have I no thing but rested me a lyte ;  
And spedith yow faste, for I wol abyde  
'Til that ye slepe faste by my syde.'

And with that word he gan unto him calle  
A squier, that was marchal of his halle,  
And told him certeyn thinges what he wolde.

This freissche May hath streight hir wey i-holde  
With alle hir wommen unto Damyan.  
Doun by his beddes syde sat sche than, 690  
Comfortyng him as goodly as sche may.

This Damyan, whan that his tyme he say,  
In secré wise, his purs, and eek his bille,  
In which that he i-writen had his wille,  
Hath put into hir hond withouten more,  
Save that he siketh wonder deepe and sore,  
And softly to hir right thus sayd he ;  
'Mercy, and that ye not discover me ;  
For I am deed, if that this thing *be kud*.'  
This purs *hath sche inwith hir bosom hud*, 700  
And went hir way ; ye gete no more of me ;  
But unto January comen is sche,  
That on his beddes syde sit ful softe.  
He takith hir, and kissith hir ful ofte ;  
And layd him doun to slepe, and that anoon.  
Sche feyned hir as that sche moste goon  
Ther as ye woot that every wight moot neede ;  
And whan sche of this bille hath taken heede,  
Sche rente it al to cloutes atte laste,  
And into the privy softly it caste. 710

Who studieth now but faire freissche May ?

Adoun by olde January sche lay,  
 That slepith, til that the eonghe hath him awaked ;  
 Anoon he prayde stripen hir al naked,  
 He wold of hir, he sayd, have som plesaunce ;  
 Hir clothis dede him, he sayde, som grevaunce.  
 And sche obeieth, be hir lief or loth.  
 But lest that precious folk be with me wroth,  
 How that he wroughte I dar not telle,  
 Or whethir it semed him paradys or helle ; 720  
 But here I lete hem werken in her wise  
 Til evensong rong, and than thay most arise.

Whethir it be by desteny or adventure,  
 Were it by influence, or by nature,  
 Or by eonstellaeioun, that in such estate  
 The heven stood that tyme fortunate,  
 As for to putte a *bille* of Venus werkis  
 (For alle thing hath tyme, as seyn these clerkis)  
 To eny womman for to gete hir love,  
 I can not saye ; but grete God above, 730  
 That knowith that noon aete is causeles,  
 He demeth of al, for I wil holde my pees.  
 But soth is this, how that this freisshe May  
 Hath take such impressioun that day,  
 Of pité on this sike Damyan,  
 That from hir herte sche ne dryve can  
 The remembraunce for to doon him ease.  
 ‘ Certeyn,’ thought sche, ‘ whom that this thing  
 displease  
 I rekke not, for her I him assure,  
 To love him best of eny creature, 740  
 Though he no more hadde than his scherte.’  
 Lo, pité renneth soone in gentil herte.  
 Heer may ye see, how excellent franchise

In womman is whan thay narow hem avyse.  
Som tyraunt is, as ther ben many oon,  
That hath an hert as hard as is a stoon,  
Which wold han lete sterven in the place  
Wel rather than han graunted him her grace ;  
And hem rejoysen in her cruel pride,  
And rekken nought to ben an homieide. 750

This gentil May, fulfillid of pité,  
Right of hir hond a letter makede sche,  
In which sche grauntith him hir verray grace ;  
Ther lakkide nought but oonly day and place,  
Wher that sche might unto his lust suffise ;  
For it schal be right as he wol devyse.  
And whan sche saugh hir tyme upon a day  
To visite this Damyan goth May,  
And subtilly this lettre down sche thruste  
Under his pylow, rede it if him luste. 760  
Sche takith him by the hond, and hard him twiste  
So secrely, that no wight of it wiste,  
And bad him be al hool, and forth sche wente  
To January, whan that he for hir sente.  
Up ryseth Damyan the nexte morwe,  
Al passed was his siknes and his sorwe.  
He kembith him, he pruneth him and pyketh,  
He doth al that unto his lady likith ;  
And eek to January he goth as lowe  
As ever did a dogge for the bowe. 770

He is so plesaunt unto every man,  
(For craft is al, who so that do it can)  
That every wight is fayne to speke him good ;  
And fully in his ladys grace he stood.  
Thus lete I Damyan about his neede,  
And in my tale forth I wol procede.



Some clerkes holden that felicité  
Stant in delit, and therfor certeyn he  
This noble January, with al his might  
In honest wise as longith to a knight, 780  
Schop him to lyve ful deliciously.  
His housyng, his array, as honestly  
To his degre was maked as a kynges.  
Amonges other of his honest thinges  
He hade a gardyn walled al with stoon,  
So fair a gardyn wot I nowher noon.  
For out of doute I verrely suppose,  
That he that wroot the Romauns of the Rose,  
Ne couthe of hit the beauté wel devyse ;  
Ne Priapus ne mighte not wel suffice, 790  
Though he be god of gardyns, for to telle  
The beauté of the gardyn, and the welle,  
That stood under a laurer alway greene.  
Ful ofte tyme he Pluto and his queene  
Preserpina, and al the fayerie,  
Desporten hem and maken melodye  
Aboute that welle, and daunced, as men tolde.  
This noble knight, this January the olde,  
Such deynté hath in it to walk and pleye,  
That he wolde no wight suffre bere the keye, 800  
Save he himself, for of the smale wyket  
He bar alway of silver a smal eliket,  
With which whan that him list he it unschette.  
And whan he wolde pay his wyf hir dette  
In somer sesoun, thider wold he go,  
And May his wyf, and no wight but thay tuo ;  
And thinges which that weren not doon in bedde,  
He in the gardyn parformed hem and spedde.  
And in this wise many a mery day

Lyvede this January and freisehe May ; 810  
But worldly joye may not alway endure  
To January, ne to no creature.

O sodeyn hap ! o thou fortune unstable !  
Lyk to the scorioun so deseeyvable,  
That flaterist with thin heed whan thou wilt  
stynges ;

Thy tayl is deth, thurgh thin envenymynge.  
O britel joye ! o sweete venym queynte !  
O monster, that so subtilly eanst peynte  
Thyn yiftes, under hiew of stedfastnesse,  
That thou deseeyvest bothe more and lesse ! 820  
Why hastow January thus deceyved,  
That haddist him for thy fulle frend reeeyved ?  
And now thou hast byreft him bothe his yen,  
For sorw of which desireth he to dyen.

Allas ! this noble January fre,  
Amyd his lust and his prosperité  
Is woxe blynd, and that al sodeynly.  
He wepith and he weyleth pitously ;  
And therewithal, the fuyr of jalousye  
(Lest that his wif schulde falle in som folye) 830  
So brent his herte that he wolde fayn  
That som man bothe hir and him hadde slayn ;  
For neyther after his deth, nor in his lyf,  
Ne wold he that sche were love ne wyf,  
But ever lyve as wydow in clothes blake,  
Soul as the turtill that lost hath hir make.  
But atte last, after a moneth or tweye,  
His sorwe gan aswage, soth to seye.  
For whan he wist it may noon other be,  
He paeiently took his adversité ; 840  
Save out of doute he may not forgoon,

That he nas jalous evermore in oon ;  
Which jalousie it was so outrageous,  
That neyther in halle, ne in noon other hous,  
Ne in noon other place never the mo  
He nolde suffre hir to ryde or go,  
But-if that he hadde hond on hir alway.  
For which ful ofte wepeth friesche May,  
That loveth Damyan so benignely,  
That sche moot outhur deyen sodeinly,  
Or elles sche moot han him as hir leste ;  
She waytith whan hir herte wolde breste.  
Upon that other syde Damyan  
Bicomen is the sorwfulleste man  
That ever was, for neyther night ne day  
Ne might he speke a word to fressche May,  
As to his purpos, of no such matiere,  
But-if that January most it heere,  
That had an hond upon hir evermo.  
But natheles, by writyng to and fro,  
And privé signes, wist he what sche mente,  
And sche knew eek the fyn of his entente.

O January, what might it the availe,  
If thou might see as fer as schippes saile ?  
For as good is blynd deceyved be,  
As to be deceyved whan a man may see.  
Lo, Argus, which that had an hundred eyen,  
For al that ever he couthe poure or prien,  
Yet was he blent, as, God wot, so ben moo,  
That weneth wisly that it be nought so ;  
Passe over is an ease, I say no more.  
This freissche May, that I spak of so yore,  
In warm wex hath emprynted the eliket,  
That January bar of the smale wiket,

850

860

870

With which into his gardyn ofte he wente,  
And Damyan that knew al hir entente  
The eliket counterfeted prively ;  
Ther nys no more to saye, but hastily  
Som wonder by this eliket schal betyde,  
Which ye schal heeren, if ye wol abyde. 880

O noble Ovyde, wel soth saistow, God woot,  
What sleight is it though it be long and hoot,  
That he nyl fynd it out in som manere ?  
By Piramus and Thesbe may men leere ;  
Though they were kept ful longe streyt overal,  
Thay ben accorded, rownyng thurgh a wal,  
Ther no wight couthe han found out swich a sleight.  
For now to purpos ; er that dayes eyght  
Were passid *of* the moneth of Juyl, bifille 890  
That January hath caught so gret a wille,  
Thorugh eggynge of his wyf, him for to pleye  
In his gardyn, and no wight but *they* tweye,  
That in a morwe unto this May saith he :  
' Rys up, my wif, my love, my lady fre ;  
The turtlis vois is herd, my douve swete ;  
The wynter is goon, with his raynes wete.  
Come forth now with thin eyghen columbine.  
How fairer ben thy brestes than is the wyne.  
The gardyn is enclosed al aboute :  
Com forth, my swete spouse, out of doute, 900  
Thou hast me wounded in myn hert, o wyf ;  
No spot *in* the knew I in al my lif.  
Com forth, and let us take oure desport,  
I ches the for my wyf and my comfort.'  
Such olde lewed wordes used he.  
On Damyan a signe made sche,  
That he schulde go biforn with his eliket.

This Damyant than hath opened the wicket,  
And in he stert, and that in such manere,  
'That no wight it mighte see nor heere, 910  
And stille he seet under a busseh. Anoon  
This January, *as* blynd as is a stoon,  
With Mayus in his hond, and no wight mo,  
Into his freische gardyn is ago,  
And clappede to the wicket sodeinly.  
'Now, wyf,' quod he, 'her nys but ye and I,  
Thou art the creature that I best love ;  
For by that Lord that sit in heven above,  
Lever ich hadde to dyen on a knyf,  
Than the offende, deere trewe wyf. 920  
For Goddes sake, thenk how I the chees,  
Nought for no coveytise douteles,  
But oonly for the love I hadde to the.  
And though that I be old and may not se,  
Beeth trewe to me, and I wol telle yow why ;  
Thre thinges, certes, schul ye wyne therby ;  
First, love of Crist, and to your self honour,  
And al myn heritage, toun and tour.  
I give it yow, makith chartres as yow leste ;  
This schal ben doon to morw er sonne reste 930  
So wisly God my soule bringe in blisse !  
I pray yow first in covenant ye me kisse.  
And though that I be jalous, wyt me nought,  
Ye ben so deep emprinted in my thought,  
That whan that I considre your beauté,  
And therwithal the unlikly eelde of me,  
I may nought, certes, though I schulde dye,  
Forbere to ben out of your companye  
For verray love ; this is withouten doute  
Now kisse me, wyf, and let us rome aboute.' 940

This freisseche May, whan shee his wordes herde,  
Benignely to January answerde,  
But first and forward shee bigan to wepe :  
' I have,' quod shee, ' a soule for to kepe  
As wel as ye, and also myn honour,  
And of my wifhod thilke tendre flour,  
Whiche that I have ensured in your hond,  
Whan that the prest to yow my body bond ;  
Wherfor I wil answer in this manere,  
With the leve of yow, myn *owen* lord, so deere. 950  
I pray to God that never dawne the day,  
That I ne sterve, as foule as womman may,  
If ever I do unto my kyn that schame,  
Or elles I empaire so my name,  
That I be fals ; and if I do that lak,  
Doth strepe me, and put me in a sak,  
And in the nexte ryver do me drenche ;  
I am a gentil womman, and no wenche.  
Why speke ye thus ? but men ben ever untrewe,  
And wommen han reproof of yow ever newe. 960  
Ye have noon other contenaunce, I leve,  
But speke to us of untrust and repreve.'  
And with that word shee saugh wher Damyan  
Sat in the buissh, and coughen shee bigan ;  
And with hir fyngres signes made shee,  
That Damyan schulde elymb upon a tre,  
That charged was with fruyt, and up he wente ;  
For verrayly he knew al hir entente,  
And every signe that shee couthe make,  
Wel bet than January hir oughne make. 970  
For in a letter shee hadde told him al  
Of this matier, how he worche schal.  
And thus I lete him sitte in the pirie,

And January and May romynge mirye.

Bright was the day, and bliew the firmament;  
 Phebus hath of gold his stremes doun i-sent  
 To gladen every flour with his warmnesse;  
 He was that tyme in Gemines, as I gesse,  
 But litel fro his declinacioun  
 Of Canker, Joves exaltacioun.

980

And so bifel that brighte morwen tyde,  
 That in that gardyn, in the ferther syde,  
 Pluto, that is *the* kyng of fayerye,  
 And many a lady in his compaignie  
 Folwyng his wif, the queene Preserpina,  
*Whiche that he ravysched out of Cecilia,*  
 Whil that sche gadrede floures in the mede,  
 (In Claudian ye maye the story rede,  
 How in his grisly carte he hir fette);  
 This king of fayry than adoun him sette  
 Upon a bench of turves freissh and greene,  
 And right anoon thus sayd he to his queene:

990

‘My wyf,’ quod he, ‘ther may no wight saye nay,  
 Thexperiens so preveth every day,  
 The tresoun which that womman doth to man.  
 Ten hundrid thousand [stories] tellen I ean  
 Notable of your untrouth and brutelnesse.  
 O Salamon, wys and richest of richesse,  
 Fulfilde of sapiens, and of worldly glorie,  
 Ful worthy ben thy wordes to memorie  
 To every wight, that wit and resoun can.  
 Thus praysith he yit the bounté of man;  
 Among a thousand men yit fond I oon.  
 But of wommen alle found I *never* noon.  
 Thus saith the king, that knoweth your wikkednesse,  
 That Jhesus, *filius* Sirae, as I gesse,

1000



Ne spekith of yow but selde reverence.  
A wild fuyr and corrupt pestilence  
So falle upon your bodies yit to night !  
Ne see ye not this honorable knight ? 1010  
Bycause, allas ! that he is blynd and old,  
His owne man schal make him cokewold ;  
Loo, wher he sitt, the lecchour, in the tre !  
Now wol I graunten, of my majesté,  
Unto this olde blinde worthy knight,  
That he schal have ayein his eyghen sight,  
Whan that his wyf wol do him vilonye ;  
Than schal he knowe al her harlotrye,  
Bothe in reproof of her and other mo.’  
‘ Ye schal ? ’ quod Preserpine, ‘ and wol ye so ? 1020  
Now by my modres *Ceres* soule I swere,  
That I schal yive hir suffisaunt answer,  
And alle wommen after for hir sake ;  
That though thay be in any gult i-take,  
With face bold thay schul hemself excuse,  
And bere hem down that wolde hem accuse.  
For lak of answer, noon of hem schal dyen.  
Al had a man seyn a thing with bothe his yen,  
Yit schul we wymmen visage it hardily,  
And wepe, and swere, and chide subtilly, 1030  
So that ye men schul ben as lewed as gees ;  
What rekkith me of your auctoritees ?  
I wot wel that this Jew, this Salamon,  
Fond of us wommen fooles many oon ;  
But though he ne fond no good womman,  
Yit hath ther founde many another man  
Wommenful trewe, ful good, and vertuous ;  
Witnesse on hem that dwelle in Cristes hous,  
With martirdom thay proved her constaunce.

The Romayn gestes eek make remembraunce 1040  
Of many a verray trewe wyf also.

But, sire, be nought wrath, al be it so,  
Though that he sayd he fond no good womman,  
I pray yow tak the sentens of the man;  
He mente thus, that in sovereign bounté  
Nis noon but God, that sit in Trinité.

Ey, for verrey God that nys but oon,  
What make ye so moche of Salamon?  
What though he made a temple, Goddes hous?  
What though he were riche and glorious? 1050

So made he eek a temple of fals godis,  
How might he do a thing that more forbode is?  
Pardé, als fair as ye his name emplastre,  
He was a lecchour and an ydolastre,  
And in his eelde he verray God forsook;  
And if that God ne hadde (as saith the book)  
I-spared him for his fadres sake, he scholde  
Have lèst his regne rather than he wolde.

I sette right nought of the vilonye,  
That ye of wommen write, a boterflie; 1060  
I am a womman, needes most I speke,  
Or elles swelle tyl myn herte breke.

For syn he sayde that we ben jangleresses,  
As ever hool I moote brouke my tresses,  
I schal not spare for no curtesye  
To speke him harm, that wold us vilonye.'

'Dame,' quod this Pluto, 'be no lenger wroth,  
I give it up: but sith I swere myn oth,  
That I wil graunte him his sight agein,

My word schal stonde, I warne yow certeyn; 1070  
I am a kyng, it sit me nought to lye.'

'And I, quod sche, 'am queen of faierie.

Hir answer schal sche have, I undertake ;  
Let us no mo wordes herof make.  
Forsoth I wol no lenger yow contrarie.'

Now let us turne agayn to Januarye,  
That in this gardyn with this faire May  
Syngeth, ful merier than the papinjay,  
' Yow love I best, and schal, and other noon.'  
So long about the aleys is he goon, 1080  
Til he was come agaynes thilke pirie,  
Wher as this Damyne sittith ful mirye  
On heigh, among the freische leevys greene.  
This freische May, that is so bright and scheene,  
Gan for to syke, and sayd, ' Allas my syde !  
Now, sir,' quod sche, ' for aught that may bityde,  
I most han of the peres that I see,  
Or I moot dye, so sore longith me  
To eten of the smale peris greene ;  
I help for hir love that is of heven queene ! 1090  
I telle yow wel a womman in my plyt  
May have to fruyt so gret an appetyt  
That sche may deyen, but sche it have.'  
' Allas !' quod he, ' that I nad heer a knave  
That couthe climbe, allas ! allas !' quod he,  
' For I am blynd.' ' Ye, sire, no fors,' quod sche ;  
' But wolde ye vouchesauf, for Goddes sake,  
The piry inwith your armes for to take,  
(For wel I woot that ye mystruste me)  
Than schold I clymbe wel y-nough,' quod sche,  
' So I my foot mighte set upon your bak.' 1101  
' Certes,' quod he, ' theron schal be no lak,  
Might I yow helpe with myn herte blood.'  
He stonpith down, and on his bak sche stood,  
And caught hir by a twist, and up sche goth.

(Ladys, I pray yow that ye be not wroth,  
I can not glose, I am a rude man:)

And sodeinly anon this Damyan

Gan pullen up the smok, and in he throng.

And whan that Pluto saugh this grete wrong,  
To January he yaf his sight agayn, 1111

Ne was ther never man of thing so fayn ;

But on his wyf his thought was evermo.

Up to the tree he kest his eyghen tuo,

And seigh that Damyan his wyf hadde dressid

In which maner it may not ben expressid,

But-if I wolde speke uncurteisly.

And up he yaf a roryng and a cry,

As doth the moder whan the child schal dye ;

‘ Out ! help ! allas ! harrow ! ’ he gan to erie ; 1120

‘ O stronge lady stoure, what dos thou ? ’

And sche answerith : ‘ Sire, what eylith yow ?

Have paciens and resoun in your mynde,

I have yow holpen on bothe your eyen blynde.

Up peril of my soule, I schal not lyen,

As me was taught to hele with your yen,

Was nothing bet for to make yow see,

Than stroggle with a man upon a tree ;

God woot, I dede it in ful good entente.’

‘ Stroggle ! ’ quod he, ‘ ye, algat in it wente. 1130

God yive yow bothe on schames deth to dyen !

He swyvede the ; I saugh it with myn yen ;

And elles be I honged by the hals.’

‘ Than is,’ quod sche ‘ *my* medicine fals. 1140

For certeynly, if that ye mighten see,

Ye wolde not saye tho wordes unto me.

Ye han som glymsyng, and no parfyt sighte.

‘ I se,’ quod he, ‘ as wel as ever I mighte.

(Thankid be God) with bothe myn yen tuo,  
 And by my trouth me thought he did the so." 1110  
 ' Ye mase, mase, goode sir,' quod sche ;  
 ' This thank have I for I have maad yow see ;  
 Allas !' quod sche, ' that ever I was so kynde.'  
 ' Now, dame,' quod he, ' let al passe out of mynde ;  
 Com doun, my leef, and if I have myssayd,  
 God help me so, as I am evel appayd.  
 But by my fader soule, I wende have seyn,  
 How that this Damyan hadde by the leyn,  
 And that thy smok hadde layn upon thy breste.'  
 ' Ye, sire,' quod sche, ' ye may wene as yow leste ;  
 But, sire, a man that wakith out of his slep, 1151  
 He may not sodeynly wel take keep  
 Upon a thing, ne seen it parfytyl,  
 Til that he be adawed verrayly.  
 Right so a man, that long hath blynd i-be,  
 He may not sodeynly so wel i-se,  
 First whan the sight is newe comen agayn,  
 As he that hath a day or tuo i-sayn.  
 Til that your sight y-stablid be a while,  
 Ther may ful many a sighte yow bigile. 1160  
 Beth war, I pray yow, for, by heven king,  
 Ful many man wenith for to se a thing  
 And it is al another than it semeth ;  
 He that mysconceyveth he mysdemeth.'

And with that word sche leep doun fro the tre.  
 This January who is glad but he ?  
 He kissith hir, and clippith hir ful ofte,  
 And on hir wombe he strokith hir ful softe ;  
 And to his paleys hom he hath hir lad.  
 Now, goode men, I pray yow to be glad. 1170  
 Thus endith her my tale of Januarye,  
 God blesse us, and his moder seinte Marie !

## THE SQUIYERES PROLOGE.



Y ! Goddes merey !' sayd our Hoste tho,  
 ' Now such a wyf I pray God keep  
 me fro.

Lo, whiche sleightes and subtilitees  
 In wommen ben ; for ay as busy as bees  
 Ben thay us seely men for to desceyve,  
 And from a soth ever wol thay weyve.  
 By this Marchaundes tale it proveth wel.  
 But douteles, as trewe as eny steele  
 I have a wyf, though that sche pore be ;  
 But of hir tonge a labbyng schrewe is sche ;      10  
 And yit sche hath an heep of vices mo.  
 Therof no fors ; let alle such thinges go.  
 But wite ye what ? in counseil be it seyde,  
 Me rewith sore I am unto hir teyde ;  
 And if I scholde reken every vice,  
 Which that sche hath, i-wis I were to nyce ;  
 And cause why, it schulde reported be  
 And told to hir of som of this meyné,  
 (Of whom it needith not for to declare,  
 Syn wommen connen oute such chaffare) ;      20  
 And eek my witte suffisith nought therto  
 To tellen al ; wherfor my tale is do.'

' Sir Squier, com forth, if that your wille be,  
 And say us a tale of love, for certes ye  
 Connen theron as moche as ony man.'

' Nay, sire,' quod he ; ' but I wil say as I can  
 With herty wil, for I wil not rebelle

Against your wille ; a tale wil I telle,  
Have me excused if that I speke amys ;  
My wil is good ; and thereto my tale is this.'

THE SQUYERES TALE.



T Sarray, in the lond of Tartary,  
Ther dwelled a kyng that werryede  
Russy,  
Thurgh which ther deyede many a  
doughty man ;

This nobil kyng was cleped Cambynskan,  
Which in his tyme was of so gret renoun,  
That ther nas nowher in no regioun  
So excellent a lord in alle thing;  
Him lakkede nought that longede to a kyng.  
As of the secte of which *that* he was born,  
He kept his lawe to which *that* he was sworn; 10  
And therto he was hardy, wys, and riche,  
And pitous and just, and alway yliche,  
Soth of his word, benign and honourable;  
Of his corage as eny centre stable;  
Yong, freisch, and strong, in armes desirous,  
As eny bachiler of al his hous.  
A fair person he was, and fortunat,  
And kepte so wel his real estat,  
That ther was nowher such a ryal man.  
This noble kyng, this Tartre, this Cambynskan, 20  
Hadde tuo sones by Elcheta his wyf,  
Of which the eldest highte Algarsyf,  
That other was i-cleped Camballo.



A doughter hadde this worthi king also,  
That yongest was, and highte Canacé;  
But for to telle yow al hir beauté,  
It lith not on my tonge, ne my connyng,  
I dar nought undertake so heigh a thing;  
Myn Englissh eek is insufficient,  
It moste be a rethor excellent 30  
That couth his colours longyng for that art,  
If he schold hir diseryve in eny part;  
I am non such, I mot speke as I can.

And so bifel it, that this Cambynskan  
Hath twenty wynter born his dyademe;  
As he was wont fro yer to yer, I deme,  
He leet the fest of his nativité  
Don cryen, thurghout Sarray his cité,  
The last Idus of March, after the yeer.  
Phebus the sonne ful joly was and cleer, 40  
For he was neigh his exaltacioun  
In Martez face, and in his mansioun  
In Aries, the colerik, the hote signe.  
Ful lusty was the wedir and benigne,  
For which the foules ayein the sonne scheene,  
What for the sesoun and for the yonge greene,  
Ful lowde song in here affeccious;  
Hem semed have geten hem protecciouns  
Ayens the swerd of wynter kene and cold.  
This Cambynskan, of which I have *yow* told, 50  
In royal vesture, sittying on his deys  
With dyadem, ful heigh in his paleys,  
And held his fest solempne and so riche,  
That in this worlde *ne* was there noon it liehe.  
Of which if I schal tellen al tharray,  
Than wold it occupie a someres day;

And eek it needith nought for to devyse  
At every cours the ordre and the servyse.  
I wol nat tellen of her straunge sewes,  
Ne of her swannes, ne here heroun-sewes. 60  
Ek in that lond, as tellen knightes olde,  
Ther is som mete that is ful deynté holde,  
That in this lond men recch of it but smal;  
Ther is no man it may reporten al.  
I wol not tarien you, for it is pryme,  
And for it is no fruyt, but los of tyme,  
Unto my purpos I wol have my recours.  
That so bifelle after the thridde cours,  
Whil that the kyng sit thus in his nobleye,  
Herkyng his mynstrales her thinges pleye 70  
Byforn him atte boord deliciously,  
In atte halle dore al sodeynly  
Ther com a knight upon a steed of bras,  
And in his hond a brod myroure of glas;  
Upon his thomb he had of gold a ryng,  
And by his side a naked swerd hangyng:  
And up he rideth to the heyghe bord.  
In al the halle ne was ther spoke a word,  
For mervayl of this knight; him to byholde  
Ful besily they wayten yong and olde. 80

This straunge knight that cam thus sodeynly,  
Al armed sauf his heed ful richely,  
Salued the kyng and queen, and lordes alle  
By ordre, as they seten into halle,  
With so heigh reverens and observaunce,  
As wel in speche as in contynauce,  
Than *Gaweyn* with his olde curtesye,  
They he were come ayein out of fayrye,  
Ne couthe him nought amende with no word.

And after this, biforn the highe bord 90  
He with a manly vois sayd his message,  
After the forme used in his langage,  
Withouten vice of sillabil or letter.  
And for his tale schulde seme the better,  
Aceordaunt to his wordes was his eheere,  
As teetheth art of speeche hem that it leere.  
Al be it that I can nat sowne his style,  
Ne can nat elymben over so heigh a style,  
Yit say I this, as to comun entente,  
Thus moeche amounteth al that ever he mente, 100  
If it so be that I have it in mynde.

He sayde: 'The kyng of Arraby and Ynde,  
My liege lord, on this solempne day  
Saluteth you as he best can or may;  
He sendeth you, in honour of your feste,  
By me, that am redy, at al his heste,  
This steede of bras, that esily and wel  
Can in the space of o day naturel,  
(This is to say, in four and twenty houres)  
Wher-so yow lust, in droughthe or in sehoures, 110  
Beren your body into every place,  
To which your herte wilneth for to paece,  
Withouten wem of you, thurgh foul and fair.  
Or if you lust to flee as heigh in thair  
As doth an egle, whan him list to sore,  
This same steede schal bere you evermore  
Withoute harm, til ye be ther yow leste,  
(Though that ye slepen on his bak or reste),  
And torne ayein, with wrything of a pyn.  
He that it wrought eowthe *ful* many a gyn; 120  
He waytede many a constellacioun,  
Er he hadde do this operacioun,

And knew ful many a seal and many a bond.

‘ This mirour eek, that I have in myn hond,  
Hath such a mighte, that men may in it see  
When ther schal falle eny adversité  
Unto your regne, or to yourself also,  
And openly, who is your frend or fo.  
And over al this, if eny lady bright  
Hath set hir hert on eny maner wight, 130  
If he be fals, sche schal his tresoun see,  
His newe love, and his subtilité,  
So openly, that ther schal nothing hyde.  
Wherfor ayeins this lusty somer tyde  
This mirour and this ryng, that ye may see,  
He hath send to my lady Canacee,  
Your excellente doughter that is heere.

‘ The vertu of this ryng, if ye wol heere,  
Is this, that who-so lust it for to were  
Upon hir thomb, or in hir purs to bere, 140  
Ther is no foul that fleeth under the heven,  
That sche ne schal understonden his steven,  
And know his menyng openly and pleyn,  
And answer him in his langage ayeyn ;  
And every gras that groweth upon roote  
Sche schal eek knowe, to whom it wol do boote,  
Al be his woundes never so deep and wyde.

‘ This naked swerd, that hangeth by my side,  
Such vertu hath, that what man that it smyte,  
Thurghout his armur it wol kerve and byte, 150  
Were it as thikke as is a braunched ook ;  
And what man is i-wounded with the strook  
Schal never be hool, til that you lust of grace  
To strok him with the plat in thilke place  
Ther he is hurt ; this is as moche to seyn,

Ye moote with the platte swerd ayein  
Stroke him in the wound, and it wol close.  
This is the verray soth withouten glose,  
It failleth nought, whil it is in your hold.'

And whan this knight thus hadde his tale told,  
He rit out of the halle, and down he light. 161  
His steede, which that schon as sonne bright,  
Stant in the court as stille as eny stoon.  
This knight is to his chambre lad anoon,  
And is unarmed, and to mete i-sett.  
This presentz ben ful richely i-fett,  
This is to sayn, the swerd and the myrrour,  
And born anon unto the highe tour,  
With certein officers ordeynd therfore ;  
And unto Canace the ryng is bore 170  
Solempnely, ther sche syt atte table ;  
But sikerly, withouten eny fable,  
The hors of bras, that may nat be remewed,  
It stant, as it were to the ground i-glewed ;  
Ther may no man out of the place it dryve  
For noon engyn of wyndas or polyve ;  
And cause why, for they can nought the craft,  
And therfor in the place thei have it laft,  
Til that the knight hath taught hem the manere  
To voyden him, as ye schul after heere. 180

Greet was the pres that swarmede to and fro  
To gauren on this hors that stondeth so ;  
For it so *hihe* was, and so brod and long,  
So wel proporcioned to be strong,  
Right as it were a steed of Lumbardye ;  
Therto so horsly, and so quyk of ye,  
As it a gentil Poyleys courser were ;  
For certes, fro his tayl unto his cere

Nature ne art ne couthe him nought amende  
In no degre, as al the poepel wende. 190  
But evermore her moste wonder was,  
How that it couthe goon, and was of bras ;  
It was of fayry, as the poeple semede.  
Diverse peple diversly they demede ;  
As many hedes, as many wittes been.  
They murmured, as doth a swarm of been,  
And made skiles after her fantasies,  
Rehersyng of the olde poetries,  
And seyden it was i-like the Pegasé,  
The hors that hadde wynges for to fle ; 200  
Or elles it was the Grekissch hors Synon,  
That broughte Troye to destruccioun,  
As men may in the olde gestes rede.  
' Myn hert,' quod oon, ' is evermore in drede,  
I trow som men of armes ben therinne,  
That schapen hem this cite for to wyne ;  
It were *right* good that *al* such thing were knowe.'  
Another rowned to his felaw lowe,  
And sayde : ' It lyth, for it is rather lik  
An apparence maad by som magik, 210  
As jogelours pleyen at this festes grete.'  
Of sondry thoughtes thus they jangle and trete,  
As lewed peple demeth comunly  
Of thinges that ben maad more subtyly  
Than they can in her lewednes comprehende,  
They deemen gladly to the badder ende.  
And som of hem wondred on the mirrour,  
That born was up into the maister tour,  
How men might in hit suche thinges se.  
Another answerd, and sayd, it mighte wel be 220  
Naturelly by composiciouns

Of angels, and of heigh reflexiouns;  
And sayde that in Rome was such oon.  
They speeke of *Alhaxen* and Vitilyon,  
*And* Aristotle, that writen in her lyves  
Of queynte myrrours and prospectyves,  
As knowen they that han her bokes herd.  
And other folk have wondred on the swerd,  
That wolde passe thoroughout every thing;  
And fel in speche of Thelophus the kyng, 230  
And of Achilles for his queynte spere,  
For he couthe with hit bothe hele and dere,  
Right in such wyse as men maye with the swerd,  
Of which right now ye have your-selven herd.  
They speken of sondry hardyng of metal,  
And speken of medicines therwithal,  
And how and whan it schulde harded be,  
Which is unknowe alगत unto me.  
Tho speeken they of Canacees ryng,  
And seyden alle, that such a wonder thing 240  
Of craft of rynges herd they never noon,  
Sauf that he Moyses and kyng Salamon  
Hadden a name of connyng in such art.  
Thus seyen the peple, *and drawen hem apart*.  
But natheles som seiden that it was  
Wonder thing to make of ferne *aisschen* glas,  
And yit is glas nought like *aisschen* of ferne,  
But for they han i-knowen it so ferne;  
Therfor cesseth her janglyng and her wonder.  
And sore wondrede som of cause of thonder, 250  
On ebbe and flood, on gossomer, and on myst,  
And on alle thing, til that the cause is wist.  
Thus janglen they, and demen and devyse,  
Til that the kyng gan fro his bord arise.




Phebus hath *laft* the angel merydyonal,  
And yit asecndyng was a best roial,  
The gentil Lyoun, with his Aldryan,  
Whan that this gentil kyng, this Cambynskan,  
Ros fro his bord, ther as he sat ful hye ;  
Biforn him goth ful lowde menstraleye, 260  
Til he eam to his chambre of parementz,  
Ther as ther were divers instrumentz,  
That is y-like an heven for to heere.

Now daunceen lusty Venus children decre ;  
For in the fissch her lady sat ful heyghe,  
And loketh on hem with a frendly cyghe.  
This noble kyng is set upon his trone ;  
This straunge knight is fet to him ful sone,  
And in the daunce he gan with Canacé.  
Her is the revel and the jolyté, 270  
That is not able a dul man to devyse ;  
He most have knowe love and his servise,  
And ben a festly man, as freisch as May,  
That schulde you devyse such array.  
Who couthe telle you the forme of daunce  
So uncouth, and *such a* freisch countinaunee,  
Such subtil loking of dissimilynges,  
For drede of jalous folk apparceyvynge ?  
No man but Launcolet, and he is deed.  
Therefore I passe over al this lustyheed, 280  
I say no more, but in this jolynesse  
I lete hem, til men to soper hem dresse.  
The styward byt the spices for to hye  
And eek the wyn, in al this melodye ;  
Thes usschers and thes squyers ben agon,  
The spiees and the wyn is come anon ;  
They eet and drank, and whan this had an ende,

Unto the temple, as resoun was, they wende ;  
The servise doon, they soupen al by day.  
What needeth you to rehersen her array ? 230  
Eeh man wot wel, that a kynges feste  
Hath plenté, to the lest and to the meste,  
And deyntees mo than ben in my knowyng.  
And after souper goth this noble kyng  
To see this hors of bras, with al his route  
Of lordes and of ladyes him aboute.  
Swieh wondryng was ther on this hors of bras,  
That sethen this grete siege of Troye was,  
Ther as men wondred on an hors also,  
Ne was ther such a wondryng as was tho. 260  
But fynally the kyng askede the knight  
The vertu of this courser, and the might,  
And prayd him tellen of his governaunce.  
The hors anoon gan for to trippe and daunce,  
Whan *that* the knight leyd hand upon his rayne,  
And sayde, ‘ Sir, ther is nomore to sayne,  
But whan you lust to ryde any where,  
Ye moote trille a pyn *that* stant in his ere,  
Which I schal telle you bitwen us two,  
Ye moste nempne him to what place also, 310  
Or what eountre you luste for to ryde.  
And whan ye come ther you lust abyde,  
Bid him deseende, and trille another pynne,  
(For therin lith thefect of al the gynne)  
And he wol down deseend and do your wille,  
And in that place he wol abyde stille ;  
Though al the world hadde the eontrary swore,  
He schal nat thennes be i-throwe ne bore.  
Or if you lust to bid him thennes goon,  
Trille this pyn, and he wol vanyssh anoon 320

Out of the sight of every maner wight,  
 And como ayein, be it by day or night,  
 Whan that you lust to clepen him ayayn  
 In such a gyse, as I schal yow sayn  
 Bitwixe you and me, and therfor soone,  
 Byd whan you lust, ther nys nomor to donne.<sup>7</sup>  
 Enformed when the kyng was of the knight,  
 And hadde conceyved in his wit aright  
 The maner and the forme *of* al this thing,  
 Ful glad and blith, this noble doughty kyng      360  
 Repeyryng to his revel, as biforn,  
 The bridel is unto the tour i-born,  
 And kept among his jewels leef and deere;  
 The hors vanyseht, I not in what manere,  
 Out of her sight, ye got nomore of me;  
 But thus I lete him in his jolité  
 This Cambinskan his lordes festeynge,  
 Til wel neigh the day bigan to spryng.

# INCIPIT SECUNDA PARS.


 HE norice of digestioun, the sleep,  
 Gan to hem wynk, and bad of him  
                     take keep,  
 That mirth and labour wol have his  
                     reste;

And with a galpyng mouth he hem alle keste,  
 And sayde, that it was tyme to lye down,  
 For blood was in his dominacioun:  
 ‘Cherischeth *blode*, natures *frend*,’ quod he.

They thankyn him galpyng, by two and thre  
And every wight gan drawe him to his rest,  
As sleep hem bad, they took it for the best. 10  
Here dremes schul not now be told for me ;  
Ful were here heedes of fumosité,  
That eauseth drem, of whieh ther is no echarge.  
They slepen til that it was prime large,  
The moste part, but it were Canaee ;  
Sche was ful mesurable, as wommen be.  
For of hir fader hadde sche take hir leve  
To go to reste, soon after it was eve ;  
Hir luste not appalled for to be,  
Ne on the morwe unfestly for to se ; 20  
And kept hir firste sleep, and then awook.  
For such a joye sche in hire herte took,  
Bothe of hir queynte ryng, and hir myrrour,  
That twenty tyme ehaunged hire colour ;  
And in hire sleep, right for impressioun  
Of hir myrrour, sche had a visioun.  
Wherfor, er that the sonne up gan glyde,  
Sche eleped upon her maistresse beside,  
And sayde, that hire luste for to ryse.  
These olde wommen, that ben gladly wise, 30  
As is here maystresse, answered her anoon,  
And sayde, ‘ Madame, whider wold ye goon  
Thus erly ? for folk ben alle in reste.’  
‘ I wil,’ quod sche, ‘ aryse, for me leste  
No lenger for to slepe, and walke aboute.’  
Her maistres elepeth wommen a gret route,  
And up they risen, a ten other a twelve.  
Up ryseth fresshe Canaee hir selve,  
As rody and bright, as is the yonge sonne  
That in the ram is ten degrees i-ronne ; 40

Non heigher was he, whan sche rody was ;  
And forth sche walked esily a pas,  
Arayed after the lusty sesoun soote  
Lightly for to play, and walke on foote,  
Nought but with fyve or six of hir meyné ;  
And in a trench fer in the park goth sche.  
The vapour, which that of the erthe glod,  
Maketh the sonne seme rody and *brood* ;  
But natheles, it was so fair a sight,  
That it made alle here hertes for to light, 50  
What for the sesoun, what for the mornynge,  
And for the foules that sche herde synge.  
For right anoon sche wiste what they mente  
Right by here song, and knew al here entente.

The knotte, why that every tale is told,  
If that it be taryed til lust be cold  
Of hem that han hit after herkned yore,  
The savour passeth ever longer the more,  
For fulsomnes of the prolixité ;  
And by this same resoun thinketh me 60  
I schulde to the knotte condescende,  
And make of hir walkynge sone an ende.  
Amyddes a tree for-druye, as whit as chalk,  
As Canace was pleyyng in hir walk,  
There sat a faukoun over hir heed ful hyc,  
That with a pitous vois bigan to crye,  
That al the woode resowned of hire cry,  
I-beten hadde sche herself so pitously  
With bothe hir wynges, til the reede blood  
Ran endelong the tree, ther as sche stood. 70  
And ever in oon sche cried and schryghte,  
And with hir bek hir selven so sche pighte,  
That ther nys tigre non ne cruel beste,

That dwelleth eyther in wood, or in foreste,  
 That nold han wept, if that *wepen* he cowde,  
 For sorw of hir, sche schright alway so lowde.  
 For ther nas never yit no man on lyve,  
 If that he couthe a faukoun *wel* discrive,  
 That herd of such another of fairnesse  
 As wel of plumage, as of gentillesse 89  
 Of schap, of al that might i-rekened be.  
 A faukoun peregryn than semede sche  
 Of fremde lond; and ever as sche stood,  
 Sche swownede now and now for lak of blood,  
 Til wel neigh is sche fallen fro the tre.  
 This faire kynges doughter, Canacé,  
 That on hir fynger bar the queynte ryng,  
 Thurgh which sche understood wel every thing  
 That eny foul may in his lydne sayn,  
 And couthe answer him in his lydne agayn, 90  
 Hath understonde what this faukoun seyde,  
 And wel neigh for rewthe almost sche deyde.  
 And to the tree sche goth ful hastily,  
 And on this faukoun loketh pitously,  
 And held hir lappe abrod, for wel sche wiste  
 The faukoun moste falle fro the twiste,  
 Whan that it swownede next, for lak of blood.  
 A long while to wayten hir sche stood,  
 Til atte last sche spak in this manere  
 Unto the hauk, as ye schul after heere. 100  
 ‘What is the cause, if it be for to telle,  
 That ye ben in that furyalle peyne of helle?’  
 Quod Canace unto this hauk above;  
 ‘Is this for sorwe of deth, or elles love?  
 For as I trowe, this ben causes tuo  
 That causen most a gentil herte wo.

Of other harm it needeth nought to speke,  
 For ye your self upon your self awreke;  
 Which preveth wel, that either ire or drede  
 Mote ben enehesoun of your eruel dede, 110  
 Sith that I see noon other wight you chace.  
 For love of God, so doth your selve graee.  
 Or what *maye* ben your helpe? for west nor este  
 Ne saugh I never er now no bryd ne beste,  
 That ferde with him-self so pitously.  
 Ye sle me with your sorwe so verrily,  
 I have of you so gret compassioun.  
 For Goddes love, com fro the tree adoun;  
 And as I am a kynges doughter trewe,  
 If that I verrayly the cause knewe 120  
 Of your disese, if it lay in my might,  
 I wold amenden it, *or that it wer nyght*,  
 Als wisly help me grete God of kynde.  
 And herbes sehal I right y-nowe y-fynde,  
 To helen with your hurtes hastyly.  
 Tho schrighte this faukoun more pitously  
 Than ever sche did, and fil to ground anoon,  
 And lay aswowne, deed as eny stoon,  
 Til Canaée hath in hir lap y-take,  
 Unto that tyme sche gan of swowne awake; 130  
 And after that sche gan of swown abreyde,  
 Right in hir haukes lydne thus sche sayde.  
 'That pite renneth sone in gentil herte  
 (Felyng his similitude in peynes smerte)  
 Is proved alday, as men may see,  
 As wel by werk as by auctorité;  
 For gentil herte kepeth gentillesse.  
 I see wel, that ye have on my distresse  
 Compassioun, my faire Canaée,



Of verray wommanly benignité, 140  
That nature in your principles hath set.  
But for noon hope for to fare the bet,  
But for to obeye unto your herte fre,  
And for to make othere war by me,  
As by the whelp chastised is the lyoun ;  
And for that cause and that conclusioun,  
Whiles that I have a leyser and a space,  
Myn harm I wil confessen er I pace.'  
And whil sche ever of hir sorwe tolde,  
That other wept, as sche to water wolde, 150  
Til that the faucoun bad hir to be stille,  
And with a sighhe thus sche sayd hir till.

‘ Ther I was *bred*, (allas that ilke day !)  
And fostred in a roch of marble gray  
So tendrely, that nothing eyled me,  
I ne wiste not what was adversité,  
Til I couthe flee ful heigh under the sky.  
Tho dwelled a tercelet me faste by,  
That semede welle of alle gentillesse ;  
Al were he ful of tresoun and falsnesse, 160  
It was i-wrapped under humble cheere,  
And under heewe of trouthe in such manere,  
Under plesaunce, and under besy peyne,  
That no wight wende that he couthe feyne,  
So deep in greyn he deyed his colours.  
Right as a serpent hut him under floures  
Til he may see his tyme for to byte :  
Right so this god of loves ypocrite  
Doth so his sermonys and his observaunce,  
Under subtil colour and aqueyntaunce, 170  
That sowneth unto gentillesse of love.  
As in a tombe is al the faire above,

And under is the corps, whiche that ye wot ;  
Such was this ipoerite, bothe cold and hot,  
And in this wise he served his entente,  
That, sauf the fecnd, noon wiste what he mente.  
Til he so long haddē weped and compleyned,  
And many a yeer his service to me feyned,  
Til that myn hert, to pitous and to nyce,  
Al innocent of his crouel malice, 180  
For-fered of his deth, as thoughte me,  
Upon his othes and his sewerté,  
Graunted him love, on this condieion,  
That evermo myn honour and my renoun  
Were saved, both pryvy and apert ;  
This is to sayn, that, after his desert,  
I yaf him al myn hert and al my thought,  
(God woot, and he, that other weye nought)  
And took his hert in chaunge of myn for ay.  
But soth is sayd, go sithens many a day, 190  
A trew wight and a theef thenketh nought oon.  
And when he saugh the thyng so fer i-goön,  
That I haddē graunted him fully my love,  
In such a wyse as I have sayd above,  
And yeven him my trewe hert as fre  
As he swor that he yaf his herte to me,  
Anon this tigre, ful of doublenesse,  
Fil on his knees with so gret devoutenesse,  
With so high reverence, as by his chere,  
So lyk a gentil lover of manere, 200  
So ravysched, as it semede, for joye,  
That never Jason, ne Parys of Troye,  
Jason ? certes, ne noon other man,  
Sith Lameth was, that altherfirst bygan  
To loven two, as writen folk biforn,

Ne never sith the firste man was born,  
Ne couthe man by twenty thousand part  
Contrefete the sophemes of his art;  
Ne were worthy to unbokel his galoche,  
Ther doublenes of feynyng schold approche, 210  
Ne so couthe thankyn a wight, as he dide me.  
His maner was an heven for to see  
To eny womman, were sche never so wys;  
So peynteth he and kembeth poynt devys,  
As wel his wordes, as his continuaunce.  
And I so loved him for his obeisaunce,  
And for the trouthe I demed in his herte,  
That if so were that eny thing him smerte,  
Al were it never so litel, and I it wiste,  
Me thought I felte deth at myn hert twiste. 220  
And schortly, so ferforth this thing is went,  
That my wil was his willes instrument;  
This is to saye, my wille obeied his wille  
In alle thing, as fer as resoun fille,  
Kepyng the boundes of my worschip ever;  
Ne never had I thing so leef, ne lever,  
As him, God woot, ne never schal nomo.  
This laste lenger than a yeer or two,  
That I supposed of him nought but good.  
But fynally, atte laste thus it stood, 230  
That fortune wolde that he moste twynne  
Out of the place which that I was inne.  
Wher me was wo, it is no questioun;  
I can nat make of it desceipeioun.  
For o thing dar I telle boldely,  
I know what is the peyne of deth, therby,  
Which harm I felt, for he ne mighte byleve.  
So on a day of me he took his leve,

So sorwful eek, that I wende verrayly,  
That he hadde feled als moche *harme* as I, 240  
Whan that I herd him speke, and saugh his hewe.  
But natheles, I thought he was *so trewe*,  
And eek that he schulde repeire ayeyn  
Withinne a litel while, soth to seyn,  
And resoun wold eek that he moste go  
For his honour, *as oft it happeth so*.  
Than I made vertu of neecessité,  
And took it wel, sethens *that* it moste be.  
As I best might, I hid fro him my sorwe,  
And took him by the hand, seint Johan to borwe,  
And sayde thus: ‘Lo, I am youre al, 251  
Beth such as I have be to you and schal.’  
What he answerd, it needeth nat to reherse:  
Who can say bet than he, who can do werse?  
Whan he hath al wel sayd, than hath he doon.  
Therfor bihoveth him a ful long spoon,  
That schal ete with a feend; thus herd I say.  
So atte last he moste forth his way,  
And forth he fleeth, til he cam ther him leste.  
Whan it cam him to purpos for to reste, 260  
I trow he hadde thilke text in mynde,  
That alle thing repeyryng to his kynde  
Gladeth himself; thus seyn men, as I gesse;  
Men loven of kynde newefangilnesse,  
As briddes doon, that men in cages feede.  
For theigh thou night and day take of hem heede,  
And straw her cage faire and soft as silk,  
And yeve hem sugre, hony, breed, and mylk.  
Yet right anoon as *that* his dore is uppe,  
He with his feet wil sporne doun his euppe, 270  
\* And to the woode he wole, and wormes ete;

So newefangel ben thei of here mete,  
And loven *none leveres* of propre kinde ;  
No gentillesse of blood ne may hem bynde.  
So ferde this tercelet, alas the day !  
Though he were gentil born, *and fressehe*, and gay,  
And goodly for to seen, and humble, and fre,  
He saugh upon a tyme a kyte flee,  
And sodeinly he loved thys kyte so,  
That al his love is clene fro me go ; 280  
And hath his trouthe falsed in this wyse.  
Thus hathe the kite my love in hire servise,  
And I am lorn withoute remedye.’  
And with that word this faukon gan to crye,  
And swouned eft in Canacees barm.  
Gret was the sorwe for the haukes harm,  
That Canacee and alle hire wommen maade ;  
They nyste how they mighte the fawkon glade.  
But Canacee home bereth hire in hire lappe,  
And softly in plastres gan hire wrappe, 290  
Ther as sche with hir beek hath hurt hir selve.  
Now kan not Canace bot herbes delve  
Out of the grounde, and maken salves newe  
Of herbes precioues and fyn of hewe,  
To helen with the hawk ; fro day to nyght  
Sche doth hir besynesse, and al hire myght.  
And by hire beddes-heed sche made a muwe,  
And covered it with veluettes bluwe,  
In signe of trouthe that is in wommen seene ;  
And al withoute the muwe is peynted greene, 300  
In which were peynted alle these false fowles,  
As ben this tydifs, tercelettes, and owles ;  
*And* pyes, on hem for to crye and chyde,  
Right for *despyte* were peynted hem bysyde.

Thus leet I Canacee hire hawk keeping.  
 I wil nomore *as* nowc speken of hire ryng,  
 Til it come eft to purpos for to seyn,  
 How that this faukon gat hire love ageyn  
 Repentaunt, as the storie telleth us,  
 By mediacioun of Camballus 310  
 The kinges sone, of which *that* I yow tolde ;  
 But hennesforth I wol *my* proces holde  
 To speke of adventures, and of batailles,  
 That yet was never herde so gret mervailles.  
 First wil I telle yow of Kambynskan,  
 That in his tyme many a cite wan ;  
 And after wol I speke of Algarsif,  
 How that he wan Theodora to his wyf.  
 For whan ful ofte in grete peril he was,  
 Ne hadde he ben holpen by the hors of bras. 320  
 And after wol I speken of Camballo,  
 That faught in listes with the bretheren tuo  
 For Canacec, er that he might hir wynne,  
 And ther I lefte I wol ageyn bygynne.  
 Apollo whirleth up his char so hye  
 Til that the God Mercurius hous the slye.

\* \* \* \* \*

END OF VOL. II.

151









